PART 6
TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL

CHAPTER 6A. GENERAL

Section 6A.01 General

Support:

01 Whenever the acronym "TTC" is used in Part 6, it refers to "temporary traffic control."

Standard:

02 **The needs and control of all road users (motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians within the highway, or on private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13), including persons with disabilities in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA), Title II, Paragraph 35.130) through a TTC zone shall be an essential part of highway construction, utility work, maintenance operations, and the management of traffic incidents.**

Support:

03 When the normal function of the roadway, or a private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13), is suspended, TTC planning provides for continuity of the movement of motor vehicle, bicycle, and pedestrian traffic (including accessible passage); transit operations; and access (and accessibility) to property and utilities.

04 The primary function of TTC is to provide for the reasonably safe and effective movement of road users through or around TTC zones while reasonably protecting road users, workers, responders to traffic incidents, and equipment.

05 Of equal importance to the public traveling through the TTC zone is the safety of workers performing the many varied tasks within the work space. TTC zones present constantly changing conditions that are unexpected by the road user. This creates an even higher degree of vulnerability for the workers and incident management responders on or near the roadway (see Section 6D.03). At the same time, the TTC zone provides for the efficient completion of whatever activity interrupted the normal use of the roadway.

06 Consideration for road user safety, worker and responder safety, and the efficiency of road user flow is an integral element of every TTC zone, from planning through completion. A concurrent objective of the TTC is the efficient construction and maintenance of the highway and the efficient resolution of traffic incidents.

07 No one set of TTC devices can satisfy all conditions for a given project or incident. At the same time, defining details that would be adequate to cover all applications is not practical. Instead, Part 6 displays typical applications that depict common applications of TTC devices. The TTC selected for each situation depends on type of highway, road user conditions, duration of operation, physical constraints, and the nearness of the work space or incident management activity to road users.

08 Improved road user performance might be realized through a well-prepared public relations effort that covers the nature of the work, the time and duration of its execution, the anticipated effects upon road users, and possible alternate routes and modes of travel. Such programs have been found to result in a significant reduction in the number of road users traveling through the TTC zone, which reduces the possible number of conflicts.

09 Operational improvements might be realized by using intelligent transportation systems (ITS) in work zones. The use in work zones of ITS technology, such as portable camera systems, highway advisory radio, variable speed limits, ramp metering, traveler information, merge guidance, and queue detection information, is aimed at increasing safety for both workers and road users and helping to ensure a more efficient traffic flow. The use in work zones of ITS technologies has been found to be effective in providing traffic monitoring and management, data collection, and traveler information.

Standard:

10 **TTC plans and devices shall be the responsibility of the authority of a public body or official having jurisdiction for guiding road users. There shall be adequate statutory authority for the implementation and enforcement of needed road user regulations, parking controls, speed zoning, and the management of**

traffic incidents. Such statutes shall provide sufficient flexibility in the application of TTC to meet the needs of changing conditions in the TTC zone.

Support:

11 Temporary facilities, including pedestrian routes around worksites, are also covered by the accessibility requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (Public Law 101-336, 104 Stat. 327, July 26, 1990. 42 U.S.C. 12101-12213 (as amended)).

Guidance:

12 *The TTC plan should start in the planning phase and continue through the design, construction, and restoration phases. The TTC plans and devices should follow the principles set forth in Part 6. The management of traffic incidents should follow the principles set forth in Chapter 6I.*

Option:

13 TTC plans may deviate from the typical applications described in Chapter 6H to allow for conditions and requirements of a particular site or jurisdiction.

Support:

14 The provisions of Part 6 apply to both rural and urban areas. A rural highway is normally characterized by lower volumes, higher speeds, fewer turning conflicts, and less conflict with pedestrians. An urban street is typically characterized by relatively low speeds, wide ranges of road user volumes, narrower roadway lanes, frequent intersections and driveways, significant pedestrian activity, and more businesses and houses.

15 The determination as to whether a particular facility at a particular time of day can be considered to be a high-volume roadway or can be considered to be a low-volume roadway is made by the public agency or official having jurisdiction.

16 Per the provisions of the Construction Safety Orders in the California Code of Regulations (Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 11, Sections 1598 and 1599), this Part of the California MUTCD is incorporated by reference as part of those regulations.

17 It is the responsibility of the Contractor or Organization performing work on, or adjacent to, a highway to install and maintain such devices which are necessary to provide passage for the traveling public (including pedestrians and bicyclists) through the work, as well as for the safeguard of workers.

Standard:

18 Before work begins, traffic control plans, when developed for handling traffic through a construction or maintenance project, shall be approved by the Engineer or the Engineer's designee of the public agency or authority having jurisdiction over the highway.

Option:

19 When typical applications from Chapter 6H are to be used the Engineer or the Engineer's designee of the public agency or authority having jurisdiction over the highway may approve their use before the work begins to ensure the appropriate plans are used.

Support:

19 The following references from the California Vehicle Code (CVC) relate to TTC:

- Section 112 – Amber.
- Section 165 – Authorized Emergency Vehicle.
- Section 291 – Department of Transportation.
- Section 385 – Local Authorities.
- Section 21351.3 – Use of Metric System Designations.
- Section 21363 – Detour Signs.
- Section 21367 – Traffic Control: Highway Construction.
- Section 21466.5 – Light Impairing Driver's Vision.
- Section 22362 – Speed Limit Where Persons at Work.

CHAPTER 6B. FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

Section 6B.01 Fundamental Principles of Temporary Traffic Control

Support:

01 Construction, maintenance, utility, and incident zones can all benefit from TTC to compensate for the unexpected or unusual situations faced by road users. When planning for TTC in these zones, it can be assumed that it is appropriate for road users to exercise caution. Even though road users are assumed to be using caution, special care is still needed in applying TTC techniques.

02 Special plans preparation and coordination with transit, other highway agencies, law enforcement and other emergency units, utilities, schools, and railroad companies might be needed to reduce unexpected and unusual road user operation situations.

03 During TTC activities, commercial vehicles might need to follow a different route from passenger vehicles because of bridge, weight, clearance, or geometric restrictions. Also, vehicles carrying hazardous materials might need to follow a different route from other vehicles. The Hazardous Materials and National Network signs are included in Sections 2B.62 and 2B.63, respectively.

04 Experience has shown that following the fundamental principles of Part 6 will assist road users and help protect workers in the vicinity of TTC zones.

Guidance:

05 *Road user and worker safety and accessibility in TTC zones should be an integral and high-priority element of every project from planning through design and construction. Similarly, maintenance and utility work should be planned and conducted with the safety and accessibility of all motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians (including those with disabilities), and workers being considered at all times. If the TTC zone includes a grade crossing, early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should take place.*

Support:

06 Formulating specific plans for TTC at traffic incidents is difficult because of the variety of situations that can arise.

Guidance:

07 *The following are the seven fundamental principles of TTC:*

1. *General plans or guidelines should be developed to provide safety for motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians, workers, enforcement/emergency officials, and equipment, with the following factors being considered:*
   - *A. The basic safety principles governing the design of permanent roadways and roadsides should also govern the design of TTC zones. The goal should be to route road users through such zones using roadway geometrics, roadside features, and TTC devices as nearly as possible comparable to those for normal highway situations.*
   - *B. A TTC plan, in detail appropriate to the complexity of the work project or incident, should be prepared and understood by all responsible parties before the site is occupied.*

Standard:

Any changes in the TTC plan ~~should~~ shall be approved by ~~an official who is knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) in proper TTC practices~~ the Engineer or the Engineer's designee of the public agency or authority having jurisdiction over the highway.

Guidance:

2. *Road user movement should be inhibited as little as practical, based on the following considerations:*
   - *A. TTC at work and incident sites should be designed on the assumption that drivers will only reduce their speeds if they clearly perceive a need to do so (see Section 6C.01).*
   - *B. Frequent and abrupt changes in geometrics such as lane narrowing, dropped lanes, or main roadway transitions that require rapid maneuvers, should be avoided.*
   - *C. Work should be scheduled in a manner that minimizes the need for lane closures or alternate routes, while still getting the work completed quickly and the lanes or roadway open to traffic as soon as possible.*
   - *D. Attempts should be made to reduce the volume of traffic using the roadway or freeway to match the restricted capacity conditions. Road users should be encouraged to use alternative routes. For high-*

volume roadways and freeways, the closure of selected entrance ramps or other access points and the use of signed diversion routes should be evaluated.

E. Bicyclists and pedestrians, including those with disabilities, should be provided with access and reasonably safe passage through the TTC zone.

F. If work operations permit, lane closures on high-volume streets and highways should be scheduled during off-peak hours. Night work should be considered if the work can be accomplished with a series of short-term operations.

G. Early coordination with officials having jurisdiction over the affected cross streets and providing emergency services should occur if significant impacts to roadway operations are anticipated.

3. Motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians should be guided in a clear and positive manner while approaching and traversing TTC zones and incident sites. The following principles should be applied:

A. Adequate warning, delineation, and channelization should be provided to assist in guiding road users in advance of and through the TTC zone or incident site by using proper pavement marking, signing, or other devices that are effective under varying conditions. Providing information that is in usable formats by pedestrians with visual disabilities should also be considered.

B. TTC devices inconsistent with intended travel paths through TTC zones should be removed or covered. However, in intermediate-term stationary, short-term, and mobile operations, where visible permanent devices are inconsistent with intended travel paths, devices that highlight or emphasize the appropriate path should be used. Providing traffic control devices that are accessible to and usable by pedestrians with disabilities should be considered.

C. Flagging procedures, when used, should provide positive guidance to road users traversing the TTC zone.

4. To provide acceptable levels of operations, routine day and night inspections of TTC elements should be performed as follows:

A. Individuals who are knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) in the principles of proper TTC should be assigned responsibility for safety in TTC zones. The most important duty of these individuals should be to check that all TTC devices of the project are consistent with the TTC plan and are effective for motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians, and workers.

B. As the work progresses, temporary traffic controls and/or working conditions should be modified, if appropriate, in order to provide mobility and positive guidance to the road user and to provide worker safety. The individual responsible for TTC should have the authority to halt work until applicable or remedial safety measures are taken.

C. TTC zones should be carefully monitored under varying conditions of road user volumes, light, and weather to check that applicable TTC devices are effective, clearly visible, clean, and in compliance with the TTC plan.

D. When warranted, an engineering study should be made (in cooperation with law enforcement officials) of reported crashes occurring within the TTC zone. Crash records in TTC zones should be monitored to identify the need for changes in the TTC zone.

5. Attention should be given to the maintenance of roadside safety during the life of the TTC zone by applying the following principles:

A. To accommodate run-off-the-road incidents, disabled vehicles, or emergency situations, unencumbered roadside recovery areas or clear zones should be provided where practical.

B. Channelization of road users should be accomplished by the use of pavement markings, signing, and crashworthy, detectable channelizing devices.

C. Work equipment, workers' private vehicles, materials, and debris should be stored in such a manner to reduce the probability of being impacted by run-off-the-road vehicles.

6. Each person whose actions affect TTC zone safety, from the upper-level management through the field workers, should receive training appropriate to the job decisions each individual is required to make. Only those individuals who are trained in proper TTC practices and have a basic understanding of the principles (established by applicable standards and guidelines, including those of this Manual) should supervise the selection, placement, and maintenance of TTC devices used for TTC zones and for incident management.

7. Good public relations should be maintained by applying the following principles:

A. The needs of all road users should be assessed such that appropriate advance notice is given and clearly defined alternative paths are provided.

B. The cooperation of the various news media should be sought in publicizing the existence of and reasons for TTC zones because news releases can assist in keeping the road users well informed.

C. The needs of abutting property owners, residents, and businesses should be assessed and appropriate accommodations made.

D. The needs of emergency service providers (law enforcement, fire, and medical) should be assessed and appropriate coordination and accommodations made.

E. The needs of railroads and transit should be assessed and appropriate coordination and accommodations made.

F. The needs of operators of commercial vehicles such as buses and large trucks should be assessed and appropriate accommodations made.

Option:

G. Public Information - Improved road user performance may be realized through a well-prepared and complete public relations effort that covers the nature of the work, the time and duration of its execution, its anticipated effects on traffic, and possible alternate routes and modes of travel. Such programs can encourage the use of alternate routes, thus allowing consideration of temporary lane closures for additional buffer space.

Standard:

08 **Before any new detour or temporary route is opened to traffic, all necessary signs shall be in place.**

09 **All TTC devices shall be removed as soon as practical when they are no longer needed. When work is suspended for short periods of time, TTC devices that are no longer appropriate shall be removed or covered.**

10 On State highways, covers for TTC signs shall be of sufficient size and density to completely block out the message so that it is not visible either during the day or at night. Covers shall be fastened securely to prevent movement caused by wind action. Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.06. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Support:

11 Refer to Caltrans' Highway Design Manual Section 110.7 for Traffic Control Plans. Refer to Caltrans' Transportation Management Plan Guidelines for Temporary Traffic Control Zone Transportation Management Plan. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding these publications.

CHAPTER 6C. TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ELEMENTS

Section 6C.01 Temporary Traffic Control Plans

Support:

01 A TTC plan describes TTC measures to be used for facilitating road users through a work zone or an incident area. TTC plans play a vital role in providing continuity of effective road user flow when a work zone, incident, or other event temporarily disrupts normal road user flow. Important auxiliary provisions that cannot conveniently be specified on project plans can easily be incorporated into Special Provisions within the TTC plan.

02 TTC plans range in scope from being very detailed to simply referencing typical drawings contained in this Manual, standard approved highway agency drawings and manuals, or specific drawings contained in the contract documents. The degree of detail in the TTC plan depends entirely on the nature and complexity of the situation.

Guidance:

03 *TTC plans should be prepared by persons knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) about the fundamental principles of TTC and work activities to be performed. The design, selection, and placement of TTC devices for a TTC plan should be based on engineering judgment.*

04 *Coordination should be made between adjacent or overlapping projects to check that duplicate signing is not used and to check compatibility of traffic control between adjacent or overlapping projects.*

05 *Traffic control planning should be completed for all highway construction, utility work, maintenance operations, and incident management including minor maintenance and utility projects prior to occupying the TTC zone. Planning for all road users should be included in the process.*

06 *Provisions for effective continuity of accessible circulation paths for pedestrians should be incorporated into the TTC process. Where existing pedestrian routes are blocked or detoured, information should be provided about alternative routes that are usable by pedestrians with disabilities, particularly those who have visual disabilities. Access to temporary bus stops, travel across intersections with accessible pedestrian signals (see Section 4E.09), and other routing issues should be considered where temporary pedestrian routes are channelized. Barriers and channelizing devices that are detectable by people with visual disabilities should be provided.*

Option:

07 Provisions may be incorporated into the project bid documents that enable contractors to develop an alternate TTC plan.

08 Modifications of TTC plans may be necessary because of changed conditions or a determination of better methods of safely and efficiently handling road users.

~~*Guidance:*~~

Standard:

09 **This alternate or modified plan ~~should~~** shall **have the approval of the** Engineer or the Engineer's designee of the public agency or authority having jurisdiction over the highway **~~responsible highway agency~~ prior to implementation.**

Guidance:

10 *Provisions for effective continuity of transit service should be incorporated into the TTC planning process because often public transit buses cannot efficiently be detoured in the same manner as other vehicles (particularly for short-term maintenance projects). Where applicable, the TTC plan should provide for features such as accessible temporary bus stops, pull-outs, and satisfactory waiting areas for transit patrons, including persons with disabilities, if applicable (see Section 8A.08 for additional light rail transit issues to consider for TTC).*

11 *Provisions for effective continuity of railroad service and acceptable access to abutting property owners and businesses should also be incorporated into the TTC planning process.*

Reduced Speed Limits in TTC Zones

Guidance:

12 *Reduced speed limits should be used only in the specific portion of the TTC zone where conditions or restrictive features are present. However, frequent changes in the speed limit should be avoided. A TTC plan*

should be designed so that vehicles can travel through the TTC zone with a speed limit reduction of no more than 10 mph.

13 *A reduction of more than 10 mph in the speed limit should be used only when required by restrictive features in the TTC zone. Where restrictive features justify a speed reduction of more than 10 mph, additional driver notification should be provided. The speed limit should be stepped down in advance of the location requiring the lowest speed, and additional TTC warning devices should be used.*

14 *Reduced speed zoning (lowering the regulatory speed limit) should be avoided as much as practical because drivers will reduce their speeds only if they clearly perceive a need to do so.*

Standard:

14a The justification for the reduced regulatory speed limit shall be documented in writing. Refer to CVC 21367 and 22362.

Option:

14b Reduced speed limits in construction zones may be established by an engineering analysis, which may include a traffic and engineering survey.

Support:

15 Research has demonstrated that large reductions in the speed limit, such as a 30 mph reduction, increase speed variance and the potential for crashes. Smaller reductions in the speed limit of up to 10 mph cause smaller changes in speed variance and lessen the potential for increased crashes. A reduction in the regulatory speed limit of only up to 10 mph from the normal speed limit has been shown to be more effective.

Support:

16 See Section 2B.13 for Regulatory Speed Limit signs and Speed Zones.

17 See Section 6F.12 for WORK ZONE (G20-5aP) plaque and END WORK ZONE SPEED LIMIT (R2-12) sign.

18 CVC section 22362 gives the agency having jurisdiction over a highway the authority to regulate the speed of traffic to provide protection for workers when at work on the roadway or within the right-of-way so close thereto as to be endangered by passing traffic.

19 CVC Section 21367 gives the agency having jurisdiction over a highway the authority to regulate the speed of traffic whenever the traffic would endanger the safety of workers or the work would interfere with or endanger the movement of traffic through the area.

Guidance:

20 *The need for a long-term reduced speed limit within a TTC zone should be a decision made during the project development process. The need for a short-term reduced speed limit within a TTC zone, such as a maintenance activity, should be determined in advance of planned maintenance activities.*

Option:

21 If lowering speed limits for a short-term, such as a maintenance activity, signs lowering the speed limit by 10 mph or less may be placed in work zones that are not protected by a positive barrier and involve workers on foot or on equipment.

Guidance:

22 *Reducing speed limits in TTC zones should be avoided if traffic speeds can be reduced by other means. Speed restrictions should be imposed on the public only when necessary for worker or public safety.*

Standard:

23 Where traffic obstructions exist only during the hours of construction, the speed zone signs shall be covered during non-working hours.

Support:

24 CVC 22362 applies to "When Workers are Present" condition and signs need to be covered or removed when no work is in progress. As per CVC 21367, agency can "...regulate the movement of traffic...whenever the traffic would endanger the safety of workers or the work would interfere with or endanger the movement of traffic through the area." If obstructions would be present throughout the project duration the signs would not need to be covered or removed. This would also apply to situations where the construction work changes the highway configuration, curvature or elevation, making it necessary to post reduced speed limits.

Option:

25 The Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque may be used in combination with various warning type signs to decrease speed at a particular location. See Section 6F.52

Guidance:

26 *To preserve the effectiveness of the W13-1P plaque, it should not be used unless the condition to which it applies is immediate and will be experienced by all motorists.*

Guidance:

27 *Construction zone speed limits should be reduced in sequential stages and where overall reduction of 15 mph or more is required. The first stage of the sequence should be a reduction of 10 mph and the final stage reduction should be 10 mph or 5 mph, as necessary.*

Standard:

28 The reduced speed limit shall not be less than 25 mph. Refer to CVC 22362.

Option:

29 As an example, if the project falls within an established 55 mph zone, and a 40 mph speed limit is considered necessary, it may be posted only if the approaching speed limits are lowered in two stages (i.e., first to a 45 mph speed limit followed by a reduction to the desired 40 mph.)

Support:

30 Documentation for reducing speed limits in TTC zones are ordinarily issued for the entire length of the TTC zones in a project. This avoids the necessity and resulting delay of obtaining new documentation each time the speed restriction signs require relocation to fit the conditions. It is not the intention, however, that the entire length be posted for the duration of the project.

Standard:

31 Speed limit signs for reduced speed limits shall be posted only in areas where the traveling public is affected by TTC operations.

Standard:

32 Signs shall be used only during working hours and removed, or covered during non-working hours unless the movement of traffic through the TTC zone is affected during non-working hours as well. Refer to CVC 21367.

33 Signs shall be removed immediately following completion of the construction or change in the conditions for which they were installed. When the construction is completed or the speed restriction is no longer necessary, the formal speed zone orders shall be revoked.

Section 6C.02 Temporary Traffic Control Zones

Support:

01 A TTC zone is an area of a highway where road user conditions are changed because of a work zone, an incident zone, or a planned special event through the use of TTC devices, uniformed law enforcement officers, or other authorized personnel.

02 A work zone is an area of a highway with construction, maintenance, or utility work activities. A work zone is typically marked by signs, channelizing devices, barriers, pavement markings, and/or work vehicles. It extends from the first warning sign or high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on a vehicle to the END ROAD WORK sign or the last TTC device.

03 An incident zone is an area of a highway where temporary traffic controls are imposed by authorized officials in response to a traffic incident (see Section 6I.01). It extends from the first warning device (such as a sign, light, or cone) to the last TTC device or to a point where road users return to the original lane alignment and are clear of the incident.

04 A planned special event often creates the need to establish altered traffic patterns to handle the increased traffic volumes generated by the event. The size of the TTC zone associated with a planned special event can be small, such as closing a street for a festival, or can extend throughout a municipality for larger events. The duration of the TTC zone is determined by the duration of the planned special event.

Section 6C.03 Components of Temporary Traffic Control Zones

Support:

01 Most TTC zones are divided into four areas: the advance warning area, the transition area, the activity area, and the termination area. Figure 6C-1 illustrates these four areas. These four areas are described in Sections 6C.04 through 6C.07.

Section 6C.04 Advance Warning Area

Support:

01 The advance warning area is the section of highway where road users are informed about the upcoming work zone or incident area.

Option:

02 The advance warning area may vary from a single sign or high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on a vehicle to a series of signs in advance of the TTC zone activity area.

Guidance:

03 *Typical distances for placement of advance warning signs on freeways and expressways should be longer because drivers are conditioned to uninterrupted flow. Therefore, the advance warning sign placement should extend on these facilities as far as 1/2 mile or more.*

04 *On urban streets, the effective placement of the first warning sign in feet should range from 4 to 8 times the speed limit in mph, with the high end of the range being used when speeds are relatively high. When a single advance warning sign is used (in cases such as low-speed residential streets), the advance warning area can be as short as 100 feet. When two or more advance warning signs are used on higher-speed streets, such as major arterials, the advance warning area should extend a greater distance (see Table 6C-1).*

05 *Since rural highways are normally characterized by higher speeds, the effective placement of the first warning sign in feet should be substantially longer—from 8 to 12 times the speed limit in mph. Since two or more advance warning signs are normally used for these conditions, the advance warning area should extend 1,500 feet or more for open highway conditions (see Table 6C-1).*

06 *The distances contained in Table 6C-1 are approximate, are intended for guidance purposes only, and should be applied with engineering judgment. These distances should be adjusted for field conditions, if necessary, by increasing or decreasing the recommended distances.*

Support:

07 The need to provide additional reaction time for a condition is one example of justification for increasing the sign spacing. Conversely, decreasing the sign spacing might be justified in order to place a sign immediately downstream of an intersection or major driveway such that traffic turning onto the roadway in the direction of the TTC zone will be warned of the upcoming condition.

Option:

08 Advance warning may be eliminated when the activity area is ~~sufficiently removed from the road users' path~~ behind a barrier, more than 2 feet behind the curb, or 15 feet or more from the edge of the traveled way so that it does not interfere with the normal flow.

Section 6C.05 Transition Area

Support:

01 The transition area is that section of highway where road users are redirected out of their normal path. Transition areas usually involve strategic use of tapers, which because of their importance are discussed separately in detail.

Standard:

02 **When redirection of the road users' normal path is required, they shall be directed from the normal path to a new path.**

Option:

03 Because it is impractical in mobile operations to redirect the road user's normal path with stationary channelization, more dominant vehicle-mounted traffic control devices, such as arrow boards, portable changeable message signs, and high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, may be used instead of channelizing devices to establish a transition area.

Section 6C.06 Activity Area

Support:

01 The activity area is the section of the highway where the work activity takes place. It is comprised of the work space, the traffic space, and the buffer space.

02 The work space is that portion of the highway closed to road users and set aside for workers, equipment, and material, and a shadow vehicle if one is used upstream. Work spaces are usually delineated for road users by channelizing devices or, to exclude vehicles and pedestrians, by temporary barriers.

Option:

03 The work space may be stationary or may move as work progresses.

Guidance:

04 *Since there might be several work spaces (some even separated by several miles) within the project limits, each work space should be adequately signed to inform road users and reduce confusion.*

Support:

05 The traffic space is the portion of the highway in which road users are routed through the activity area.

06 The buffer space is a lateral and/or longitudinal area that separates road user flow from the work space or an unsafe area, and might provide some recovery space for an errant vehicle.

Guidance:

07 *Neither work activity nor storage of equipment, vehicles, or material should occur within a buffer space.*

Option:

08 Buffer spaces may be positioned either longitudinally or laterally with respect to the direction of road user flow. The activity area may contain one or more lateral or longitudinal buffer spaces.

09 A longitudinal buffer space may be placed in advance of a work space.

Guidance:

10 *The longitudinal buffer space ~~may~~ should also be used to separate opposing road user flows that use portions of the same traffic lane, as shown in Figure 6C-2.*

Option:

11 If a longitudinal buffer space is used, the values shown in Table 6C-2 and Table 6C-101(CA) may be used to determine the length of the longitudinal buffer space.

Support:

12 Typically, the buffer space is formed as a traffic island and defined by channelizing devices.

13 When a shadow vehicle, arrow board, or changeable message sign is placed in a closed lane in advance of a work space, only the area upstream of the vehicle, arrow board, or changeable message sign constitutes the buffer space.

Option:

14 The lateral buffer space may be used to separate the traffic space from the work space, as shown in Figures 6C-1 and 6C-2, or such areas as excavations or pavement edge drop-offs. A lateral buffer space also may be used between two travel lanes, especially those carrying opposing flows.

Guidance:

15 *The width of a lateral buffer space should be determined by engineering judgment.*

Option:

16 When work occurs on a high-volume, highly congested facility, a vehicle storage or staging space may be provided for incident response and emergency vehicles (for example, tow trucks and fire apparatus) so that these vehicles can respond quickly to road user incidents.

Section 6C.07 Termination Area

Support:

01 The termination area is the section of the highway where road users are returned to their normal driving path. The termination area extends from the downstream end of the work area to the last TTC device such as END ROAD WORK signs, if posted.

Option:

02 An END ROAD WORK sign, a Speed Limit sign, or other signs may be used to inform road users that they can resume normal operations.

03 A longitudinal buffer space may be used between the work space and the beginning of the downstream taper.

Section 6C.08 Tapers

Option:

01 Tapers may be used in both the transition and termination areas. Whenever tapers are to be used in close proximity to an interchange ramp, crossroads, curves, or other influencing factors, the length of the tapers may be adjusted.

Support:

02 Tapers are created by using a series of channelizing devices and/or pavement markings to move traffic out of or into the normal path. Types of tapers are shown in Figure 6C-2.

03 Longer tapers are not necessarily better than shorter tapers (particularly in urban areas with characteristics such as short block lengths or driveways) because extended tapers tend to encourage sluggish operation and to encourage drivers to delay lane changes unnecessarily. The test concerning adequate lengths of tapers involves observation of driver performance after TTC plans are put into effect.

Guidance:

04 *The appropriate taper length (L) should be determined using the criteria shown in Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4.*

05 *The maximum distance in feet between devices in a taper should not exceed 1.0 times the speed limit in mph.*

Support:

06 A merging taper requires the longest distance because drivers are required to merge into common road space.

Guidance:

07 *A merging taper should be long enough to enable merging drivers to have adequate advance warning and sufficient length to adjust their speeds and merge into an adjacent lane before the downstream end of the transition.*

Support:

08 A shifting taper is used when a lateral shift is needed. When more space is available, a longer than minimum taper distance can be beneficial. Changes in alignment can also be accomplished by using horizontal curves designed for normal highway speeds.

Guidance:

09 *A shifting taper should have a length of approximately 1/2 L (see Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4).*

Support:

10 A shoulder taper might be beneficial on a high-speed roadway where shoulders are part of the activity area and are closed, or when improved shoulders might be mistaken as a driving lane. In these instances, the same type, but abbreviated, closure procedures used on a normal portion of the roadway can be used.

Guidance:

11 *If used, shoulder tapers should have a length of approximately 1/3 L (see Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4). If a shoulder is used as a travel lane, either through practice or during a TTC activity, a normal merging or shifting taper should be used.*

Support:

12 A downstream taper might be useful in termination areas to provide a visual cue to the driver that access is available back into the original lane or path that was closed.

Guidance:

13 *If used, a downstream taper should have a minimum length of 50 feet and a maximum length of 100 feet with devices placed at a spacing of approximately 20 feet.*

Support:

14 The one-lane, two-way taper is used in advance of an activity area that occupies part of a two-way roadway in such a way that a portion of the road is used alternately by traffic in each direction.

Guidance:

15 *Traffic should be controlled by a flagger or temporary traffic control signal (if sight distance is limited), or a STOP or YIELD sign. A short taper having a minimum length of 50 feet and a maximum length of 100 feet with channelizing devices at approximately 20-foot spacing should be used to guide traffic into the one-lane section, and a downstream taper should be used to guide traffic back into their original lane.*

Support:

16 An example of a one-lane, two-way traffic taper is shown in Figure 6C-3.

Guidance:

17 *On State highways, Caltrans' Standard Plans for Traffic Control Systems (Standard Plans T9 through T17) should be used. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.*

Section 6C.09 Detours and Diversions

Support:

01 A detour is a temporary rerouting of road users onto an existing highway in order to avoid a TTC zone.

Guidance:

02 Detours should be clearly signed over their entire length so that road users can easily use existing highways to return to the original highway.

Support:

03 A diversion is a temporary rerouting of road users onto a temporary highway or alignment placed around the work area.

Standard:

04 The detour route shall be evaluated for height, weight, and size restrictions. Appropriate signs shall be posted along the route to advise road users of any restrictions. Refer to CVC 21363 for detour signs.

Option:

05 Advance signs or changeable message signs (CMS) may be necessary to give trucks an opportunity to turn around and retrace their path or select another route.

Section 6C.10 One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Standard:

01 **Except as provided in Paragraph 5, when traffic in both directions must use a single lane for a limited distance, movements from each end shall be coordinated.**

Guidance:

02 *Provisions should be made for alternate one-way movement through the constricted section via methods such as flagger control, ~~a flag transfer,~~ a pilot car, traffic control signals, or stop or yield control.*

03 *Control points at each end should be chosen to permit easy passing of opposing lanes of vehicles.*

04 *If traffic on the affected one-lane roadway is not visible from one end to the other, then flagging procedures, a pilot car with a flagger used as described in Section 6C.13, or a traffic control signal should be used to control opposing traffic flows.*

Option:

05 If the work space on a low-volume street or road is short and road users from both directions are able to see the traffic approaching from the opposite direction through and beyond the worksite, the movement of traffic through a one-lane, two-way constriction may be self-regulating.

Support:

06 See Section 5A.01 and Section 6A.01 for definition of a low-volume road where paragraph 5 is applied.

Section 6C.11 Flagger Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Guidance:

01 *Except as provided in Paragraph 2, traffic should be controlled by a flagger at each end of a constricted section of roadway. One of the flaggers should be designated as the coordinator. To provide coordination of the control of the traffic, the flaggers should be able to communicate with each other orally, electronically, or with manual signals. These manual signals should not be mistaken for flagging signals.*

Option:

02 When a one-lane, two-way TTC zone is short enough to allow a flagger to see from one end of the zone to the other, traffic may be controlled by either a single flagger or by a flagger at each end of the section.

Guidance:

03 *When a single flagger is used, the flagger should be stationed on the shoulder opposite the constriction or work space, or in a position where good visibility and traffic control can be maintained at all times. When good visibility and traffic control cannot be maintained by one flagger station, traffic should be controlled by a flagger at each end of the section.*

Section 6C.12 Flag Transfer Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

~~Support:~~

~~01 The driver of the last vehicle proceeding into the one-lane section is given a red flag (or other token) and instructed to deliver it to the flagger at the other end. The opposite flagger, upon receipt of the flag, then knows that traffic can be permitted to move in the other direction. A variation of this method is to replace the use of a flag with an official pilot car that follows the last road user vehicle proceeding through the section.~~

~~*Guidance:*~~

~~02 *The flag transfer method should be employed only where the one-way traffic is confined to a relatively short length of a road, usually no more than 1 mile in length.*~~

Standard:

01 This section is deleted for application and shall not be used in California. See section 6C.10, 6C.11, 6C.13, 6C.14, and 6C.15 for other methods of one-lane, two-way traffic control that are to be used in California.

Section 6C.13 Pilot Car Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Option:

01 A pilot car may be used to guide a queue of vehicles through the TTC zone or detour.

Guidance:

02 *The pilot car should have the name of the contractor or contracting authority prominently displayed.*

Standard:

03 **The PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME (G20-4) sign** or PILOT CAR DO NOT PASS (R115(CA)) sign **(see Section 6F.58) shall be mounted on the rear of the pilot vehicle.**

04 **A flagger shall be stationed on the approach to the activity area to control vehicular traffic until the pilot vehicle is available.**

Option:

05 Two or more pilot cars may be used to guide two-way traffic through a particularly complex detour or TTC zone.

Section 6C.14 Temporary Traffic Control Signal Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Option:

01 Traffic control signals may be used to control vehicular traffic movements in one-lane, two-way TTC zones (see Figure 6H-12 and Chapter 4H).

Section 6C.15 Stop or Yield Control Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Option:

01 STOP or YIELD signs may be used to control traffic on low-volume roads at a one-lane, two-way TTC zone when drivers are able to see the other end of the one-lane, two-way operation and have sufficient visibility of approaching vehicles.

Guidance:

02 *If the STOP or YIELD sign is installed for only one direction, then the STOP or YIELD sign should face road users who are driving on the side of the roadway that is closed for the work activity area.*

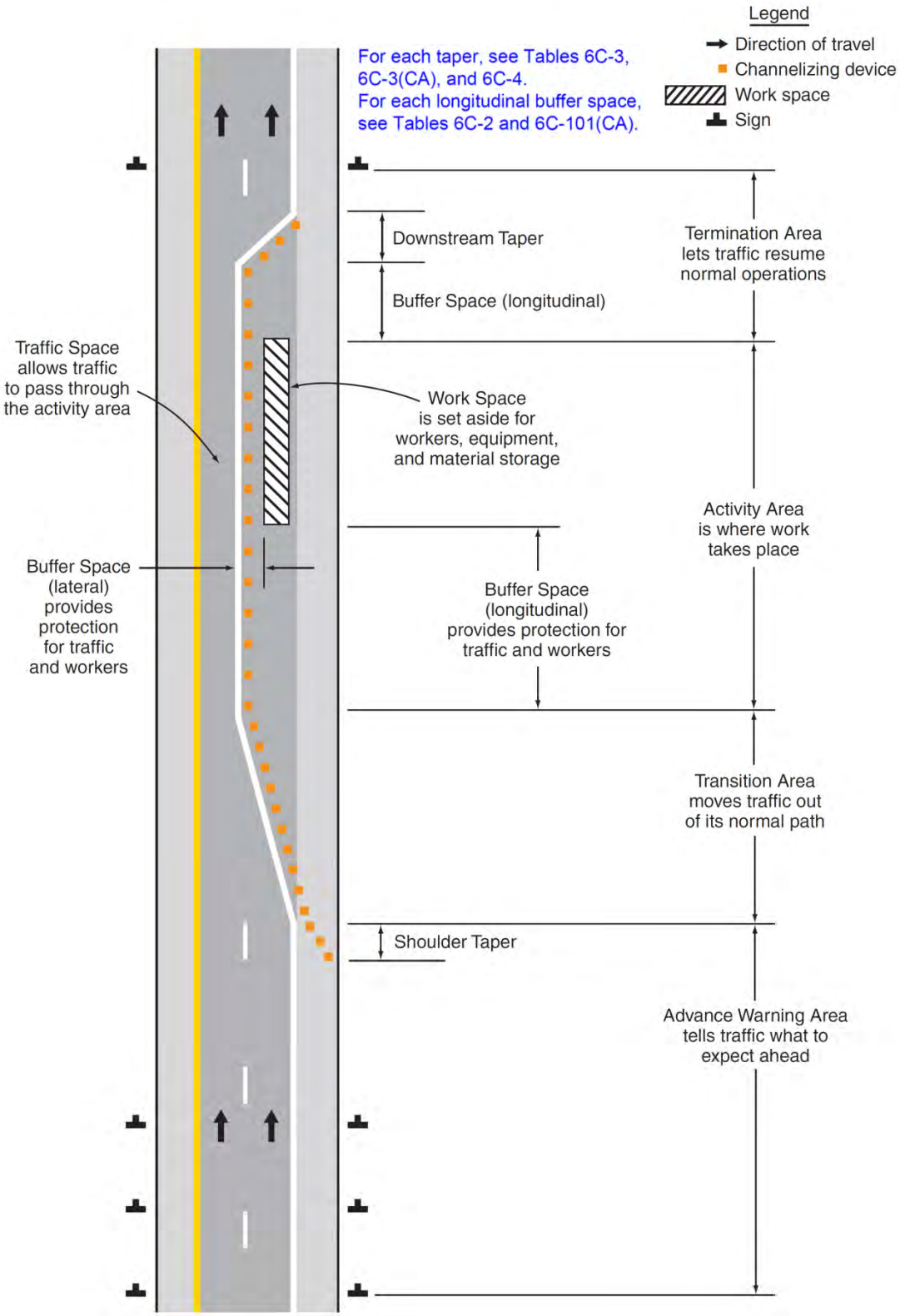
Standard:

03 The approach to the side that is not closed shall be visible (for a distance equal to the safe passing sight distance for that approach) to the driver who must yield or stop.

Support:

04 See Section 3B.02 and Figure 6H-11.

Figure 6C-1. Component Parts of a Temporary Traffic Control Zone



-

Figure 6C-2. Types of Tapers and Buffer Spaces

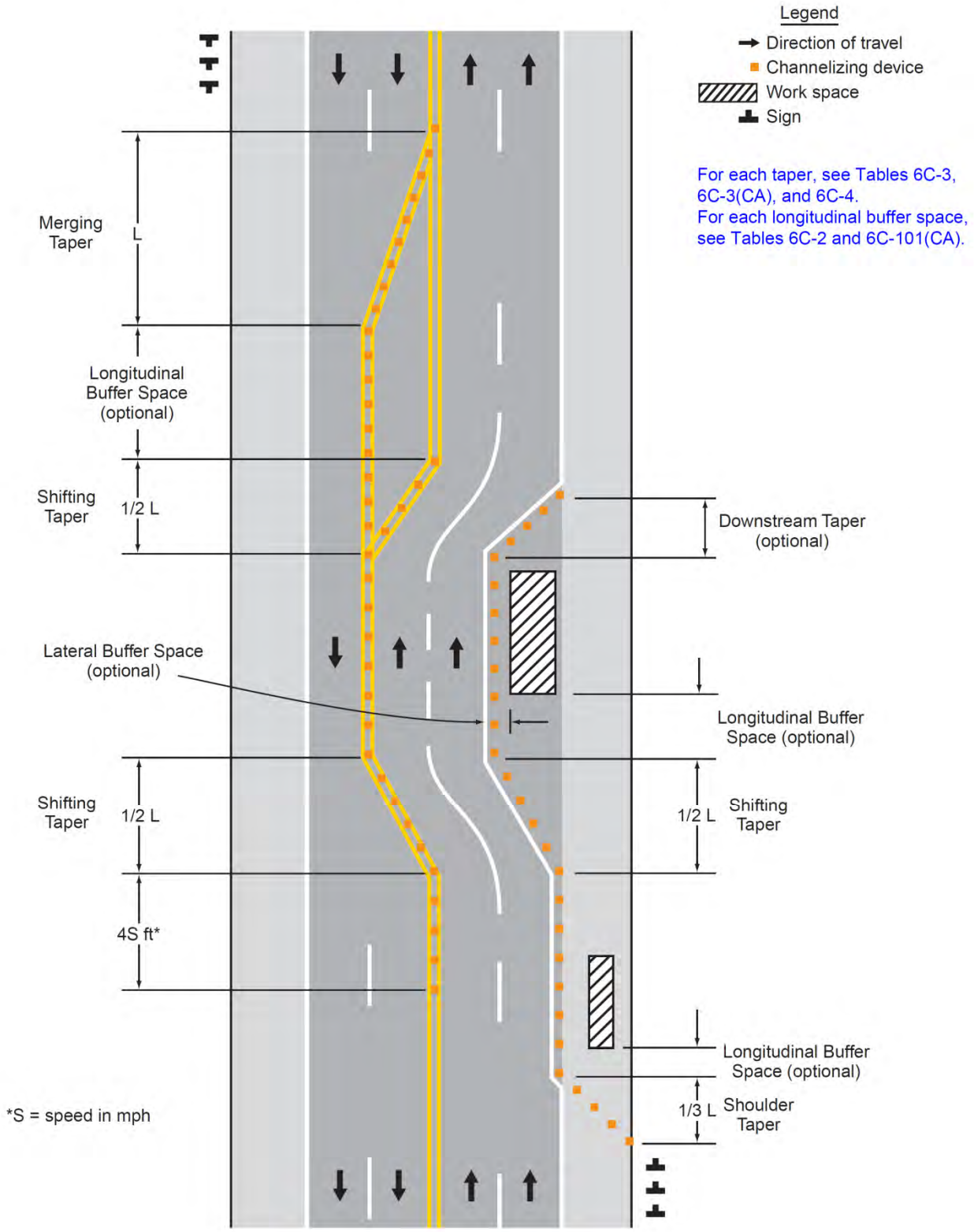


Figure 6C-3. Example of a One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Taper

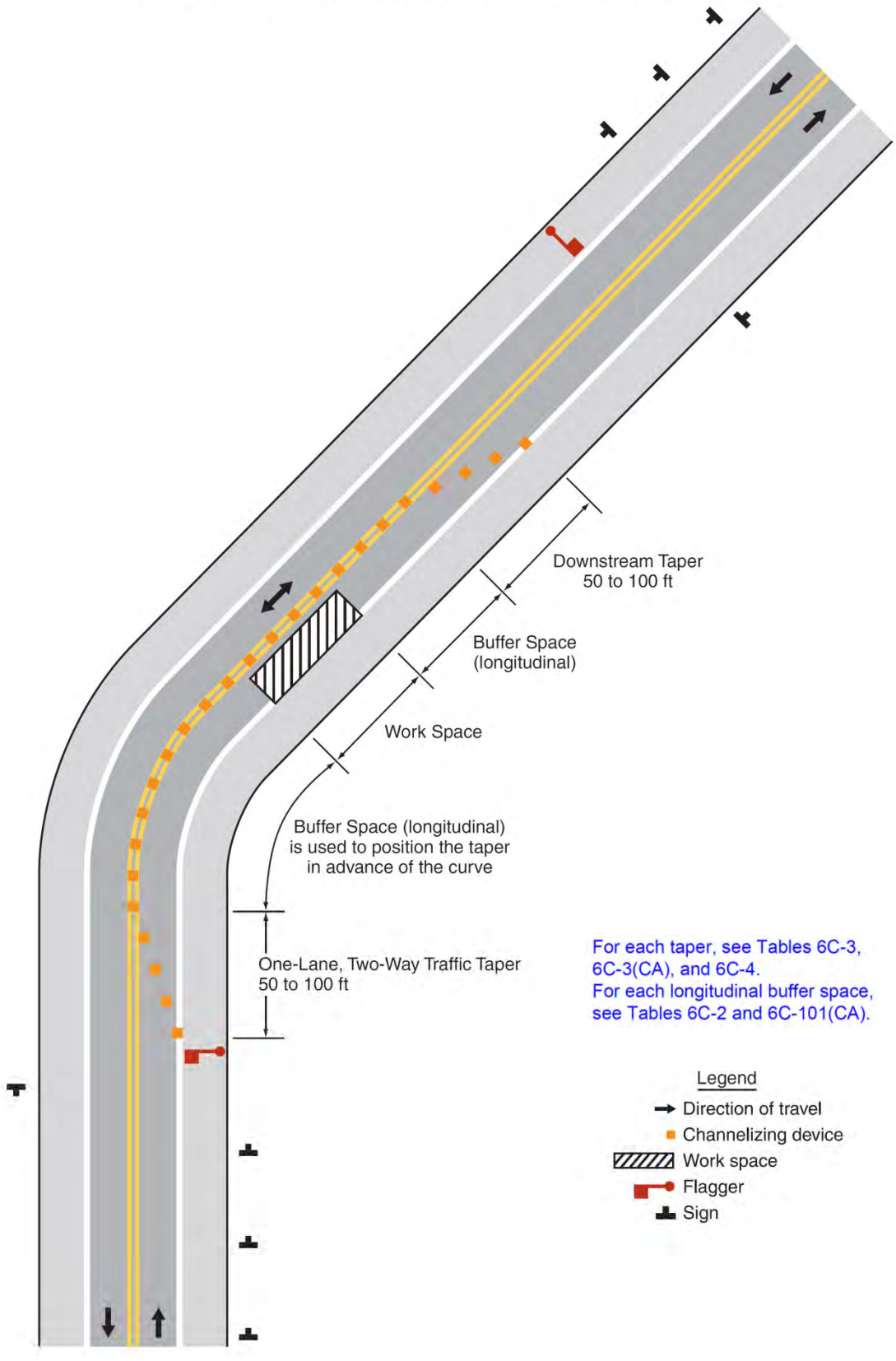


Table 6C-1. Recommended Advance Warning Sign ~~Minimum~~ Spacing

Road Type	Distance Between Signs**		
	A	B	C
Urban ~~(low speed)~~ - 25 mph or less***	100 feet	100 feet	100 feet
Urban - more than 25 mph to 40 mph***	250 feet	250 feet	250 feet
Urban ~~(high speed)~~ - more than 40 mph***	350 feet	350 feet	350 feet
Rural	500 feet	500 feet	500 feet
Expressway / Freeway	1,000 feet	1,500 feet	2,640 feet

* ~~Speed category to be determined by the highway agency.~~

** The column headings A, B, and C are the dimensions shown in Figures 6H-1 through 6H-46. The A dimension is the distance from the transition or point of restriction to the first sign. The B dimension is the distance between the first and second signs. The C dimension is the distance between the second and third signs. (The "first sign" is the sign in a three-sign series that is closest to the TTC zone. The "third sign" is the sign that is furthest upstream from the TTC zone.)

*** Posted speed limit, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or other anticipated operating speed in mph.

Table 6C-2. Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed on Level Roads. (Used as suggested longitudinal buffer space length or location for flagger station)

Speed*	Distance
20 mph	115 feet
25 mph	155 feet
30 mph	200 feet
35 mph	250 feet
40 mph	305 feet
45 mph	360 feet
50 mph	425 feet
55 mph	495 feet
60 mph	570 feet
65 mph	645 feet
70 mph	730 feet
75 mph	820 feet

* Posted speed, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph.

Table 6C-3. Taper Length Criteria for Temporary Traffic Control Zones

Type of Taper	Taper Length
Merging Taper	at least L
Shifting Taper	at least 0.5 L
Shoulder Taper	at least 0.33 L
One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Taper	50 feet minimum, 100 feet maximum
Downstream Taper	50 feet minimum, 100 feet maximum

Note: Use Table 6C-4 to calculate L

Table 6C-3(CA). Taper Length Criteria for Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(for 12 feet Offset Width)

Speed* S (mph)	Minimum Taper Length** for Width of Offset 12 feet (W)			
	Merging L (feet)	Shifting L/2 (feet)	Shoulder L/3 (feet)	Down Stream (feet)***
20	80	40	27	50
25	125	63	42	50
30	180	90	60	50
35	245	123	82	50
40	320	160	107	50
45	540	270	180	50
50	600	300	200	50
55	660	330	220	50
60	720	360	240	50
65	780	390	260	50
70	840	420	280	50
75	900	450	300	50

* - Posted speed limit, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph.

** - For other offsets use the following merging taper length formula for L:

For speeds of 40 mph or less, $L=WS^2/60$

For speeds of 45 mph or more, $L=WS$

Where: L = taper length in feet
W = width of offset in feet
S = posted speed limit, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph

*** - Maximum downstream taper length is 100 feet. See Section 6C.08.

Table 6C-4. Formulas for Determining Taper Length

Speed (S)	Taper Length (L) in feet
40 mph or less	$L = \frac{WS^2}{60}$
45 mph or more	$L = WS$

Where: L = taper length in feet
W = width of offset in feet
S = posted speed limit, or off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph

Table 6C-101(CA). Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed on Downgrades.
(Used as suggested longitudinal buffer space length or location for flagger station)

Speed (mph)	% Downgrade (Buffer Space)		
	-3% (feet)	-6% (feet)	-9% (feet)
20	116	120	126
25	158	165	173
30	205	215	227
35	257	271	287
40	315	333	354
45	378	400	427
50	446	474	507
55	520	553	593
60	598	638	686
65	682	728	785
70	771	825	891
75	866	927	1003

* Exhibit 3-2. A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, AASHTO, 2001, p.115.

CHAPTER 6D. PEDESTRIAN AND WORKER SAFETY

Section 6D.01 Pedestrian Considerations

Support:

01 A wide range of pedestrians might be affected by TTC zones, including the young, elderly, and people with disabilities such as hearing, visual, or mobility. These pedestrians need a clearly delineated and usable travel path. Considerations for pedestrians with disabilities are addressed in Section 6D.02.

Standard:

02 **The various TTC provisions for pedestrian and worker safety set forth in Part 6 shall be applied by knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) persons after appropriate evaluation and engineering judgment.**

03 **Advance notification of sidewalk closures shall be provided by the maintaining agency.**

04 **If the TTC zone affects the movement of pedestrians, adequate pedestrian access and walkways shall be provided. If the TTC zone affects an accessible and detectable pedestrian facility, the accessibility and detectability shall be maintained along the alternate pedestrian route.**

Option:

05 If establishing or maintaining an alternate pedestrian route is not feasible during the project, an alternate means of providing for pedestrians may be used, such as adding free bus service around the project or assigning someone the responsibility to assist pedestrians with disabilities through the project limits.

Support:

06 It must be recognized that pedestrians are reluctant to retrace their steps to a prior intersection for a crossing or to add distance or out-of-the-way travel to a destination.

Guidance:

07 *The following three items should be considered when planning for pedestrians in TTC zones:*

A. Pedestrians should not be led into conflicts with vehicles, equipment, and operations.

B. Pedestrians should not be led into conflicts with vehicles moving through or around the worksite.

C. Pedestrians should be provided with a convenient and accessible path that replicates as nearly as practical the most desirable characteristics of the existing sidewalk(s) or footpath(s).

08 *A pedestrian route should not be severed and/or moved for non-construction activities such as parking for vehicles and equipment.*

09 *Consideration should be made to separate pedestrian movements from both worksite activity and vehicular traffic. Unless an acceptable route that does not involve crossing the roadway can be provided, pedestrians should be appropriately directed with advance signing that encourages them to cross to the opposite side of the roadway. In urban and suburban areas with high vehicular traffic volumes, these signs should be placed at intersections (rather than midblock locations) so that pedestrians are not confronted with midblock worksites that will induce them to attempt skirting the worksite or making a midblock crossing.*

Support:

10 Figures 6H-28 and 6H-29 show typical TTC device usage and techniques for pedestrian movement through work zones.

Guidance:

11 *To accommodate the needs of pedestrians, including those with disabilities, the following considerations should be addressed when temporary pedestrian pathways in TTC zones are designed or modified:*

A. Provisions for continuity of accessible paths for pedestrians should be incorporated into the TTC plan.

B. Access to transit stops should be maintained.

C. A smooth, continuous hard surface should be provided throughout the entire length of the temporary pedestrian facility. There should be no curbs or abrupt changes in grade or terrain that could cause tripping or be a barrier to wheelchair use. The geometry and alignment of the facility should meet the applicable requirements of the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11).

D. The width of the existing pedestrian facility should be provided for the temporary facility if practical. Traffic control devices and other construction materials and features should not intrude into the usable width of the

sidewalk, temporary pathway, or other pedestrian facility. When it is not possible to maintain a minimum width of 60 inches throughout the entire length of the pedestrian pathway, a 60 x 60-inch passing space should be provided at least every 200 feet to allow individuals in wheelchairs to pass.

E. Blocked routes, alternate crossings, and sign and signal information should be communicated to pedestrians with visual disabilities by providing devices such as audible information devices, accessible pedestrian signals, or barriers and channelizing devices that are detectable to the pedestrians traveling with the aid of a long cane or who have low vision. Where pedestrian traffic is detoured to a TTC signal, engineering judgment should be used to determine if pedestrian signals or accessible pedestrian signals should be considered for crossings along an alternate route.

F. When channelization is used to delineate a pedestrian pathway, a continuous detectable edging should be provided throughout the length of the facility such that pedestrians using a long cane can follow it. These detectable edgings should comply with the provisions of Section 6F.74.

G. Signs and other devices mounted lower than 7 feet above the temporary pedestrian pathway should not project more than 4 inches into accessible pedestrian facilities.

Option:

12 Whenever it is feasible, closing off the worksite from pedestrian intrusion may be preferable to channelizing pedestrian traffic along the site with TTC devices.

Guidance:

13 *Fencing should not create sight distance restrictions for road users. Fences should not be constructed of materials that would be hazardous if impacted by vehicles. Wooden railing, fencing, and similar systems placed immediately adjacent to motor vehicle traffic should not be used as substitutes for crashworthy temporary traffic barriers.*

14 *Ballast for TTC devices should be kept to the minimum amount needed and should be mounted low to prevent penetration of the vehicle windshield.*

15 *Movement by work vehicles and equipment across designated pedestrian paths should be minimized and, when necessary, should be controlled by flaggers or TTC. Staging or stopping of work vehicles or equipment along the side of pedestrian paths should be avoided, since it encourages movement of workers, equipment, and materials across the pedestrian path.*

16 *Access to the work space by workers and equipment across pedestrian walkways should be minimized because the access often creates unacceptable changes in grade, and rough or muddy terrain, and pedestrians will tend to avoid these areas by attempting non-intersection crossings where no curb ramps are available.*

Option:

17 A canopied walkway may be used to protect pedestrians from falling debris, and to provide a covered passage for pedestrians.

Guidance:

18 *Covered walkways should be sturdily constructed and adequately lighted for nighttime use.*

19 *When pedestrian and vehicle paths are rerouted to a closer proximity to each other, consideration should be given to separating them by a temporary traffic barrier.*

20 *If a temporary traffic barrier is used to shield pedestrians, it should be designed to accommodate site conditions.*

Support:

21 Depending on the possible vehicular speed and angle of impact, temporary traffic barriers might deflect upon impact by an errant vehicle. Guidance for locating and designing temporary traffic barriers can be found in Chapter 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

22 **Short intermittent segments of temporary traffic barrier shall not be used because they nullify the containment and redirective capabilities of the temporary traffic barrier, increase the potential for serious injury both to vehicle occupants and pedestrians, and encourage the presence of blunt, leading ends. All upstream leading ends that are present shall be appropriately flared or protected with properly installed and maintained crashworthy cushions. Adjacent temporary traffic barrier segments shall be properly connected in order to provide the overall strength required for the temporary traffic barrier to perform properly.**

23 **Normal vertical curbing shall not be used as a substitute for temporary traffic barriers when temporary traffic barriers are needed.**

Option:

24 Temporary traffic barriers or longitudinal channelizing devices may be used to discourage pedestrians from unauthorized movements into the work space. They may also be used to inhibit conflicts with vehicular traffic by minimizing the possibility of midblock crossings.

Support:

25 A major concern for pedestrians is urban and suburban building construction encroaching onto the contiguous sidewalks, which forces pedestrians off the curb into direct conflict with moving vehicles.

Guidance:

26 *If a significant potential exists for vehicle incursions into the pedestrian path, pedestrians should be rerouted or temporary traffic barriers should be installed.*

Support:

27 TTC devices, jersey barriers, and wood or chain link fencing with a continuous detectable edging can satisfactorily delineate a pedestrian path.

Guidance:

28 *Tape, rope, or plastic chain strung between devices are not detectable, do not comply with the design standards in the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11), and should not be used as a control for pedestrian movements.*

29 *In general, pedestrian routes should be preserved in urban and commercial suburban areas. Alternative routing should be discouraged.*

30 *The highway agency in charge of the TTC zone should regularly inspect the activity area so that effective pedestrian TTC is maintained.*

Support:

31 Other laws and requirements are unique to California and need to be followed when providing pedestrian access through or around TTC zones.

32 Additional information on this topic can be found in publication titled "Pedestrian Considerations for California Temporary Traffic Control Zones on Caltrans' following web link:
http://dot.ca.gov/hq/traffops/engineering/control-devices/pdf/PedBrochure.pdf

Section 6D.02 Accessibility Considerations

Support:

01 Additional information on the design and construction of accessible temporary facilities is found in publications listed in Section 1A.11 (see Publications 12, 38, 39, and 42).

Guidance:

02 *The extent of pedestrian needs should be determined through engineering judgment or by the individual responsible for each TTC zone situation. Adequate provisions should be made for pedestrians with disabilities.*

Standard:

03 **When existing pedestrian facilities are disrupted, closed, or relocated in a TTC zone, the temporary facilities shall be detectable and include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility. Where pedestrians with visual disabilities normally use the closed sidewalk, a barrier that is detectable by a person with a visual disability traveling with the aid of a long cane shall be placed across the full width of the closed sidewalk.**

Support:

04 Maintaining a detectable, channelized pedestrian route is much more useful to pedestrians who have visual disabilities than closing a walkway and providing audible directions to an alternate route involving additional crossings and a return to the original route. Braille is not useful in conveying such information because it is difficult to find. Audible instructions might be provided, but the extra distance and additional street crossings might add complexity to a trip.

Guidance:

05 *Because printed signs and surface delineation are not usable by pedestrians with visual disabilities, blocked routes, alternate crossings, and sign and signal information should be communicated to pedestrians with visual*

disabilities by providing audible information devices, accessible pedestrian signals, and barriers and channelizing devices that are detectable to pedestrians traveling with the aid of a long cane or who have low vision.

Support:

06 The most desirable way to provide information to pedestrians with visual disabilities that is equivalent to visual signing for notification of sidewalk closures is a speech message provided by an audible information device. Devices that provide speech messages in response to passive pedestrian actuation are the most desirable. Other devices that continuously emit a message, or that emit a message in response to use of a pushbutton, are also acceptable. signing information can also be transmitted to personal receivers, but currently such receivers are not likely to be carried or used by pedestrians with visual disabilities in TTC zones. Audible information devices might not be needed if detectable channelizing devices make an alternate route of travel evident to pedestrians with visual disabilities.

Guidance:

07 *If a pushbutton is used to provide equivalent TTC information to pedestrians with visual disabilities, the pushbutton should be equipped with a locator tone to notify pedestrians with visual disabilities that a special accommodation is available, and to help them locate the pushbutton.*

Section 6D.03 Worker Safety Considerations

Support:

01 Equally as important as the safety of road users traveling through the TTC zone is the safety of workers. TTC zones present temporary and constantly changing conditions that are unexpected by the road user. This creates an even higher degree of vulnerability for workers on or near the roadway.

02 Maintaining TTC zones with road user flow inhibited as little as possible, and using TTC devices that get the road user's attention and provide positive direction are of particular importance. Likewise, equipment and vehicles moving within the activity area create a risk to workers on foot. When possible, the separation of moving equipment and construction vehicles from workers on foot provides the operator of these vehicles with a greater separation clearance and improved sight lines to minimize exposure to the hazards of moving vehicles and equipment.

Guidance:

03 *The following are the key elements of worker safety and TTC management that should be considered to improve worker safety:*

A. *Training—all workers should be trained on how to work next to motor vehicle traffic in a way that minimizes their vulnerability. Workers having specific TTC responsibilities should be trained in TTC techniques, device usage, and placement.*
B. *Temporary Traffic Barriers—temporary traffic barriers should be placed along the work space depending on factors such as lateral clearance of workers from adjacent traffic, speed of traffic, duration and type of operations, time of day, and volume of traffic.*
C. *Speed Reduction—reducing the speed of vehicular traffic, mainly through regulatory speed zoning, funneling, lane reduction, or the use of uniformed law enforcement officers or flaggers, should be considered. The use of regulatory speed zone signing tends to be more effective when law enforcement is present. Refer to Section 6C.01.*
D. *Activity Area—planning the internal work activity area to minimize backing-up maneuvers of construction vehicles should be considered to minimize the exposure to risk.*
E. *Worker Safety Planning—a trained person designated by the employer should conduct a basic hazard assessment for the worksite and job classifications required in the activity area. This safety professional should determine whether engineering, administrative, or personal protection measures should be implemented. This plan should be in accordance with the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, as amended, "General Duty Clause" Section 5(a)(1) - Public Law 91-596, 84 Stat. 1590, December 29, 1970, as amended, and with the requirement to assess worker risk exposures for each job site and job classification, as per 29 CFR 1926.20 (b)(2) of "Occupational Safety and Health Administration Regulations, General Safety and Health Provisions" (see Section 1A.11).*

Standard:

04 **All workers, including emergency responders, within the right-of-way who are exposed either to traffic (vehicles using the highway for purposes of travel) or to work vehicles and construction equipment within the TTC zone shall wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the Performance Class 2 or 3 requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 107–2004 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Safety Apparel and Headwear" (see Section 1A.11), or equivalent revisions, and labeled as meeting the ANSI 107-2004**, or equivalent revisions, **standard performance for Class 2 or 3 risk exposure, except as provided in Paragraph 5. A person designated by the employer to be responsible for worker safety shall make the selection of the appropriate class of garment.**

04a Refer to Construction Safety Order in the California Code of Regulations (Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 11, Section 1598 and 1599). See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Option:

05 Emergency and incident responders and law enforcement personnel within the TTC zone may wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the performance requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 207-2006 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Public Safety Vests" (see Section 1A.11), or equivalent revisions, and labeled as ANSI 207-2006, or equivalent revisions, in lieu of ANSI/ISEA 107-2004 apparel.

Standard:

06 **When uniformed law enforcement personnel are used to direct traffic, to investigate crashes, or to handle lane closures, obstructed roadways, and disasters, high-visibility safety apparel as described in this Section shall be worn by the law enforcement personnel.**

07 **Except as provided in Paragraph 8, firefighters or other emergency responders working within the right-of-way shall wear high-visibility safety apparel as described in this Section.**

Option:

08 Firefighters or other emergency responders working within the right-of-way and engaged in emergency operations that directly expose them to flame, fire, heat, and/or hazardous materials may wear retroreflective turnout gear that is specified and regulated by other organizations, such as the National Fire Protection Association.

09 The following are additional elements of TTC management that may be considered to improve worker safety:

A. Shadow Vehicle—in the case of mobile and constantly moving operations, such as pothole patching and striping operations, a shadow vehicle, equipped with appropriate lights and warning signs, may be used to protect the workers from impacts by errant vehicles. The shadow vehicle may be equipped with a rear-mounted impact attenuator.

B. Road Closure—if alternate routes are available to handle road users, the road may be closed temporarily. This may also facilitate project completion and thus further reduce worker vulnerability.

C. Law Enforcement Use—in highly vulnerable work situations, particularly those of relatively short duration, law enforcement units may be stationed to heighten the awareness of passing vehicular traffic and to improve safety through the TTC zone.

D. Lighting—for nighttime work, the TTC zone and approaches may be lighted.

Guidance:

Care should be taken to ensure that the lighting used for nighttime work does not cause blinding. Refer to CVC 21466.5 for light impairing driver's vision.

Support:

For construction lighting Refer to Construction Safety Order in the California Code of Regulations (Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 3, Section 1523 - Illumination). See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Option:

E. Special Devices—these include rumble strips, changeable message signs, hazard identification beacons, flags, and warning lights. Intrusion warning devices may be used to alert workers to the approach of errant vehicles.

Support:

F. Public Information – Well informed public plays an important role in worker safety. See Section 6B.01 for details.

Support:

10 Judicious use of the special devices described in Item E in Paragraph 9 might be helpful for certain difficult TTC situations, but misuse or overuse of special devices or techniques might lessen their effectiveness.

Section 6D.101(CA) Bicycle Considerations

Support:

01 There are several considerations in planning for bicyclists in TTC zones on highways and streets:

A. A travel route that replicates the most desirable characteristics of a wide paved shoulder or bikeway through or around the TTC zone is desirable for bicyclists.

B. If the TTC zone interrupts the continuity of an existing bikeway system, signs directing bicyclists through or around the zone and back to the bikeway is desirable.

C. Unless a separate bike path through or around the TTC zone is provided, adequate roadway lane width to allow bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side through or around the TTC zone is desirable.

Guidance:

D. When the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, warning signs should be used to advise motorists of the presence of bicyclists in the travel way lanes. See Section 6G.05 for more details.

Standard:

E. Bicyclists shall not be led into direct conflicts with mainline traffic, work site vehicles, or equipment moving through or around the TTC zone.

Support:

02 Figures 6H-15, 6H-30, 6H-32(CA), 6H-36(CA), 6H-101(CA), 6H-102(CA), 6H-103(CA), and 6H-104(CA) show typical TTC device usage and techniques for bicycle movement through TTC zones.

CHAPTER 6E. FLAGGER CONTROL

Section 6E.01 Qualifications for Flaggers

Guidance:

01 *Because flaggers are responsible for public safety and make the greatest number of contacts with the public of all highway workers, they should be trained in safe traffic control practices and public contact techniques. Flaggers should be able to satisfactorily demonstrate the following abilities:*

A. Ability to receive and communicate specific instructions clearly, firmly, and courteously;
B. Ability to move and maneuver quickly in order to avoid danger from errant vehicles;
C. Ability to control signaling devices (such as paddles and flags) in order to provide clear and positive guidance to drivers approaching a TTC zone in frequently changing situations;
D. Ability to understand and apply safe traffic control practices, sometimes in stressful or emergency situations; and
E. Ability to recognize dangerous traffic situations and warn workers in sufficient time to avoid injury.

Standard:

02 Flaggers shall be trained in the proper fundamentals of flagging moving traffic before being assigned as flaggers. Signaling directions used by flaggers shall conform to Figure 6E-3. The training and instructions shall be based on this Manual and work site conditions and also include the following:

(1) flagger equipment which must be used,
(2) layout of the work zone and flagging station,
(3) methods to signal traffic to stop, proceed or slow down,
(4) methods of one-way traffic control,
(5) trainee demonstration of proper flagging methodology and operations,
(6) emergency vehicles traveling through the work zone,
(7) handling emergency situations,
(8) methods of dealing with hostile drivers,
(9) flagging procedures when a single flagger is used (when applicable),

03 Documentation of the training shall be maintained as required by Injury Illness and Prevention Program of the General Industry Safety Order in the California Code of Regulations (Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 7, Section 3203).

04 Flaggers shall be trained by persons with the qualifications and experience necessary to effectively instruct the employee in the proper fundamentals of flagging moving traffic.

Support:

05 Refer to Construction Safety Order in the California Code of Regulations (Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 11, Section 1599 - Flaggers) for flagger training. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6E.02 High-Visibility Safety Apparel

Standard:

01 **For daytime and nighttime activity, flaggers shall wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the Performance Class 2 or 3 requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 107–2004 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Apparel and Headwear" (see Section 1A.11),** or equivalent revisions, **and labeled as meeting the ANSI 107-2004,** or equivalent revisions, **standard performance for Class 2 or 3 risk exposure. The apparel background (outer) material color shall be fluorescent orange-red, fluorescent yellow-green, or a combination of the two as defined in the ANSI standard. The retroreflective material shall be orange, yellow, white, silver, yellow-green, or a fluorescent version of these colors, and shall be visible at a minimum distance of 1,000 feet. The retroreflective safety apparel shall be designed to clearly identify the wearer as a person.**

Guidance:

02 *For nighttime activity, high-visibility safety apparel that meets the Performance Class 3 requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 107–2004 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Apparel and*

Headwear" (see Section 1A.11), or equivalent revisions, and labeled as meeting the ANSI 107-2004, or equivalent revisions, standard performance for Class 3 risk exposure should be considered for flagger wear.

Standard:

03 **When uniformed law enforcement officers are used to direct traffic within a TTC zone, they shall wear high-visibility safety apparel as described in this Section.**

Option:

04 In lieu of ANSI/ISEA 107-2004,or equivalent revisions apparel, law enforcement personnel within the TTC zone may wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the performance requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 207-2006 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Public Safety Vests" (see Section 1A.11), or equivalent revisions, and labeled as ANSI 207-2006, or equivalent revisions.

Section 6E.03 Hand-Signaling Devices

~~*Guidance:*~~

Standard:

01 **The STOP/SLOW (R1-1/W20-8) paddle ~~should~~ shall be the primary and preferred hand-signaling device because the STOP/SLOW paddle gives road users more positive guidance than red flags. Use of flags ~~should~~ shall be limited to emergency situations.**

~~**Standard:**~~

02 **The STOP/SLOW paddle shall have an octagonal shape on a rigid handle. STOP/SLOW paddles shall be at least 18 inches wide with letters at least 6 inches high. The STOP (R1-1) face shall have white letters and a white border on a red or fluorescent red background. The SLOW (W20-8) face shall have black letters and a black border on an orange or fluorescent orange background. When used at night, the STOP/SLOW paddle shall be retroreflectorized.**

02a The sign retroreflectivity shall be maintained at or above the minimum levels in Table 2A-3.

Guidance:

03 *The STOP/SLOW paddle should be fabricated from light semi-rigid material. The bottom of the STOP/SLOW sign portion of the paddle should be a minimum of 6 feet above the pavement when mounted on a rigid staff.*

Support:

04 The optimum method of displaying a STOP or SLOW message is to place the STOP/SLOW paddle on a rigid staff that is tall enough that when the end of the staff is resting on the ground, the message is high enough to be seen by approaching or stopped traffic.

Option:

04a The 24 x 24 inch size of the STOP/SLOW paddle may be used where greater emphasis is needed and speeds are 30 mph or more.

05 The STOP/SLOW paddle may be modified to improve conspicuity by incorporating ~~either~~ ~~white or~~ red flashing lights on the STOP face, and ~~either white or~~ yellow flashing lights on the SLOW face. The flashing lights may be arranged in any of the following patterns:

A. Two ~~white or~~ red lights, one centered vertically above and one centered vertically below the STOP legend; and/or two ~~white or~~ yellow lights, one centered vertically above and one centered vertically below the SLOW legend;

B. Two ~~white or~~ red lights, one centered horizontally on each side of the STOP legend; and/or two ~~white or~~ yellow lights, one centered horizontally on each side of the SLOW legend;

C. One ~~white or~~ red light centered below the STOP legend; and/or one ~~white or~~ yellow light centered below the SLOW legend;

D. A series of eight or more small ~~white or~~ red lights no larger than 1/4 inch in diameter along the outer edge of the paddle, arranged in an octagonal pattern at the eight corners of the border of the STOP face; and/ or a series of eight or more small ~~white or~~ yellow lights no larger than 1/4 inch in diameter along the outer edge of the paddle, arranged in a diamond pattern along the border of the SLOW face; or

~~E. A series of white lights forming the shapes of the letters in the legend.~~

Standard:

06 **If flashing lights are used on the STOP face of the paddle, their colors shall be ~~all white or~~ all red. If flashing lights are used on the SLOW face of the paddle, their colors shall be ~~all white or~~ all yellow.**

07 **If more than eight flashing lights are used, the lights shall be arranged such that they clearly convey the octagonal shape of the STOP face of the paddle and/or the diamond shape of the SLOW face of the paddle.**

08 **If flashing lights are used on the STOP/SLOW paddle, the flash rate shall be at least 50, but not more than 60, flashes per minute.**

09 **Flags, when used** (for emergency situations only)**, shall be red or fluorescent orange/red in color, shall be a minimum of 24 inches square, and shall be securely fastened to a staff that is approximately 36 inches in length.**

Guidance:

10 *The free edge of a flag should be weighted so the flag will hang vertically, even in heavy winds.*

Standard:

11 **When used at nighttime** (for emergency situations only)**, flags shall be retroreflectorized red.**

Option:

12 When flagging in an emergency situation at night in a non-illuminated flagger station, a flagger may use a traffic baton made of a flashlight with a red glow cone to supplement the STOP/SLOW paddle or flag.

Standard:

13 **When a flashlight is used for flagging in an emergency situation at night in a non-illuminated flagger station, the flagger shall hold the flashlight in the left hand, shall hold the paddle or flag in the right hand as shown in Figure 6E-3, and shall use the flashlight in the following manner to control approaching road users:**

A. To inform road users to stop, the flagger shall hold the flashlight with the left arm extended and pointed down toward the ground, and then shall slowly wave the flashlight in front of the body in a slow arc from left to right such that the arc reaches no farther than 45 degrees from vertical.

B. To inform road users to proceed, the flagger shall point the flashlight at the vehicle's bumper, slowly aim the flashlight toward the open lane, then hold the flashlight in that position. The flagger shall not wave the flashlight.

C. To alert or slow traffic, the flagger shall point the flashlight toward oncoming traffic and quickly wave the flashlight in a figure eight motion.

Section 6E.04 Automated Flagger Assistance Devices

Support:

01 Automated Flagger Assistance Devices (AFADs) enable a flagger(s) to be positioned out of the lane of traffic and are used to control road users through temporary traffic control zones. These devices are designed to be remotely operated either by a single flagger at one end of the TTC zone or at a central location, or by separate flaggers near each device's location.

02 There are two types of AFADs:

A. An AFAD (see Section 6E.05) that uses a remotely controlled STOP/SLOW sign on either a trailer or a movable cart system to alternately control right-of-way.

B. An AFAD (see Section 6E.06) that uses remotely controlled red and yellow lenses and a gate arm to alternately control right-of-way.

03 AFADs might be appropriate for short-term and intermediate-term activities (see Section 6G.02). Typical applications include TTC activities such as, but not limited to:

A. Bridge maintenance;

B. Haul road crossings; and

C. Pavement patching.

Standard:

04 **AFADs shall only be used in situations where there is only one lane of approaching traffic in the direction to be controlled.**

05 **When used at night, the AFAD location shall be illuminated in accordance with Section 6E.08.**

Guidance:

06 *AFADs should not be used for long-term stationary work (see Section 6G.02).*

Standard:

07 **Because AFADs are not traffic control signals, they shall not be used as a substitute for or a replacement for a continuously operating temporary traffic control signal as described in Section 6F.84.**

08 **AFADs shall meet the crashworthy performance criteria contained in Section 6F.01.**

Guidance:

09 *If used, AFADs should be located in advance of one-lane, two-way tapers and downstream from the point where approaching traffic is to stop in response to the device.*

Standard:

10 **If used, AFADs shall be placed so that all of the signs and other items controlling traffic movement are readily visible to the driver of the initial approaching vehicle with advance warning signs alerting other approaching traffic to be prepared to stop.**

11 **If used, an AFAD shall be operated only by a flagger (see Section 6E.01) who has been trained on the operation of the AFAD. The flagger(s) operating the AFAD(s) shall not leave the AFAD(s) unattended at any time while the AFAD(s) is being used.**

12 **The use of AFADs shall conform to one of the following methods:**

A. An AFAD at each end of the TTC zone (Method 1), or

B. An AFAD at one end of the TTC zone and a flagger at the opposite end (Method 2).

13 **Except as provided in Paragraph 14, two flaggers shall be used when using either Method 1 or Method 2.**

Option:

14 A single flagger may simultaneously operate two AFADs (Method 1) or may operate a single AFAD on one end of the TTC zone while being the flagger at the opposite end of the TTC zone (Method 2) if both of the following conditions are present:

A. The flagger has an unobstructed view of the AFAD(s), and

B. The flagger has an unobstructed view of approaching traffic in both directions.

Guidance:

15 *When an AFAD is used, the advance warning signing should include a ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1) sign, a ONE LANE ROAD (W20-4) sign, and a BE PREPARED TO STOP (W3-4) sign.*

Standard:

16 **When the AFAD is not in use, the signs associated with the AFAD, both at the AFAD location and in advance, shall be removed or covered.**

Guidance:

17 *A State or local agency that elects to use AFADs should adopt a policy, based on engineering judgment, governing AFAD applications. The policy should also consider more detailed and/or more restrictive requirements for AFAD use, such as the following:*

A. Conditions applicable for the use of Method 1 and Method 2 AFAD operation,

B. Volume criteria,

C. Maximum distance between AFADs,

D. Conflicting lenses/indications monitoring requirements,

E. Fail safe procedures,

F. Additional signing and pavement markings,

G. Application consistency,

H. Larger signs or lenses to increase visibility, and

I. Use of backplates.

Section 6E.05 STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Devices

Standard:

01 **A STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD) (see Section 6E.04) shall include a STOP/SLOW sign that alternately displays the STOP (R1-1) face and the SLOW (W20-8) face of a STOP/SLOW paddle (see Figure 6E-1).**

02 **The AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign shall have an octagonal shape, shall be fabricated of rigid material, and shall be mounted with the bottom of the sign a minimum of 6 feet above the pavement on an**

appropriate support. The size of the STOP/SLOW sign shall be at least 24 x 24 inches with letters at least 8 inches high. The background of the STOP face shall be red with white letters and border. The background of the SLOW face shall be diamond shaped and orange with black letters and border. Both faces of the STOP/SLOW sign shall be retroreflectorized.

03 **The AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign shall have a means to positively lock, engage, or otherwise maintain the sign assembly in a stable condition when set in the STOP or SLOW position.**

04 **The AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign shall be supplemented with active conspicuity devices by incorporating either:**

A. ~~White or~~ red flashing lights within the STOP face and ~~white or~~ yellow flashing lights within the SLOW face meeting the provisions contained in Section 6E.03; or

B. A Stop Beacon (see Section 4L.05) mounted a maximum of 24 inches above the STOP face and a Warning Beacon (see Section 4L.03) mounted a maximum of 24 inches above, below, or to the side of the SLOW face. The Stop Beacon shall not be flashed or illuminated when the SLOW face is displayed, and the Warning Beacon shall not be flashed or illuminated when the STOP face is displayed. Except for the mounting locations, the beacons shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4L.

Option:

05 Type B warning light(s) (see Section 6F.83) may be used in lieu of the Warning Beacon during the display of the SLOW face of the AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign.

Standard:

06 **If Type B warning lights are used in lieu of a Warning Beacon, they shall flash continuously when the SLOW face is displayed and shall not be flashed or illuminated when the STOP face is displayed.**

Option:

07 The faces of the AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign may include louvers to improve the stability of the device in windy or other adverse environmental conditions.

Standard:

08 **If louvers are used, the louvers shall be designed such that the full sign face is visible to approaching traffic at a distance of 50 feet or greater.**

Guidance:

09 *The STOP/SLOW AFAD should include a gate arm that descends to a down position across the approach lane of traffic when the STOP face is displayed and then ascends to an upright position when the SLOW face is displayed.*

Option:

10 In lieu of a stationary STOP/SLOW sign with a separate gate arm, the STOP/SLOW sign may be attached to a mast arm that physically blocks the approach lane of traffic when the STOP face is displayed and then moves to a position that does not block the approach lane when the SLOW face is displayed.

Standard:

11 **Gate arms, if used, shall be fully retroreflectorized on both sides, and shall have vertical alternating red and white stripes at 16-inch intervals measured horizontally as shown in Figure 8C-1. When the arm is in the down position blocking the approach lane:**

A. The minimum vertical aspect of the arm and sheeting shall be 2 inches; and

B. The end of the arm shall reach at least to the center of the lane being controlled.

12 **A WAIT ON STOP (R1-7) sign (see Figure 6E-1) shall be displayed to road users approaching the AFAD.**

Option:

13 A GO ON SLOW (R1-8) sign (see Figure 6E-1) may also be displayed to road users approaching the AFAD.

Standard:

14 **The GO ON SLOW sign, if used, and the WAIT ON STOP sign shall be positioned on the same support structure as the AFAD or immediately adjacent to the AFAD such that they are in the same direct line of view of approaching traffic as the sign faces of the AFAD. Both signs shall have black legends and borders on white backgrounds. Each of these signs shall be rectangular in shape and each shall be at least 24 x 30 inches in size with letters at least 6 inches high.**

15 **To inform road users to stop, the AFAD shall display the STOP face and the red ~~or white~~ lights, if used, within the STOP face shall flash or the Stop Beacon shall flash. To inform road users to proceed, the**

AFAD shall display the SLOW face and the yellow ~~or white~~ lights, if used, within the SLOW face shall flash or the Warning Beacon or the Type B warning lights shall flash.

16 **If STOP/SLOW AFADs are used to control traffic in a one-lane, two-way TTC zone, safeguards shall be incorporated to prevent the flagger(s) from simultaneously displaying the SLOW face at each end of the TTC zone. Additionally, the flagger(s) shall not display the AFAD's SLOW face until all oncoming vehicles have cleared the one-lane portion of the TTC zone.**

Section 6E.06 Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Devices

Standard:

01 **A Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD) (see Section 6E.04) shall alternately display a steadily illuminated CIRCULAR RED lens and a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens to control traffic without the need for a flagger in the immediate vicinity of the AFAD or on the roadway (see Figure 6E-2).**

02 **Red/Yellow Lens AFADs shall have at least one set of CIRCULAR RED and CIRCULAR YELLOW lenses that are 12 inches in diameter. Unless otherwise provided in this Section, the lenses and their arrangement, CIRCULAR RED on top and CIRCULAR YELLOW below, shall comply with the applicable provisions for traffic signal indications in Part 4. If the set of lenses is post-mounted, the bottom of the housing (including brackets) shall be at least 7 feet above the pavement. If the set of lenses is located over any portion of the highway that can be used by motor vehicles, the bottom of the housing (including brackets) shall be at least 15 feet above the pavement.**

Option:

03 Additional sets of CIRCULAR RED and CIRCULAR YELLOW lenses, located over the roadway or on the left-hand side of the approach and operated in unison with the primary set, may be used to improve visibility and/or conspicuity of the AFAD.

Standard:

04 **A Red/Yellow Lens AFAD shall include a gate arm that descends to a down position across the approach lane of traffic when the steady CIRCULAR RED lens is illuminated and then ascends to an upright position when the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens is illuminated. The gate arm shall be fully retroreflectorized on both sides, and shall have vertical alternating red and white stripes at 16-inch intervals measured horizontally as shown in Figure 8C-1. When the arm is in the down position blocking the approach lane:**

A. The minimum vertical aspect of the arm and sheeting shall be 2 inches; and

B. The end of the arm shall reach at least to the center of the lane being controlled.

05 **A Stop Here On Red (R10-6 ~~or R10-6a~~) sign (see Section 2B.53) shall be installed on the right-hand side of the approach at the point at which drivers are expected to stop when the steady CIRCULAR RED lens is illuminated (see Figure 6E-2).**

06 **To inform road users to stop, the AFAD shall display a steadily illuminated CIRCULAR RED lens and the gate arm shall be in the down position. To inform road users to proceed, the AFAD shall display a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens and the gate arm shall be in the upright position.**

07 **If Red/Yellow Lens AFADs are used to control traffic in a one-lane, two-way TTC zone, safeguards shall be incorporated to prevent the flagger(s) from actuating a simultaneous display of a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens at each end of the TTC zone. Additionally, the flagger shall not actuate the AFAD's display of the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens until all oncoming vehicles have cleared the one-lane portion of the TTC zone.**

08 **A change interval shall be provided as the transition between the display of the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW indication and the display of the steady CIRCULAR RED indication. During the change interval, the CIRCULAR YELLOW lens shall be steadily illuminated. The gate arm shall remain in the upright position during the display of the steadily illuminated CIRCULAR YELLOW change interval.**

09 **A change interval shall not be provided between the display of the steady CIRCULAR RED indication and the display of the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW indication.**

Guidance:

10 *The steadily illuminated CIRCULAR YELLOW change interval should have a duration of at least 5 seconds, unless a different duration, within the range of durations recommended by Section 4D.26, is justified by engineering judgment.*

Section 6E.07 Flagger Procedures

Support:

01 The use of paddles and flags by flaggers is illustrated in Figure 6E-3.

Standard:

02 **Flaggers shall use a STOP/SLOW paddle, a flag** (for emergency situations only)**, or an Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD) to control road users approaching a TTC zone. The use of hand movements alone without a paddle, flag, or AFAD to control road users shall be prohibited except for law enforcement personnel or emergency responders at incident scenes as described in Section 6I.01.**

03 **The following methods of signaling with paddles shall be used:**

A. To stop road users, the flagger shall face road users and aim the STOP paddle face toward road users in a stationary position with the arm extended horizontally away from the body. The free arm shall be held with the palm of the hand above shoulder level toward approaching traffic.

B. To direct stopped road users to proceed, the flagger shall face road users with the SLOW paddle face aimed toward road users in a stationary position with the arm extended horizontally away from the body. The flagger shall motion with the free hand for road users to proceed.

C. To alert or slow traffic, the flagger shall face road users with the SLOW paddle face aimed toward road users in a stationary position with the arm extended horizontally away from the body.

Option:

04 To further alert or slow traffic, the flagger holding the SLOW paddle face toward road users may motion up and down with the free hand, palm down.

Standard:

05 **The following methods of signaling with a flag** (for emergency situations only) **shall be used:**

A. To stop road users, the flagger shall face road users and extend the flag staff horizontally across the road users' lane in a stationary position so that the full area of the flag is visibly hanging below the staff. The free arm shall be held with the palm of the hand above shoulder level toward approaching traffic.

B. To direct stopped road users to proceed, the flagger shall face road users with the flag and arm lowered from the view of the road users, and shall motion with the free hand for road users to proceed. Flags shall not be used to signal road users to proceed.

C. To alert or slow traffic, the flagger shall face road users and slowly wave the flag in a sweeping motion of the extended arm from shoulder level to straight down without raising the arm above a horizontal position. The flagger shall keep the free hand down.

Guidance:

06 *The flagger should stand either on the shoulder adjacent to the road user being controlled or in the closed lane prior to stopping road users. A flagger should only stand in the lane being used by moving road users after road users have stopped. The flagger should be clearly visible to the first approaching road user at all times. The flagger also should be visible to other road users. The flagger should be stationed sufficiently in advance of the workers to warn them (for example, with audible warning devices such as horns or whistles) of approaching danger by out-of-control vehicles. The flagger should stand alone, away from other workers, work vehicles, or equipment.*

Option:

07 At spot lane closures where adequate sight distance is available for the reasonably safe handling of traffic, the use of one flagger may be sufficient.

Guidance:

08 *When a single flagger is used, the flagger should be stationed on the shoulder opposite the spot lane closure or work space, or in a position where good visibility and traffic control can be maintained at all times.*

Section 6E.08 Flagger Stations

Standard:

01 **Flagger stations shall be located such that approaching road users will have sufficient distance to stop at an intended stopping point.**

Option:

02 The distances shown in Table 6E-1, which provides information regarding the stopping sight distance as a function of speed, may be used for the location of a flagger station. These distances may be increased for downgrades (Table 6E-101(CA)) and other conditions that affect stopping distance.

Guidance:

03 *Flagger stations should be located such that an errant vehicle has additional space to stop without entering the work space. The flagger should identify an escape route that can be used to avoid being struck by an errant vehicle.*

Standard:

04 **Except in emergency situations, flagger stations shall be preceded by an advance warning sign or signs. Except in emergency situations, flagger stations shall be illuminated at night.**

Support:

05 Refer to Construction Safety Orders in the California Code of Regulations (Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 3, Section 1523 – Illumination and Section 1599 - Flaggers). See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Figure 6E-1. Example of the Use of a STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD)

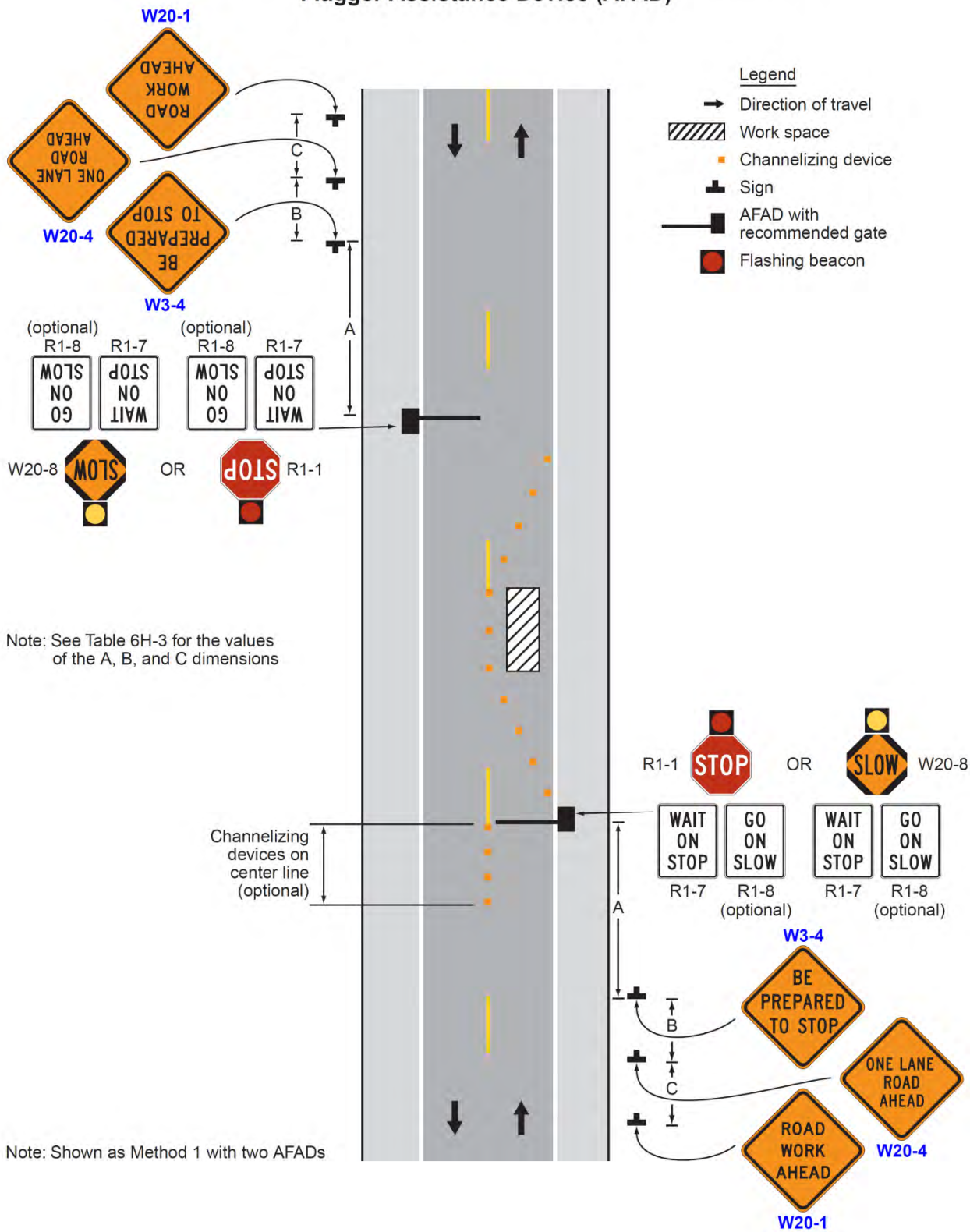


Figure 6E-2. Example of the Use of a Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD)

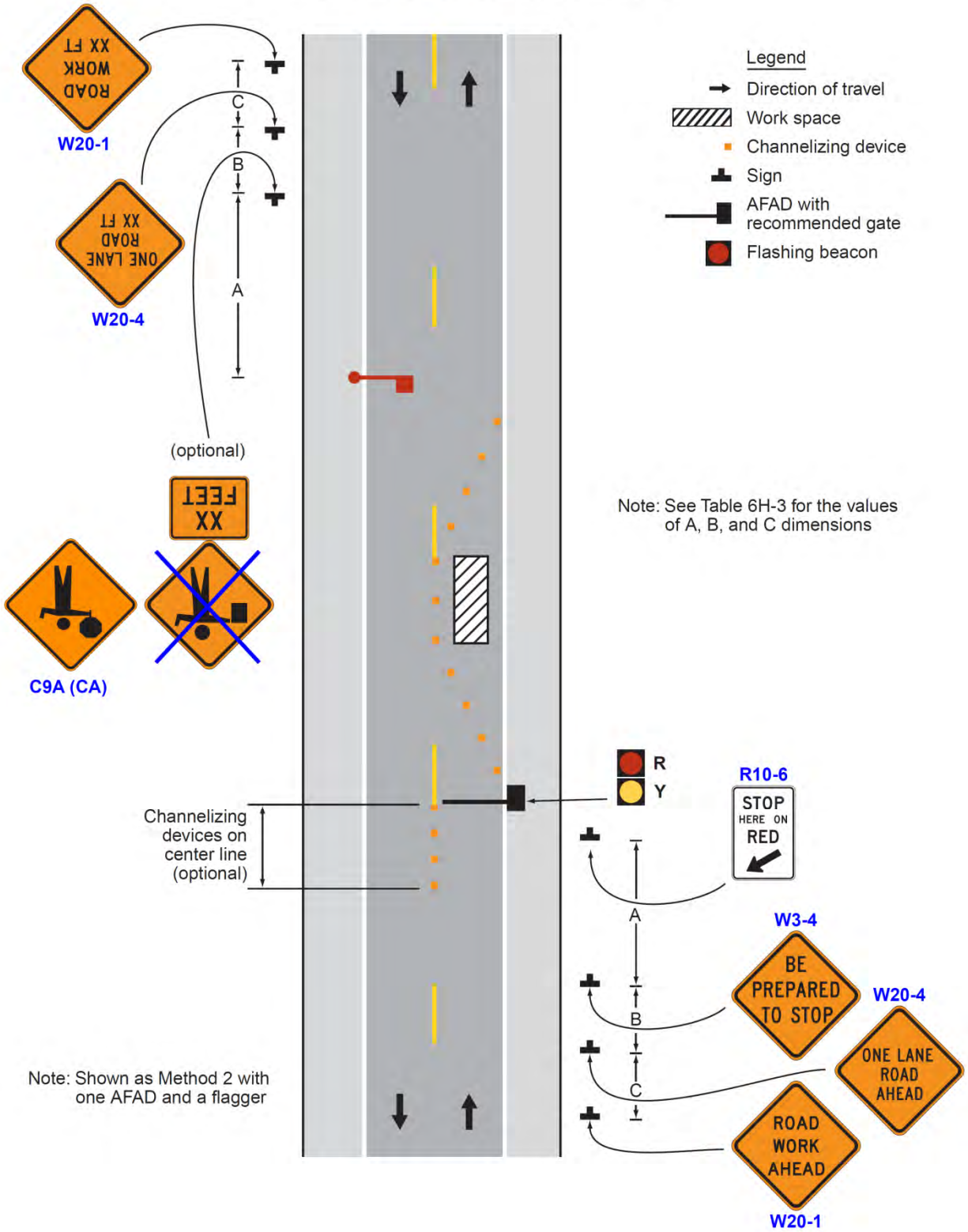


Figure 6E-3. Use of Hand-Signaling Devices by Flaggers

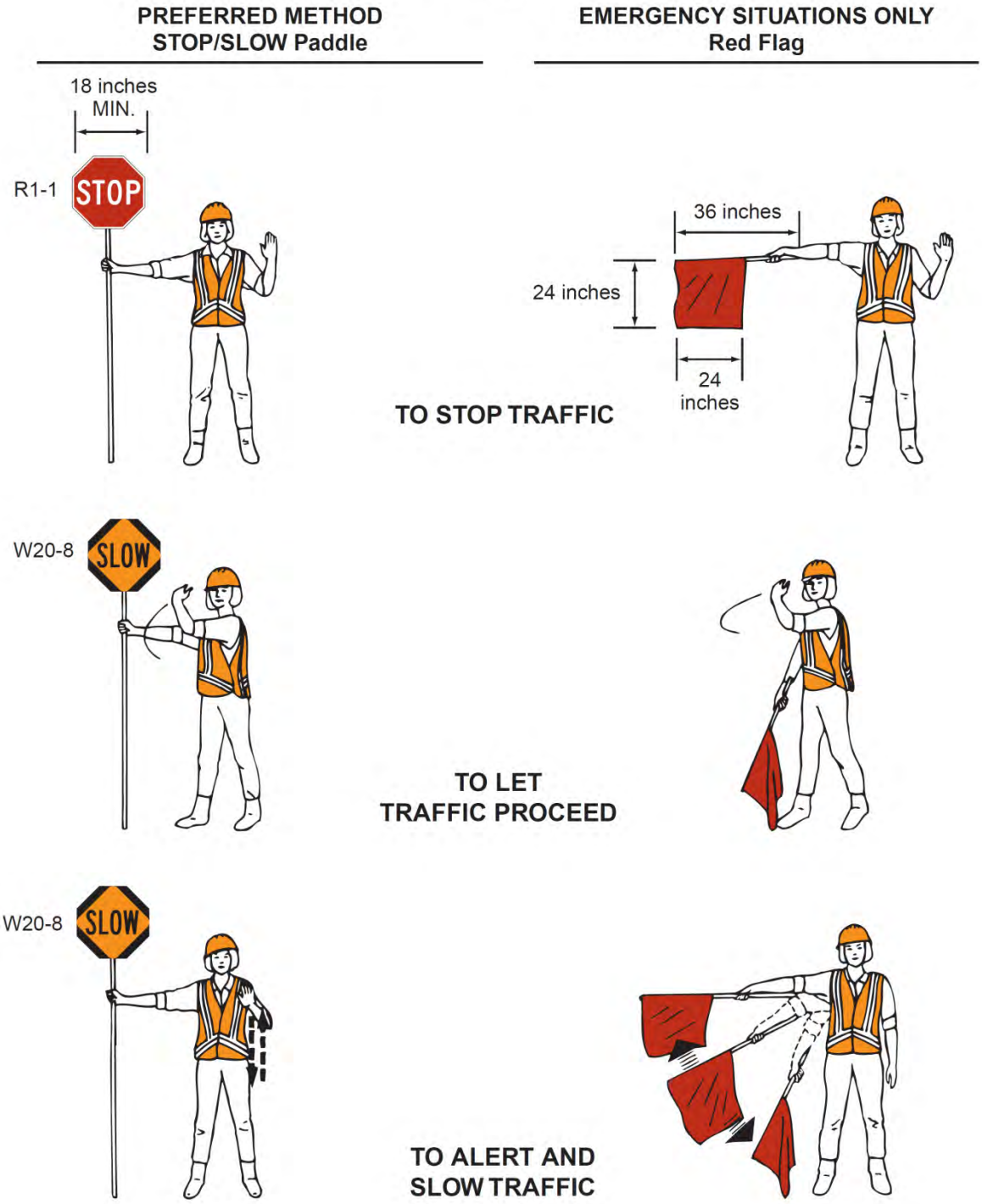


Table 6E-1. Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed on Level Roads.
(Used as suggested longitudinal buffer space length or location for flagger station)

Speed*	Distance
20 mph	115 feet
25 mph	155 feet
30 mph	200 feet
35 mph	250 feet
40 mph	305 feet
45 mph	360 feet
50 mph	425 feet
55 mph	495 feet
60 mph	570 feet
65 mph	645 feet
70 mph	730 feet
75 mph	820 feet

* Posted speed, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph.

Table 6E-101(CA). Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed on Downgrades.
(Used as suggested longitudinal buffer space length or location for flagger station)

Speed (mph)	% Downgrade (Buffer Space)		
	-3% (feet)	-6% (feet)	-9% (feet)
20	116	120	126
25	158	165	173
30	205	215	227
35	257	271	287
40	315	333	354
45	378	400	427
50	446	474	507
55	520	553	593
60	598	638	686
65	682	728	785
70	771	825	891
75	866	927	1003

* Exhibit 3-2. A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, AASHTO, 2001, p.115.

CHAPTER 6F. TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE DEVICES

Section 6F.01 Types of Devices

Guidance:

01 *The design and application of TTC devices used in TTC zones should consider the needs of all road users (motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians), including those with disabilities.*

Support:

02 FHWA policy requires that all roadside appurtenances such as traffic barriers, barrier terminals and crash cushions, bridge railings, sign and light pole supports, and work zone hardware used on the National Highway System meet the crashworthy performance criteria contained in the National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Report 350, "Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features." The FHWA website at "http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/programs/roadside_hardware.htm" identifies all such hardware and includes copies of FHWA acceptance letters for each of them. In the case of proprietary items, links are provided to manufacturers' websites as a source of detailed information on specific devices. The website also contains an "Ask the Experts" section where questions on roadside design issues can be addressed.

03 Various Sections of the MUTCD require certain traffic control devices, their supports, and/or related appurtenances to be crashworthy. Such MUTCD crashworthiness provisions apply to all streets, highways, and private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13). Also, State Departments of Transportation and local agencies might have expanded the NCHRP Report 350 crashworthy criteria to apply to certain other roadside appurtenances.

04 Crashworthiness and crash testing information on devices described in Part 6 are found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

05 As defined in Section 1A.13, "crashworthy" is a characteristic of a roadside appurtenance that has been successfully crash tested in accordance with a national standard such as the NCHRP Report 350, "Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features."

Standard:

06 **Traffic control devices shall be defined as all signs, signals, markings, and other devices used to regulate, warn, or guide road users, placed on, over, or adjacent to a street, highway, private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13), pedestrian facility, or bikeway by authority of a public body or official having jurisdiction.**

07 **All traffic control devices used for construction, maintenance, utility, or incident management operations on a street, highway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) shall comply with the applicable provisions of this Manual.**

08 Caltrans shall implement NCHRP 350 criteria for crashworthy TTC devices in TTC zones on all State highways effective as of December 1, 2005. Crashworthiness of TTC devices shall be substantiated. When no longer needed, TTC devices shall be removed from the TTC zone.

09 Crashworthiness of TTC devices shall be substantiated as follows:

10 Category 1 devices purchased after October 1, 1998 shall be employed based on the vendor's self-certification. Self-certification shall be based on crash testing, crash testing of similar devices, or years of demonstrable safe performance.

11 Category 2 devices shall be on FHWA's list of Acceptable Crashworthy Category 2 Hardware for Work Zones which meet NCHRP Report 350 criteria for crashworthiness. Category 2 devices that have not received FHWA acceptance and were purchased before October 1, 2000, shall not be used. Category 2 devices in use that have received FHWA acceptance shall be labeled with the FHWA acceptance letter number and the name of the manufacturer by the start of the project. The label shall be readable and permanently affixed by the manufacturer. Category 2 devices without a label shall not be used in highway work zones.

12 Category 3 devices shall be crash tested in accordance with NCHRP Report 350 criteria. Caltrans shall include Standard Special Provision (SSP) 12-000, Standard Plans and construction details in all contract documents.

Support:

13 For Category 3, the compliance date was October 1, 1998 for truck mounted attenuators and work zone crash cushions. The compliance date for other Category 3 devices was October 1, 2002.

Section 6F.02 General Characteristics of Signs

Support:

01 TTC zone signs convey both general and specific messages by means of words, symbols, and/or arrows and have the same three categories as all road user signs: regulatory, warning, and guide.

Standard:

02 **The colors for regulatory signs shall follow the Standards for regulatory signs in Table ~~2A-5~~ 2A-5(CA) and Chapter 2B. Warning signs in TTC zones shall have a black legend and border on an orange background, except for the Grade Crossing Advance Warning (W10-1) sign which shall have a black legend and border on a yellow background, and except for signs that are required or recommended in Parts 2 or 7 to have fluorescent yellow-green backgrounds. Colors for guide signs shall follow the Standards in Table ~~2A-5~~ 2A-5(CA) and Chapter 2D, except for guide signs as otherwise provided in Section 6F.55.**

Option:

03 Where the color orange is required, the fluorescent orange color may also be used.

Support:

04 The fluorescent version of orange provides higher conspicuity than standard orange, especially during twilight.

Option:

05 Existing warning signs that are still applicable may remain in place.

06 In order to maintain the systematic use of yellow or fluorescent yellow-green backgrounds for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs in a jurisdiction, the yellow or fluorescent yellow-green background for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs may be used in TTC zones.

07 Standard orange flags or flashing warning lights may be used in conjunction with signs.

Standard:

08 **When standard orange flags or flashing warning lights are used in conjunction with signs, they shall not block the sign face.**

09 **Except as provided in Section 2A.11, the sizes for TTC signs and plaques shall be as shown in Table 6F-1 and 6F-1(CA). The sizes in the minimum column shall only be used on local streets or roadways where the 85th-percentile speed or posted speed limit is less than 35 mph.**

Option:

10 The dimensions of signs and plaques shown in Table 6F-1 and 6F-1(CA) may be increased wherever necessary for greater legibility or emphasis.

Standard:

11 **Deviations from standard sizes as prescribed in this Manual shall be in 6-inch increments.**

Support:

12 Sign design details are contained in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11).

13 Section 2A.06 contains additional information regarding the design of signs, including an Option allowing the development of special word message signs if a standard word message or symbol sign is not available to convey the necessary regulatory, warning, or guidance information.

Standard:

14 **All signs used at night shall be either retroreflective with a material that has a smooth, sealed outer surface or illuminated to show the same shape and similar color both day and night.**

15 **The requirement for sign illumination shall not be considered to be satisfied by street, highway, or strobe lighting.**

15a TTC zone signs used at night shall maintain retroreflectivity at or above the minimum levels in Table 2A-3.

Option:

16 Sign illumination may be either internal or external.

17 Signs may be made of rigid or flexible material.

Support:

18 Sign design details are contained in FHWA's "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book and Caltrans' California Sign Specifications. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding these publications.

Section 6F.03 Sign Placement

Guidance:

01 *Signs should be located on the right-hand side of the roadway unless otherwise provided in this Manual.*

Option:

02 Where special emphasis is needed, signs may be placed on both the left-hand and right-hand sides of the roadway. Signs mounted on portable supports may be placed within the roadway itself. Signs may also be mounted on or above barricades.

Support:

03 The provisions of this Section regarding mounting height apply unless otherwise provided for a particular sign elsewhere in this Manual.

Standard:

04 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement, of signs installed at the side of the road in rural areas shall be 5 feet (see Figure 6F-1).**

05 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the top of the curb, or in the absence of curb, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way, of signs installed at the side of the road in business, commercial, or residential areas where parking or pedestrian movements are likely to occur, or where the view of the sign might be obstructed, shall be 7 feet (see Figure 6F-1).**

06 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the sidewalk, of signs installed above sidewalks shall be 7 feet.**

Option:

07 The height to the bottom of a secondary sign mounted below another sign may be 1 foot less than the height provided in Paragraphs 4 through 6.

Guidance:

08 ~~*Neither portable nor permanent sign supports should be located on sidewalks, bicycle facilities, or areas designated for pedestrian or bicycle traffic.*~~ *Sign supports should be located so as to accommodate pedestrians and bicyclists in areas designated for their use. A minimum lateral width of 4 feet should be maintained for pedestrian pathways. If the bottom of a secondary sign that is mounted below another sign is mounted lower than 7 feet above a pedestrian sidewalk or pathway (see Section 6D.02), the secondary sign should not project more than 4 inches into the pedestrian facility.*

Standard:

09 **Where it has been determined that the accommodation of pedestrians with disabilities is necessary, signs shall be mounted and placed in accordance with Section 4.4 of the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11).**

10 **Signs mounted on barricades and barricade/sign combinations shall be crashworthy.**

Guidance:

11 *Except as provided in Paragraph 12, signs (see Figures 6F-3, 6F-4 and 6F-5) mounted on portable sign supports that do not meet the minimum mounting heights provided in Paragraphs 4 through 6 should not be used for a duration of more than 3 days.*

Option:

12 The R9-8 through R9-11a series, R11 series, W1-6 through W1-8 series, M4-10, E5-1, ~~or other similar type signs (see Figures 6F-3, 6F-4, and 6F-5)~~ may be used on portable sign supports that do not meet the minimum mounting heights provided in Paragraphs 4 through 6 for longer than 3 days.

Support:

13 Methods of mounting signs other than on posts are illustrated in Figure 6F-2.

Guidance:

14 *Signs mounted on Type 3 Barricades should not cover more than 50 percent of the top two rails or 33 percent of the total area of the three rails.*

Standard:

15 **Sign supports shall be crashworthy. Where large signs having an area exceeding 50 square feet are installed on multiple breakaway posts, the clearance from the ground to the bottom of the sign shall be at least 7 feet.**

16 **The bottom of a sign mounted on a barricade, or other portable support, shall be at least 1 foot above the traveled way.**

Option:

17 For mobile operations, a sign may be mounted on a work vehicle, a shadow vehicle, or a trailer stationed in advance of the TTC zone or moving along with it.

Support:

18 If alterations are made to specific traffic control device supports that have been successfully crash tested in accordance with NCHRP Report 350, the altered supports might not be considered to be crashworthy.

19 Refer to Section 2A.21 for mounting of small plastic signs on channelizers (CA), cones or portable delineators.

Section 6F.04 Sign Maintenance

Guidance:

01 *Signs should be properly maintained for cleanliness, visibility, and correct positioning.*

02 *Signs that have lost significant legibility should be promptly replaced.*

Support:

03 Section 2A.08 contains information regarding the retroreflectivity of signs, including the signs that are used in TTC zones.

Section 6F.05 Regulatory Sign Authority

Support:

01 Regulatory signs such as those shown in Figure 6F-3 inform road users of traffic laws or regulations and indicate the applicability of legal requirements that would not otherwise be apparent.

Standard:

02 **Regulatory signs shall be authorized by the public agency or official having jurisdiction and shall conform with Chapter 2B.**

Support:

03 Some of the California regulatory signs used in TTC zones are shown in Figure 6F-101(CA) and Table 6F-1(CA).

Section 6F.06 Regulatory Sign Design

Standard:

01 **TTC regulatory signs shall comply with the Standards for regulatory signs presented in Part 2 and in the FHWA's "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11).**

Support:

02 Regulatory signs are generally rectangular with a black legend and border on a white background. Exceptions include the STOP, YIELD, DO NOT ENTER, WRONG WAY, and ONE WAY signs.

Option:

03 The ONE WAY sign may be either a horizontal or vertical rectangular sign.

Section 6F.07 Regulatory Sign Applications

Standard:

01 **If a TTC zone requires regulatory measures different from those existing, the existing permanent regulatory devices shall be removed or covered and superseded by the appropriate temporary regulatory signs. This change shall be made in compliance with applicable ordinances or statutes of the jurisdiction.**

Section 6F.08 ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (R11-2)

Guidance:

01 *The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED (R11-2) sign (see Figure 6F-3) should be used when the roadway is closed to all road users except contractors' equipment or officially authorized vehicles. The R11-2 sign should be accompanied by appropriate warning and detour signing.*

Option:

02 The words ~~BRIDGE OUT (or~~ BRIDGE CLOSED~~)~~ may be substituted for ROAD (STREET) CLOSED where applicable.

Guidance:

03 *The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED sign should be installed at or near the center of the roadway on or above a Type 3 Barricade that closes the roadway (see Section 6F.68).*

Standard:

04 **The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED sign shall not be used where road user flow is maintained through the TTC zone with a reduced number of lanes on the existing roadway or where the actual closure is some distance beyond the sign.**

Section 6F.09 Local Traffic Only Signs (R11-3a, R11-4)

Guidance:

01 *The Local Traffic Only signs (see Figure 6F-3) should be used where road user flow detours to avoid a closure some distance beyond the sign, but where local road users can use the roadway to the point of closure. These signs should be accompanied by appropriate warning and detour signing.*

02 *In rural applications, the Local Traffic Only sign should have the legend ROAD CLOSED XX MILES AHEAD, LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY (R11-3a).*

Option:

03 In urban areas, the legend ROAD (STREET) CLOSED TO THRU TRAFFIC (R11-4) or ROAD CLOSED, LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY may be used.

04 In urban areas, a word message that includes the name of an intersecting street name or well-known destination may be substituted for the words XX MILES AHEAD on the R11-3a sign where applicable.

05 The words ~~BRIDGE OUT (or~~ BRIDGE CLOSED~~)~~ may be substituted for the words ROAD (STREET) CLOSED on the R11-3a or R11-4 sign where applicable.

Option:

06 The word RAMP may be substituted for ROAD or STREET where applicable.

Section 6F.10 Weight Limit Signs (R12-1, R12-2, R12-5)

Standard:

01 **A Weight Limit sign (see Figure 6F-3), which shows the gross weight ~~or axle weight~~ that is permitted on the roadway or bridge, shall be consistent with State or local regulations and shall not be installed without the approval of the authority having jurisdiction over the highway.**

02 **When weight restrictions are imposed because of the activity in a TTC zone, a marked detour shall be provided for vehicles weighing more than the posted limit.**

Section 6F.11 STAY IN LANE Sign (R4-9)

Option:

01 A STAY IN LANE (R4-9) sign (see Figure 6F-3) may be used where a multi-lane shift has been incorporated as part of the TTC on a highway to direct road users around road work that occupies part of the roadway on a multi-lane highway.

Section 6F.12 Work Zone and Higher Fines Signs and Plaques

Option:

01 A WORK ZONE (G20-5aP) plaque (see Figure 6F-3) may be mounted above a Speed Limit (R2-1) sign to emphasize that a reduced speed limit is in effect within a TTC zone. An END WORK ZONE SPEED LIMIT (R2-12) sign (see Figure 6F-3) may be installed at the downstream end of the reduced speed limit zone.

Guidance:

02 *A BEGIN ~~HIGHER~~ DOUBLE FINES ZONE (R2-10) sign (see Figure 6F-3) should be installed at the upstream end of a work zone where increased fines are imposed for traffic violations, and an END ~~HIGHER~~ DOUBLE FINES ZONE (R2-11) sign (see Figure 6F-3) should be installed at the downstream end of the work zone.*

Option:

03 Alternate legends such as BEGIN (or END) DOUBLE FINES ZONE may also be used for the R2-10 and R2-11 signs.

04 A ~~FINES HIGHER,~~ FINES DOUBLE, ~~or $XX FINE~~ plaque (see Section 2B.17 and Figure 6F-3) may be mounted below the Speed Limit sign if increased fines are imposed for traffic violations within the TTC zone.

05 Individual signs and plaques for work zone speed limits and higher fines may be combined into a single sign or may be displayed as an assembly of signs and plaques.

06 The TRAFFIC FINES DOUBLED IN CONSTRUCTION ZONES (C40(CA)) and TRAFFIC FINES DOUBLED IN WORK ZONES (C40A(CA)) signs may be placed approximately 500 feet in advance of the first required TTC sign(s). The placement of the C40(CA) and C40A(CA) signs is at the discretion of the responsible person(s) in charge of the work zone.

Support:

07 Refer to CVC 42009 for fines for offenses committed in highway construction or maintenance area. In California, as per CVC only doubling of the fines is allowed, not higher fines of other denominations.

Guidance:

08 *The C40A(CA) sign is intended to be manufactured as a fabric sign and should be used on a short term (daily) basis only. Longer term situations should use the C40(CA) sign.*

Support:

09 CVC 22362 applies to "When Workers are Present" condition and signs need to be covered or removed when no work is in progress. However, per CVC 21367, agency can "...regulate the movement of traffic...whenever the traffic would endanger the safety of workers or the work would interfere with or endanger the movement of traffic through the area." If obstructions would be present throughout the project duration the signs would not need to be covered or removed. This would also apply to situations where the construction work changes the highway configuration, curvature or elevation, making it necessary to post reduced speed limits.

Option:

10 The Speed Limit (R2-1) sign with a WORK ZONE (G20-5aP) plaque mounted above it may be used for the protection of workers during working hours to reduce speed limit within a TTC zone.

Standard:

11 The R2-1 sign with G20-5aP plaque mounted above it shall only be used in conjunction with appropriate advance warning signs.

12 The R2-1 signs with G20-5aP plaques mounted above them shall be removed or covered promptly when no longer applicable.

Support:

14 The R2-1 sign with G20-5aP mounted above it is authorized for use by CVC Section 22362. This section provides authority to post a speed limit of not less than 25 mph at locations where employees of any contractor, or of the agency in charge of the job, are engaged in work upon the roadway.

15 Posting unrealistically low speed limits will result in loss of sign credibility and a high violation rate.

Guidance:

16 *Before using a R2-1 sign with G20-5aP plaque mounted above it, work zone conditions should be analyzed to determine what maximum speed limit would be appropriate for that particular location.*

17 *The R2-1 sign with G20-5aP plaque mounted above it should be placed within 400 feet of the zone where workers are on the roadway or so nearly adjacent as to be endangered by traffic.*

Option:

18 The R2-1 sign with G20-5aP plaque mounted above it may be provided by the agency having jurisdiction over the street or road.

Guidance:

19 *The R2-1 sign with G20-5aP plaque mounted above it should be posted a maximum distance of 400 feet in advance of where, and when workers are present; and the Speed Reduction (W3-5) sign or Speed Zone Ahead (R2-4(CA)) sign informs road users of the reduced speed limit TTC zone.*

20 *As the TTC zone activities change, signs should be moved as appropriate.*

Section 6F.13 PEDESTRIAN CROSSWALK Sign (R9-8)

Option:

01 The PEDESTRIAN CROSSWALK (R9-8) sign (see Figure 6F-3) may be used to indicate where a temporary crosswalk has been established.

Standard:

02 **If a temporary crosswalk is established, it shall be accessible to pedestrians with disabilities in accordance with Section 6D.02.**

Section 6F.14 SIDEWALK CLOSED Signs (R9-9, R9-10, R9-11, R9-11a)

Guidance:

01 *SIDEWALK CLOSED signs (see Figure 6F-3) should be used where pedestrian flow is restricted. Bicycle/Pedestrian Detour (M4-9a) signs or Pedestrian Detour (M4-9b) signs should be used where pedestrian flow is rerouted (see Section 6F.59).*

02 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED (R9-9) sign should be installed at the beginning of the closed sidewalk, at the intersections preceding the closed sidewalk, and elsewhere along the closed sidewalk as needed.*

03 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED, (ARROW) USE OTHER SIDE (R9-10) sign should be installed at the beginning of the restricted sidewalk when a parallel sidewalk exists on the other side of the roadway.*

04 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED AHEAD, (ARROW) CROSS HERE (R9-11) sign should be used to indicate to pedestrians that sidewalks beyond the sign are closed and to direct them to open crosswalks, sidewalks, or other travel paths.*

05 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED, (ARROW) CROSS HERE (R9-11a) sign should be installed just beyond the point to which pedestrians are being redirected.*

Support:

06 These signs are typically mounted on a detectable barricade to encourage compliance and to communicate with pedestrians that the sidewalk is closed. Printed signs are not useful to many pedestrians with visual disabilities. A barrier or barricade detectable by a person with a visual disability is sufficient to indicate that a sidewalk is closed. If the barrier is continuous with detectable channelizing devices for an alternate route, accessible signing might not be necessary. An audible information device is needed when the detectable barricade or barrier for an alternate channelized route is not continuous.

Section 6F.15 Special Regulatory Signs

Option:

01 Special regulatory signs may be used based on engineering judgment consistent with regulatory requirements.

Guidance:

02 *Special regulatory signs should comply with the general requirements of color, shape, and alphabet size and series. The sign message should be brief, legible, and clear.*

Section 6F.16 Warning Sign Function, Design, and Application

Support:

01 TTC zone warning signs (see Figure 6F-4) notify road users of specific situations or conditions on or adjacent to a roadway that might not otherwise be apparent.

Standard:

02 **TTC warning signs shall comply with the Standards for warning signs presented in Part 2 and in FHWA's "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11). Except as provided in Paragraph 3, TTC warning signs shall be diamond-shaped with a black legend and border on an orange** (or fluorescent orange) **background, except for the W10-1 sign which shall have a black legend and border on a yellow** (or fluorescent yellow) **background, and except for signs that are required or recommended in Parts 2 or 7 to have fluorescent yellow-green backgrounds.**

Option:

03 Warning signs used for TTC incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background.

04 Mounting or space considerations may justify a change from the standard diamond shape.

05 In emergencies, available warning signs having yellow backgrounds may be used if signs with orange or fluorescent pink backgrounds are not at hand.

Guidance:

06 *Where roadway or road user conditions require greater emphasis, larger than standard size warning signs should be used, with the symbol or legend enlarged approximately in proportion to the outside dimensions.*

07 *Where any part of the roadway is obstructed or closed by work activities or incidents, advance warning signs should be installed to alert road users well in advance of these obstructions or restrictions.*

08 *Where road users include pedestrians, the provision of supplemental audible information or detectable barriers or barricades should be considered for people with visual disabilities.*

Support:

09 Detectable barriers or barricades communicate very clearly to pedestrians who have visual disabilities that they can no longer proceed in the direction that they are traveling.

Option:

10 Advance warning signs may be used singly or in combination.

11 Where distances are not displayed on warning signs as part of the message, a supplemental plaque with the distance legend may be mounted immediately below the sign on the same support.

Support:

12 Some of the California warning signs used in TTC zones are shown in Figure 6F-101(CA) and Table 6F-1(CA).

Section 6F.17 Position of Advance Warning Signs

Guidance:

01 *Where highway conditions permit, warning signs should be placed in advance of the TTC zone at varying distances depending on roadway type, condition, and posted speed. Table 6C-1 contains information regarding the spacing of advance warning signs. Where a series of two or more advance warning signs is used, the closest sign to the TTC zone should be placed approximately 100 feet for low-speed urban streets to 1,000 feet or more for freeways and expressways.*

02 *Where multiple advance warning signs are needed on the approach to a TTC zone, the ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1) sign should be the first advance warning sign encountered by road users.*

Support:

03 Various conditions, such as limited sight distance or obstructions that might require a driver to reduce speed or stop, might require additional advance warning signs.

Option:

04 As an alternative to a specific distance on advance warning signs, the word AHEAD may be used.

Support:

05 At TTC zones on lightly-traveled roads, all of the advance warning signs prescribed for major construction might not be needed.

Option:

06 Utility work, maintenance, or minor construction can occur within the TTC zone limits of a major construction project, and additional warning signs may be needed.

Guidance:

07 *Utility, maintenance, and minor construction signing and TTC should be coordinated with appropriate authorities so that road users are not confused or misled by the additional TTC devices.*

Section 6F.18 ROAD (STREET) WORK Sign (W20-1)

Guidance:

01 *The ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4), which serves as a general warning of obstructions or restrictions, should be located in advance of the work space or any detour, on the road where the work is taking place.*

02 *Where traffic can enter a TTC zone from a crossroad or a major (high-volume) driveway, an advance warning sign should be used on the crossroad or major driveway.*

Standard:

03 **The ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign shall have the legend ROAD (STREET) WORK, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Option:

04 The RAMP WORK AHEAD (C23(CA)) sign may be substituted for W20-1 sign where applicable.

05 The ROAD (STREET) WORK Informational plaque (C23B(CA)) may be used with ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign.

Standard:

06 The message displayed on the ROAD (STREET) WORK Informational plaque (C23B(CA)) shall be worded in terms common to motorists, as shown in examples below. The height and width of the plate will vary according to the lettering size and message. The width of the plate shall not exceed the overall width of the W20-1 sign.

Support:

07 Following are some example messages:

A. BRIDGE REPLACEMENT
B. BRIDGE WIDENING
C. BRIDGE REPAIR
D. CURVE IMPROVEMENT
E. HIGHWAY REALIGNMENT
F. HIGHWAY WIDENING
G. HIGHWAY WIDENING AND PAVING
H. HIGHWAY REHABILITATION
I. STORM REPAIR
J. PAVING
K. SIGNING IMPROVEMENT
L. PAVEMENT MAINTENANCE
M. SAFETY IMPROVEMENT

Guidance:

08 *The SPECIAL EVENT AHEAD (SC5(CA)) sign should be used in lieu of the ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign for special events, such as bike races, movie filming, etc., where the event is on the travel way or close enough or of such a nature as to have a potential effect on motorists, bicyclists and pedestrians.*

Section 6F.19 DETOUR Sign (W20-2)

~~*Guidance:*~~

Standard:

01 The DETOUR (W20-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) ~~should~~ shall **be used in advance of a road user detour over a different roadway or route.** Refer to CVC 21363 for detour signs.

Standard:

02 The DETOUR sign shall have the legend DETOUR, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.

Section 6F.20 ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (W20-3)

Guidance:

01 *The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED (W20-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of the point where a highway is closed to all road users, or to all but local road users.*

Standard:

02 The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED sign shall have the legend ROAD (STREET) CLOSED, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.

Section 6F.21 ONE LANE ROAD Sign (W20-4)

Standard:

01 The ONE LANE ROAD (W20-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be used only in advance of that point where motor vehicle traffic in both directions must use a common single lane (see Section 6C.10). It shall have the legend ONE LANE ROAD, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.

Section 6F.22 Lane(s) Closed Signs (W20-5, W20-5a)

Standard:

01 **The Lane(s) Closed sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be used in advance of that point where one or more through lanes of a multi-lane roadway are closed.**

02 **For a single lane closure, the Lane Closed (W20-5) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall have the legend RIGHT (LEFT) LANE CLOSED, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD. Where two adjacent lanes are closed, the W20-5a sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall have the legend XX RIGHT (LEFT) LANES CLOSED, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Option:

03 The Lane Closed or LANE(S) CLOSED (W20-5, W20-5a or C20(CA)) sign by itself, or in combination with LEFT (C20A(CA)) plaque and/or Numeral (C20B(CA)) plaque may be used.

04 The LANE CLOSED (C30(CA)) sign may be used within a closed lane of a multilane highway as follow-up information to the appropriate advance warning signs. The C30(CA) sign may be repeated at intervals, throughout long lane closures, as a reminder to motorists.

05 The words RAMP CLOSED may be used as an alternate message on the C30(CA) signs on surface streets to warn that the upcoming freeway/expressway on ramp is closed.

Section 6F.23 CENTER LANE CLOSED AHEAD Sign (W9-3)

Guidance:

01 *The CENTER LANE CLOSED AHEAD (W9-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of that point where work occupies the center lane(s) and approaching motor vehicle traffic is directed to the right or left of the work zone in the center lane.*

Support:

02 For moving lane closures on State highways, see Caltrans' Standard Plan T-16. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

03 Do not use the CENTER LANE CLOSED AHEAD (W9-3) sign for moving lane closures on State highways.

Section 6F.24 Lane Ends Sign (W4-2)

~~Option:~~

Guidance:

01 *The Lane Ends (W4-2) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4) ~~may~~ should be used to warn drivers of the reduction in the number of lanes for moving motor vehicle traffic in the direction of travel on a multi-lane roadway.*

Section 6F.25 ON RAMP Plaque (W13-4P)

~~*Guidance:*~~

01 ~~*When work is being done on a ramp, but the ramp remains open, the ON RAMP (W13-4P) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) should be used to supplement the advance ROAD WORK sign.*~~

Standard:

02 The ON RAMP (W13-4) plaque shall not be used in California due to the potential for conflict if it is used when the work is being done on an off ramp.

Section 6F.26 RAMP NARROWS Sign (W5-4)

~~*Guidance:*~~

01 ~~*The RAMP NARROWS (W5-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of the point where work on a ramp reduces the normal width of the ramp along a part or all of the ramp.*~~

Standard:

02 The RAMP NARROWS (W5-4) sign shall not be used in California. The ROAD NARROWS (W5-1) sign or NARROW LANE(S) (C12(CA)) sign, as appropriate, shall be used instead. See Sections 2C.19 and 6F.102(CA).

Section 6F.27 SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD Sign (W23-1)

Option:

01 The SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD (W23-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used on a shadow vehicle, usually mounted on the rear of the most upstream shadow vehicle, along with other appropriate signs for mobile operations to warn of slow moving work vehicles. A ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign may also be used with the SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD sign.

Section 6F.28 EXIT OPEN and EXIT CLOSED Signs (E5-2, E5-2a)

Option:

01 An EXIT OPEN (E5-2) or EXIT CLOSED (E5-2a) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used to supplement other warning signs where work is being conducted in the vicinity of an exit ramp and where the exit maneuver for vehicular traffic using the ramp is different from the normal condition.

Guidance:

02 *When an exit ramp is closed, an EXIT CLOSED sign panel with a black legend and border on an orange background should be placed diagonally across the interchange/intersection guide signs.*

Standard:

03 The RAMP CLOSED (C2(CA)) sign (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) shall be used at the entrance of the on or off ramp that is closed to all road users. The RAMP CLOSED (Not more than one day) (SC6-3(CA)) sign and The RAMP CLOSED (More than one day) (SC6-4(CA)) sign shall not be used in lieu of the C2(CA) sign.

Option:

04 The RAMP CLOSED, USE RAMP AT __ (SC7(CA)) sign may be used in lieu of the RAMP CLOSED (C2(CA)) sign.

Guidance:

05 *The RAMP CLOSED AHEAD (C19(CA)) sign (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) should be used in advance of the point where a on or off ramp is closed to all road users.*

Option:

06 The USE NEXT EXIT (C38(CA)) sign may be used with the RAMP CLOSED (C2(CA)) sign on freeways if the next exit provides access to destinations from the closed ramp.

Guidance:

07 *The RAMP CLOSED (Not more than one day) (SC6-3(CA)) sign should be used to inform motorists of the temporary closing of a freeway or expressway entrance or exit ramp for not more than one day.*

08 *The RAMP CLOSED (More than one day) (SC6-4(CA)) sign should be used to inform motorists of the temporary closing of a freeway or expressway entrance or exit ramp for more than one day.*

09 *The SC6-3(CA) and SC6-4(CA) signs should be removed when the ramp is re-opened to traffic.*

Standard:

10 The SC6-3(CA) and SC6-4(CA) signs shall display the correct day of the week, month, calendar day and times the ramp is closed.

Support:

11 The Day/Month (SC6A(CA)) plaque is used on the RAMP CLOSED (SC6-3(CA) and SC6-4(CA)) signs, to provide the appropriate day of the week and month a freeway or expressway entrance or exit ramp is closed.

12 The Time (SC6B(CA)) plaque is used on the RAMP CLOSED (SC6-3(CA) and SC6-4(CA)) signs, to provide the appropriate time of the day a freeway or expressway entrance or exit ramp is closed.

Option:

13 The RAMP CLOSED, USE RAMP AT ___ (SC7(CA)) sign may be used in lieu of the combination of the RAMP CLOSED (C2(CA)) sign and USE NEXT EXIT (C38(CA)) sign as shown on Caltrans' Standard Plan T-14 to inform motorists of a closed entrance or exit ramp and to provide an alternate route. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Guidance:

14 *The ___ EXIT – RAMP CLOSED (SC8(CA)) sign should be used to inform motorists of a closed exit ramp.*

Standard:

15 If used, the SC8(CA) sign shall be placed on the right shoulder, upstream of the preceding exit ramp.

Guidance:

16 *The EXIT with Arrow (SC18(CA)) sign should be used to inform motorists of the direction to follow for a freeway exit within a work zone.*

Section 6F.29 EXIT ONLY Sign (E5-3)

Option:

01 An EXIT ONLY (E5-3) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used to supplement other warning signs where work is being conducted in the vicinity of an exit ramp and where the exit maneuver for vehicular traffic using the ramp is different from the normal condition.

Section 6F.30 NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD Sign (W23-2)

Option:

01 A NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD (W23-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used on the approach to an intersection or along a section of roadway to provide advance warning of a change in traffic patterns, such as revised lane usage, roadway geometry, or signal phasing.

Guidance:

02 *To retain its effectiveness, the W23-2 sign should be displayed for up to 2 weeks, and then it should be covered or removed until it is needed again.*

Section 6F.31 Flagger Signs (W20-7, W20-7a)

Guidance:

01 *The ~~Flagger (W20-7) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4)~~ California Flagger symbol (C9A(CA)) sign (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) should be used in advance of any point where a flagger is stationed to control road users.*

Option:

02 A distance legend may be displayed on a supplemental plaque below the Flagger sign. The sign may be used with appropriate legends or in conjunction with other warning signs, such as the BE PREPARED TO STOP (W3-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4).

03 The FLAGGER (W20-7a) word message sign with distance legends may be substituted for the ~~Flagger (W20-7) symbol sign~~ California Flagger symbol (C9A(CA)) sign.

Standard:

04 The MUTCD Flagger symbol (W20-7a) sign shall not be used in California, instead, the California Flagger symbol (C9A(CA)) sign shall be used.

Section 6F.32 Two-Way Traffic Sign (W6-3)

Guidance:

01 *When one roadway of a normally divided highway is closed, with two-way vehicular traffic maintained on the other roadway, the Two-Way Traffic (W6-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used at the beginning of the two-way vehicular traffic section and at intervals to remind road users of opposing vehicular traffic.*

Guidance:

02 *The Two-Way Traffic (W6-3) sign should also be used at locations where motorists could perceive that they are on a one-way roadway when, in fact, they are on a two lane, two-way highway.*

Support:

03 Following are some typical situations:

A. Construction sites where a two-lane highway is being converted to a freeway or an expressway.
B. Two-lane, two-way highways where ultimate freeway or expressway right-of-way has been purchased and grading for the full width has been completed.
C. Two-lane, two-way highways following long sections of multi-lane freeway or expressway.
D. Lane-shift as shown in Figure 6H-105(CA).

Section 6F.33 Workers Signs (W21-1, W21-1a)

Option:

01 A Workers (W21-1) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to alert road users of workers in or near the roadway.

Guidance:

02 *In the absence of other warning devices, a Workers symbol sign should be used when workers are in the roadway.*

Option:

03 The WORKERS (W21-1a) word message sign may be used as an alternate to the Workers (W21-1) symbol sign.

Section 6F.34 FRESH OIL (TAR) Sign (W21-2)

Guidance:

01 *The FRESH OIL (TAR) (W21-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used to warn road users of the surface treatment.*

Section 6F.35 ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD Sign (W21-3)

Option:

01 The ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD (W21-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn of machinery operating in or adjacent to the roadway.

Section 6F.36 Motorized Traffic Signs (W8-6, W11-10)

Option:

01 Motorized Traffic (W8-6, W11-10 or C44(CA)) signs may be used to alert road users to locations where unexpected travel on the roadway or entries into or departures from the roadway by construction vehicles might occur. The TRUCK CROSSING (W8-6) or TRUCKS ENTERING EXITING (C44(CA)) word message sign may be used as an alternate to the Truck Crossing (W11-10) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4) where there is an established construction vehicle crossing, entrance, or exit of the roadway.

Support:

02 These locations might be relatively confined or might occur randomly over a segment of roadway.

Section 6F.37 Shoulder Work Signs (W21-5, W21-5a, W21-5b)

Support:

01 Shoulder Work signs (see Figure 6F-4) warn of maintenance, reconstruction, or utility operations on the highway shoulder where the roadway is unobstructed.

Standard:

02 **The Shoulder Work sign shall have the legend SHOULDER WORK (W21-5), RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a), or RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED XX FT or AHEAD (W21-5b), or** SHOULDER WORK AHEAD (C24(CA)), or SHOULDER CLOSED (C30A(CA))**.**

Option:

03 The Shoulder Work sign may be used in advance of the point on a non-limited access highway where there is shoulder work. It may be used singly or in combination with a ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES or ROAD WORK AHEAD sign.

Guidance:

04 *On freeways and expressways, the RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED XX FT or AHEAD (W21-5b) sign followed by RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) sign should be used in advance of the point where the shoulder work occurs and should be preceded by a ROAD WORK AHEAD sign.*

Option:

05 The SHOULDER WORK AHEAD (C24(CA)) sign may be used in advance of the point where shoulder work or utility operations involve the shoulder but the roadway is unobstructed.

06 The SHOULDER CLOSED (C30A(CA)) sign may be used within a shoulder area that has been closed due to work near the traveled way. The C30A(CA) sign is supplemental to appropriate advance warning signs.

Section 6F.38 SURVEY CREW Sign (W21-6)

Guidance:

01 *The SURVEY CREW (W21-6) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used to warn of surveying crews working in or adjacent to the roadway.*

Section 6F.39 UTILITY WORK Sign (W21-7)

Option:

01 The UTILITY WORK (W21-7) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used as an alternate to the ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign for utility operations on or adjacent to a highway.

Support:

02 Typical examples of where the UTILITY WORK sign is used appear in Figures 6H-4, 6H-6, ~~6H-10~~ 6H-10(CA), 6H-10A(CA), 6H-15, 6H-18, 6H-21, 6H-22, 6H-26, and 6H-33.

Standard:

03 **The UTILITY WORK sign shall carry the legend UTILITY WORK, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Section 6F.40 Signs for Blasting Areas

Support:

01 Radio-Frequency (RF) energy can cause the premature firing of electric detonators (blasting caps) used in TTC zones.

Standard:

02 **Road users shall be warned to turn off mobile radio transmitters and cellular telephones where blasting operations occur. A sequence of signs shall be prominently displayed to direct operators of mobile radio equipment, including cellular telephones, to turn off transmitters in a blasting area. These signs shall be covered or removed when there are no explosives in the area or the area is otherwise secured.**

Section 6F.41 BLASTING ZONE AHEAD Sign (W22-1)

Standard:

01 **The BLASTING ZONE AHEAD (W22-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be used in advance of any TTC zone where explosives are being used. The TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE and END BLASTING ZONE signs shall be used in sequence with this sign.**

Section 6F.42 TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE Sign (W22-2)

Standard:

01 **The TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE (W22-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall follow the BLASTING ZONE AHEAD sign and shall be placed at least 1,000 feet before the beginning of the blasting zone.**

Section 6F.43 END BLASTING ZONE Sign (W22-3)

Standard:

01 **The END BLASTING ZONE (W22-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be placed a minimum of 1,000 feet past the blasting zone.**

Option:

02 The END BLASTING ZONE sign may be placed either with or preceding the END ROAD WORK sign.

Section 6F.44 Shoulder Signs and Plaque (W8-4, W8-9, W8-17, and W8-17P)

Option:

01 The SOFT SHOULDER (W8-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn of a soft shoulder condition.

02 The LOW SHOULDER (W8-9) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn of a shoulder condition where there is an elevation difference of 3 inches or less between the shoulder and the travel lane.

Guidance:

03 *The Shoulder Drop Off (W8-17) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used when an unprotected shoulder drop-off, adjacent to the travel lane, exceeds 3 inches in depth for a continuous length along the roadway, based on engineering judgment.*

Option:

04 A SHOULDER DROP-OFF (W8-17P) supplemental plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be mounted below the W8-17 sign.

Option:

05 The NO SHOULDER (C31A(CA)) sign may be used where no earth, gravel or paved shoulders are available for vehicles to pull off the roadway.

Section 6F.45 UNEVEN LANES Sign (W8-11)

Guidance:

01 *The UNEVEN LANES (W8-11) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used during operations that create a difference in elevation between adjacent lanes that are open to travel.*

02 *The UNEVEN PAVEMENT (C46(CA)) sign (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) should be used during operations that create a difference in elevation in the pavement that is not along a lane line.*

Support:

03 Uneven pavement conditions include elevation difference adjacent to lanes but not at the lane line; between a vehicle lane and a bicycle lane or an unmarked shoulder; and a step in any direction in the pavement. A step is defined as a ridge in the pavement, such as that which might exist between the pavement and a concrete gutter or manhole cover; or that might exist between two pavement blankets when the top level does not extend to the edge of the roadway.

Option:

04 In situations where there is a need to warn bicyclists or other road users of the uneven pavement condition the UNEVEN PAVEMENT (C46P(CA)) plaque (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) may be used.

Standard:

05 A C46P(CA) plaque shall not be used alone. If a C46P(CA) plaque is used, it shall be mounted below either a Vehicular Traffic Warning sign (see Section 2C.49) or a Non-Vehicular Warning sign (see Section 2C.50). The background color of the C46P(CA) plaque shall match the background color of the warning sign with which it is displayed.

Option:

06 When warning is intended to be directed primarily to motorcyclists, use of the UNEVEN LANES (W8-11) sign or UNEVEN PAVEMENT (C46(CA)) sign with motorcycle plaque (W8-15P) may be considered.

Support:

07 See Table 6F-102 (CA) for pavement surface tolerances for each road user group.

Section 6F.46 STEEL PLATE AHEAD Sign (W8-24)

Option:

01 A STEEL PLATE AHEAD (W8-24) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn road users that the presence of a temporary steel plate(s) might make the road surface uneven and might create slippery conditions during wet weather.

Section 6F.47 NO CENTER LINE Sign (W8-12)

Guidance:

01 *The NO CENTER LINE (W8-12) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used when the work obliterates the center line pavement markings and when temporary pavement centerline markings are not provided. This sign should be placed at the beginning of the TTC zone and repeated at 2-mile intervals in long TTC zones.*

Support:

02 Section 6F.78 contains information regarding temporary markings.

Standard:

03 The NO CENTER STRIPE (W8-12) sign shall not be used on State highways. Whenever construction or maintenance work causes obliteration of center stripe, temporary or permanent center stripe shall be in place prior to opening the State highway to public traffic.

Section 6F.48 Reverse Curve Signs (W1-4 Series)

Guidance:

01 *In order to give road users advance notice of a lane shift, a Reverse Curve (W1-4, ~~W1-4b, or W1-4c~~) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used when a lane (or lanes) is being shifted to the left or right. If the design speed of the curves is 30 mph or less, a Reverse Turn (W1-3) sign should be used.*

Standard:

02 **If a Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign is used, the direction of the reverse curve (or turn) shall be appropriately illustrated~~. E~~, except as provided in Paragraph 3~~, the number of lanes illustrated on the sign shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users~~.**

Option:

03 Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W1-4 (or W1-3) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes.

04 Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.

Section 6F.49 Double Reverse Curve Signs (W24-1 Series)

Option:

01 The Double Reverse Curve (W24-1, ~~W24-1a, or W24-1b~~) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used where the tangent distance between two reverse curves is less than 600 feet, thus making it difficult for a second Reverse Curve (W1-4 ~~series~~) sign to be placed between the curves. If the design speed of the curves is 30 mph or less, Double Reverse Turn signs should be used.

Standard:

02 **If a Double Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign is used, the direction of the double reverse curve (or turn) shall be appropriately illustrated~~. E~~, except as provided in Paragraph 3~~, the number of lanes illustrated on the sign shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users~~.**

Option:

03 Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W24-1 (or Double Reverse Turn sign showing one lane) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes.

04 Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Double Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.

Section 6F.50 Other Warning Signs

Option:

01 Advance warning signs may be used by themselves or with other advance warning signs.

02 Besides the warning signs specifically related to TTC zones, several other warning signs in Part 2 may apply in TTC zones.

Standard:

03 **Except as provided in Section 6F.02, other warning signs that are used in TTC zones shall have black legends and borders on an orange background.**

Section 6F.51 Special Warning Signs

Option:

01 Special warning signs may be used based on engineering judgment.

Guidance:

02 *Special warning signs should comply with the general requirements of color, shape, and alphabet size and series. The sign message should be brief, legible, and clear.*

Section 6F.52 Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)

Option:

01 In combination with a warning sign, an Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to indicate a recommended speed through the TTC zone.

Standard:

02 **The Advisory Speed plaque shall not be used in conjunction with any sign other than a warning sign, nor shall it be used alone. When used with orange TTC zone signs, this plaque shall have a black legend and border on an orange background. The sign shall be at least 24 x 24 inches in size when used with a sign that is 36 x 36 inches or larger. Except in emergencies, an Advisory Speed plaque shall not be mounted until the recommended speed is determined by the highway agency.**

Section 6F.53 Supplementary Distance Plaque (W7-3aP)

Option:

01 In combination with a warning sign, a Supplementary Distance (W7-3aP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) with the legend NEXT XX MILES may be used to indicate the length of highway over which a work activity is being conducted, or over which a condition exists in the TTC zone.

02 In long TTC zones, Supplementary Distance plaques with the legend NEXT XX MILES may be placed in combination with warning signs at regular intervals within the zone to indicate the remaining length of highway over which the TTC work activity or condition exists.

02a The XXXX FT (C29(CA)) panel may be used on the face of a warning sign to indicate the distance to where the work activity is being conducted, or to where a condition exists in the TTC zone.

Standard:

03 **The Supplementary Distance plaque with the legend NEXT XX MILES shall not be used in conjunction with any sign other than a warning sign, nor shall it be used alone. When used with orange TTC zone signs, this plaque shall have a black legend and border on an orange background. The sign shall be at least 30 x 24 inches in size when used with a sign that is 36 x 36 inches or larger.**

Guidance:

04 *When used in TTC zones, the Supplementary Distance plaque with the legend NEXT XX MILES should be placed below the initial warning sign designating that, within the approaching zone, a temporary work activity or condition exists.*

Section 6F.54 Motorcycle Plaque (W8-15P)

Option:

01 A Motorcycle (W8-15P) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be mounted below a LOOSE GRAVEL (W8-7) sign, an UNEVEN LANES (W8-11) sign, an UNEVEN PAVEMENT (C46(CA)) sign, a GROOVED PAVEMENT (W8-15) sign, a METAL BRIDGE DECK (W8-16) sign, or a STEEL PLATE AHEAD (W8-24) sign if the warning is intended to be directed primarily to motorcyclists.

Section 6F.55 Guide Signs

Support:

01 Guide signs along highways provide road users with information to help them along their way through the TTC zone. The design of guide signs is presented in Part 2.

Guidance:

02 *The following guide signs should be used in TTC zones as needed:*

A. Standard route markings, where temporary route changes are necessary,

B. Directional signs and street name signs, and

C. Special guide signs relating to the condition or work being done.

Standard:

03 **If additional temporary guide signs are used in TTC zones, they shall have a black legend and border on an orange background.**

Option:

04 Guide signs used in TTC incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background.

05 When directional signs and street name signs are used in conjunction with detour routing, these signs may have a black legend and border on an orange background.

06 When permanent directional signs or permanent street name signs are used in conjunction with detour signing, they may have a white legend on a green background.

Section 6F.56 ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES Sign (G20-1)

Guidance:

01 *The ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES (G20-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be installed in advance of TTC zones that are more than 2 miles in length.*

Option:

02 The ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES sign may be mounted on a Type 3 Barricade. The sign may also be used for TTC zones of shorter length.

Standard:

03 **The distance displayed on the ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES sign shall be stated to the nearest whole mile.**

Option:

04 The word STATE HIGHWAY may be substituted for ROAD, where applicable.

05 The word CONSTRUCTION may be substituted for WORK, where applicable.

Section 6F.57 END ROAD WORK Sign (G20-2)

Guidance:

01 *When used, the END ROAD WORK (G20-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be placed near the downstream end of the termination area, as determined by engineering judgment.*

Option:

02 The END ROAD WORK sign may be installed on the back of a warning sign facing the opposite direction of road users or on the back of a Type 3 Barricade.

03 The END ROAD WORK (G20-2) sign may be omitted if the end of the work zone is obvious to motorists or falls within a larger project's limits.

Support:

04 Conditions could be such that posting of END ROAD WORK (G20-2) signs is not helpful. For example, they can be omitted if other TTC zones begin within 1 mile of the end of the workspace in rural areas, or about 0.25 miles within urban areas. For normal daytime maintenance operations, the G20-2 sign is optional.

Section 6F.58 PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME Sign (G20-4)

Standard:

01 **The PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME (G20-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be mounted in a conspicuous position on the rear of a vehicle used for guiding one-way vehicular traffic through or around a TTC zone (see Section 6C.13).**

Option:

01a Where needed, the PILOT CAR DO NOT PASS (R115(CA)) sign may be used in place of the G20-4 sign.

Guidance:

02 *The TRAFFIC CONTROL – WAIT AND FOLLOW PILOT CAR (C37(CA)) sign should be used at intersecting approaches to a work zone when pilot cars are controlling reversible lane traffic. Where vehicular traffic cannot effectively self-regulate, one or two flaggers should be placed at the intersection instead of C37(CA) sign.*

Section 6F.59 Detour Signs (M4-8, M4-8a, M4-8b, M4-9, M4-9a, M4-9b, M4-9c, and M4-10)

Standard:

01 **Each detour shall be adequately marked with standard temporary route signs and destination signs.**

Support:

01a Refer to CVC 21363 for detour signs.

Option:

02 Detour signs in TTC incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background.

03 The Detour Arrow (M4-10) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used where a detour route has been established.

04 The DETOUR (M4-8) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be mounted at the top of a route sign assembly to mark a temporary route that detours from a highway, bypasses a section closed by a TTC zone, and rejoins the highway beyond the TTC zone.

Guidance:

05 *The Detour Arrow (M4-10) sign should normally be mounted just below the ROAD CLOSED (R11-2, R11-3a, or R11-4) sign. The Detour Arrow sign should include a horizontal arrow pointed to the right or left as required.*

06 *The DETOUR (M4-9) sign (see Figure 6F-5) should be used for unnumbered highways, for emergency situations, for periods of short durations, or where, over relatively short distances, road users are guided along the detour and back to the desired highway without route signs.*

07 *A Street Name sign should be placed above, or the street name should be incorporated into, a DETOUR (M4-9) sign to indicate the name of the street being detoured.*

Option:

08 The END DETOUR (M4-8a) or END (M4-8b) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used to indicate that the detour has ended.

Guidance:

09 *When the END DETOUR sign is used on a numbered highway, the sign should be mounted above a route sign after the downstream end of the detour.*

10 *The Pedestrian/Bicycle Detour (M4-9a) sign (see Figure 6F-5) should be used where a pedestrian/bicycle detour route has been established because of the closing of a pedestrian/bicycle facility to through traffic.*

Standard:

11 **If used, the Pedestrian/Bicycle Detour sign shall have an arrow pointing in the appropriate direction.**

Option:

12 The arrow on a Pedestrian/Bicycle Detour sign may be on the sign face or on a supplemental plaque.

13 The Pedestrian Detour (M4-9b) sign or Bicycle Detour (M4-9c) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used where a pedestrian or bicycle detour route (not both) has been established because of the closing of the pedestrian or bicycle facility to through traffic.

Guidance:

14 *The DETOUR (M4-8) sign should be placed on tangent sections at intervals not to exceed 0.25 miles and at major intersections.*

Option:

15 In urban areas, the M4-8 signs may be placed at every intersection.

Guidance:

16 *The DETOUR with Arrow (SC3(CA)) sign should be used for unnumbered highways, for emergency situations, for periods of short duration, or where, over relatively short distances, road users are guided along the detour and back to the desired highway without route markers.*

17 *The (FWY) DETOUR with Arrow (SC9(CA)) sign should be used to inform motorists of the direction to follow for a detour. The words FWY DETOUR may be substituted for DETOUR, where applicable.*

Section 6F.60 Portable Changeable Message Signs

Support:

01 Portable changeable message signs (PCMS) are TTC devices installed for temporary use with the flexibility to display a variety of messages. In most cases, portable changeable message signs follow the same provisions for design and application as those given for changeable message signs in Chapter 2L. The information in this

Section describes situations where the provisions for portable changeable message signs differ from those given in Chapter 2L.

02 Portable changeable message signs are used most frequently on high-density urban freeways, but have applications on all types of highways where highway alignment, road user routing problems, or other pertinent conditions require advance warning and information.

03 Portable changeable message signs have a wide variety of applications in TTC zones including: roadway, lane, or ramp closures; incident management; width restriction information; speed control or reductions; advisories on work scheduling; road user management and diversion; warning of adverse conditions or special events; and other operational control.

04 The primary purpose of portable changeable message signs in TTC zones is to advise the road user of unexpected situations. Portable changeable message signs are particularly useful as they are capable of:

A. Conveying complex messages,
B. Displaying real time information about conditions ahead, and
C. Providing information to assist road users in making decisions prior to the point where actions must be taken.

05 Some typical applications include the following:

A. Where the speed of vehicular traffic is expected to drop substantially;
B. Where significant queuing and delays are expected;
C. Where adverse environmental conditions are present;
D. Where there are changes in alignment or surface conditions;
E. Where advance notice of ramp, lane, or roadway closures is needed;
F. Where crash or incident management is needed; and/or
G. Where changes in the road user pattern occur.

Guidance:

06 *The components of a portable changeable message sign should include: a message sign, control systems, a power source, and mounting and transporting equipment. The front face of the sign should be covered with a protective material.*

Standard:

07 **Portable changeable message signs shall comply with the applicable design and application principles established in Chapter 2A. Portable changeable message signs shall display only traffic operational, regulatory, warning, and guidance information, and shall not be used for advertising messages.**

Support:

08 Section 2L.02 contains information regarding overly simplistic or vague messages that is also applicable to portable changeable message signs.

Standard:

09 **The colors used for legends on portable changeable message signs shall comply with those shown in Table ~~2A-5~~ 2A-5(CA).**

Support:

10 Section 2L.04 contains information regarding the luminance, luminance contrast, and contrast orientation that is also applicable to portable changeable message signs.

Guidance:

11 *Portable changeable message signs should be visible from 1/2 mile under both day and night conditions.*

Support:

12 Section 2B.13 contains information regarding the design of portable changeable message signs that are used to display speed limits that change based on operational conditions, or are used to display the speed at which approaching drivers are traveling.

Guidance:

13 *A portable changeable message sign should be limited to three lines of eight characters per line or should consist of a full matrix display.*

14 *Except as provided in Paragraph 15, the letter height used for portable changeable message sign messages should be a minimum of 18 inches.*

Option:

15 For portable changeable message signs mounted on service patrol trucks or other incident response vehicles, a letter height as short as 10 inches may be used. Shorter letter sizes may also be used on a portable changeable message sign used on low speed facilities provided that the message is legible from at least 650 feet.

16 The portable changeable message sign may vary in size.

Guidance:

17 *Messages on a portable changeable message sign should consist of no more than two phases, and a phase should consist of no more than three lines of text. Each phase should be capable of being understood by itself, regardless of the order in which it is read. Messages should be centered within each line of legend. If more than one portable changeable message sign is simultaneously legible to road users, then only one of the signs should display a sequential message at any given time.*

Support:

18 Road users have difficulties in reading messages displayed in more than two phases on a typical three-line portable changeable message sign.

Standard:

19 **Techniques of message display such as animation, rapid flashing, dissolving, exploding, scrolling, travelling horizontally or vertically across the face of the sign, or other dynamic elements shall not be used.**

Guidance:

20 *When a message is divided into two phases, the display time for each phase should be at least 2 seconds, and the sum of the display times for both of the phases should be a maximum of 8 seconds.*

21 *All messages should be designed with consideration given to the principles provided in this Section and also taking into account the following:*

A. The message should be as brief as possible and should contain three thoughts (with each thought preferably shown on its own line) that convey:

1. The problem or situation that the road user will encounter ahead,

2. The location of or distance to the problem or situation, and

3. The recommended driver action.

B. If more than two phases are needed to display a message, additional portable changeable message signs should be used. When multiple portable changeable message signs are needed, they should be placed on the same side of the roadway and they should be separated from each other by a distance of at least 1,000 feet on freeways and expressways, and by a distance of at least 500 feet on other types of highways.

Standard:

22 **When the word messages shown in Tables 1A-1 or 1A-2 need to be abbreviated on a portable changeable message sign, the provisions described in Section 1A.15 shall be followed.**

23 **In order to maintain legibility, portable changeable message signs shall automatically adjust their brightness under varying light conditions.**

24 **The control system shall include a display screen upon which messages can be reviewed before being displayed on the message sign. The control system shall be capable of maintaining memory when power is unavailable.**

25 **Portable changeable message signs shall be equipped with a power source and a battery back-up to provide continuous operation when failure of the primary power source occurs.**

26 **The mounting of portable changeable message signs on a trailer, a large truck, or a service patrol truck shall be such that the bottom of the message sign shall be a minimum of 7 feet above the roadway in urban areas and 5 feet above the roadway in rural areas when it is in the operating mode.**

Guidance:

27 *Portable changeable message signs should be used as a supplement to and not as a substitute for conventional signs and pavement markings.*

28 *When portable changeable message signs are used for route diversion, they should be placed far enough in advance of the diversion to allow road users ample opportunity to perform necessary lane changes, to adjust their speed, or to exit the affected highway.*

29 *Portable changeable message signs should be sited and aligned to provide maximum legibility and to allow time for road users to respond appropriately to the portable changeable message sign message.*

30 *Portable changeable message signs should be placed off the shoulder of the roadway and behind a traffic barrier, if practical. Where a traffic barrier is not available to shield the portable changeable message sign, it should be placed off the shoulder and outside of the clear zone. If a portable changeable message sign has to be placed on the shoulder of the roadway or within the clear zone, it should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices. When used, advanced warning delineation is not needed if the portable changeable message sign is behind a barrier, more than 2 feet behind the curb, or 15 feet or more from the edge of the traveled way (see Section 6C.04). If the portable changeable message sign is placed on shoulder or partially blocking the shoulder (including overhangs), the shoulder should be closed off by a taper of channelizing devices with a length of 1/3 L using the formulas in Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4 (see Section 6C.08). See Figure 6F-104(CA) for typical layout using channelizing devices to delineate a portable changeable message sign on shoulder.*

Option:

30a For incident management before additional resources are available or for short duration use (see Section 6G.02) or when portable changeable message sign is placed well beyond the shoulder but partially within 15 feet from the edge of the traveled way it may be delineated with a minimum of a 30 feet taper formed by three traffic cones.

Guidance:

31 *When portable changeable message signs are used in TTC zones, they should display only TTC messages.*

32 *When portable changeable message signs are not being used to display TTC messages, they should be relocated such that they are outside of the clear zone or shielded behind a traffic barrier and turned away from traffic. If relocation or shielding is not practical, they should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices. If the portable changeable message sign is stored within a shoulder or partially blocking a shoulder, the shoulder should be closed according to Section 6G.07. If the portable changeable message sign is stored well beyond the shoulder but within the clear zone, it should be delineated by a taper of channelizing devices with a length of 1/3 L using the formulas in Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4 (see Section 6C.08). Clear zone is defined by AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11). See Figure 6F-104(CA) for typical layout using channelizing devices to delineate a portable changeable message sign on a shoulder.*

33 *Portable changeable message sign trailers should be delineated on a permanent basis by affixing retroreflective material, known as conspicuity material, in a continuous line on the face of the trailer as seen by oncoming road users.*

Standard:

34 On State highways, the message displayed on Portable Changeable Message signs shall be visible from a distance of 1500 feet and shall be legible from a distance of 750 feet, at noon on a cloudless day, by persons with vision of or corrected to 20/20.

Guidance:

35 *On local roads, the message displayed on Portable Changeable Message signs should be visible from a distance of 1500 feet and shall be legible from a distance of 750 feet, at noon on a cloudless day, by persons with vision of or corrected to 20/20.*

Support:

36 Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.12 for visibility criteria cited. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

37 Refer to Section 2B.13 for Vehicle Speed Feedback Signs.

Section 6F.61 Arrow Boards

Standard:

01 **An arrow board shall be a sign with a matrix of elements capable of either flashing or sequential displays. This sign shall provide additional warning and directional information to assist in merging and controlling road users through or around a TTC zone.**

Guidance:

02 *An arrow board in the arrow or chevron mode should be used to advise approaching traffic of a lane closure along major multi-lane roadways in situations involving heavy traffic volumes, high speeds, and/or limited sight distances, or at other locations and under other conditions where road users are less likely to expect such lane closures.*

03 *If used, an arrow board should be used in combination with appropriate signs, channelizing devices, or other TTC devices.*

04 *An arrow board should be placed on the shoulder of the roadway or, if practical, farther from the traveled lane. It should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices. When an arrow board is not being used, it should be removed; if not removed, it should be shielded; or if the previous two options are not feasible, it should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices.*

04a *If the arrow board is stored within a shoulder or partially blocking a shoulder, the shoulder should be closed according to Section 6G.07. If the arrow board is stored well beyond the shoulder but within the clear zone, it should be delineated by a taper of channelizing devices with a length of 1/3 L using the formulas in Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4 (see Section 6C.08). Clear zone is defined by AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11). See Figure 6F-104(CA) for typical layout using channelizing devices to delineate an arrow board on a shoulder.*

Standard:

05 **Arrow boards shall meet the minimum size, legibility distance, number of elements, and other specifications shown in Figure 6F-6.**

Support:

06 Type A arrow boards are appropriate for use on low-speed urban streets. Type B or II arrow boards are appropriate for intermediate-speed facilities and for maintenance or mobile operations on high-speed roadways. Type C or I arrow boards are intended to be used on high-speed, high-volume motor vehicle traffic control projects. Type D arrow boards are intended for use on vehicles authorized by the State or local agency.

Standard:

07 **Type A, B or II, and C or I arrow boards shall have solid rectangular appearances. A Type D arrow board shall conform to the shape of the arrow.**

08 **All arrow boards shall be finished in non-reflective black. The arrow board shall be mounted on a vehicle, a trailer, or other suitable support.**

Guidance:

09 *The minimum mounting height, measured vertically from the bottom of the board to the roadway below it or to the elevation of the near edge of the roadway, of an arrow board should be 7 feet , except on vehicle-mounted arrow boards, which should be as high as practical.*

10 *A vehicle-mounted arrow board should be provided with remote controls.*

Standard:

11 **Arrow board elements shall be capable of at least a 50 percent dimming from full brilliance. The dimmed mode shall be used for nighttime operation of arrow boards.**

Guidance:

12 *Full brilliance should be used for daytime operation of arrow boards.*

Standard:

13 **The arrow board shall have suitable elements capable of the various operating modes. The color presented by the elements shall be yellow.**

Guidance:

14 *If an arrow board consisting of a bulb matrix is used, the elements should be recess-mounted or equipped with an upper hood of not less than 180 degrees.*

Standard:

15 **The minimum element on-time shall be 50 percent for the flashing mode, with equal intervals of 25 percent for each sequential phase. The flashing rate shall be not less than 25 or more than 40 flashes per minute.**

16 **An arrow board shall have the following three mode selections:**

A. A Flashing Arrow, Sequential Arrow, or Sequential Chevron mode;

B. A flashing Double Arrow mode; and

C. A flashing Caution or Alternating Diamond mode.

17 **An arrow board in the arrow or chevron mode shall be used only for stationary or moving lane closures on multi-lane roadways.**

18 **For shoulder work, blocking the shoulder, for roadside work near the shoulder, or for temporarily closing one lane on a two-lane, two-way roadway, an arrow board shall be used only in the caution mode.**

Guidance:

19 *For a stationary lane closure, the arrow board should be located on the shoulder at the beginning of the merging taper.*

20 *Where the shoulder is narrow, the arrow board should be located in the closed lane.*

Standard:

20a The arrow board shall be located behind channelizing devices used to transition traffic from the closed lane.

Support:

20b Caltrans' Standard Specifications for flashing arrow boards are in Section 12-3.03. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Standard:

21 **When arrow boards are used to close multiple lanes, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Guidance:

22 *When arrow boards are used to close multiple lanes, if the first arrow board is placed on the shoulder, the second arrow board should be placed in the first closed lane at the upstream end of the second merging taper (see Figure 6H-37). When the first arrow board is placed in the first closed lane, the second arrow board should be placed in the second closed lane at the downstream end of the second merging taper.*

23 *For mobile operations where a lane is closed, the arrow board should be located to provide adequate separation from the work operation to allow for appropriate reaction by approaching drivers.*

Standard:

24 **A vehicle displaying an arrow board shall be equipped with high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

25 **Arrow boards shall only be used to indicate a lane closure. Arrow boards shall not be used to indicate a lane shift.**

Option:

26 A portable changeable message sign may be used to simulate an arrow board display.

Standard:

27 The minimum legibility distance is the distance at which flashing arrow boards shall be legible at noon on a cloudless day and at night by persons with vision of or corrected to 20/20.

Support:

28 The minimum legibility distance for each arrow board type is shown in Figure 6F-6.

29 Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.03 for visibility criteria cited. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6F.62 High-Level Warning Devices (Flag Trees)

Option:

01 A high-level warning device (flag tree) may supplement other TTC devices in TTC zones.

Support:

02 A high-level warning device is designed to be seen over the top of typical passenger cars. A typical high-level warning device is shown in Figure 6F-2.

Standard:

03 **A high-level warning device shall consist of a minimum of two flags with or without a Type B high-intensity flashing warning light. The distance from the roadway to the bottom of the lens of the light and to the lowest point of the flag material shall be not less than 8 feet. The flag shall be 16 inches square or larger and shall be orange or fluorescent red-orange in color.**

Option:

04 An appropriate warning sign may be mounted below the flags.

Support:

05 High-level warning devices are most commonly used in high-density road user situations to warn road users of short-term operations.

Section 6F.63 Channelizing Devices

Standard:

01 **Designs of various channelizing devices shall be as shown in Figure 6F–7** and 6F-102(CA)**. All channelizing devices shall be crashworthy.**

Support:

02 The function of channelizing devices is to warn road users of conditions created by work activities in or near the roadway and to guide road users. Channelizing devices include cones, tubular markers, channelizers (CA), portable delineators, vertical panels, drums, barricades, and longitudinal channelizing devices.

03 Channelizing devices provide for smooth and gradual vehicular traffic flow from one lane to another, onto a bypass or detour, or into a narrower traveled way. They are also used to channelize vehicular traffic away from the work space, pavement drop-offs, pedestrian or shared-use paths, or opposing directions of vehicular traffic.

Standard:

04 **Devices used to channelize pedestrians shall be detectable to users of long canes and visible to persons having low vision.**

05 **Where channelizing devices are used to channelize pedestrians, there shall be continuous detectable bottom and top surfaces to be detectable to users of long canes. The bottom of the bottom surface shall be no higher than 2 inches above the ground. The top of the top surface shall be no lower than 32 inches above the ground.**

Option:

06 A gap not exceeding 2 inches between the bottom rail and the ground surface may be used to facilitate drainage.

Guidance:

07 *Where multiple channelizing devices are aligned to form a continuous pedestrian channelizer, connection points should be smooth to optimize long-cane and hand trailing.*

08 *The spacing between cones, tubular markers, vertical panels, drums, and barricades should not exceed a distance in feet equal to 1.0 times the speed limit in mph when used for taper channelization, and a distance in feet equal to 2.0 times the speed limit in mph when used for tangent channelization.*

09 *When channelizing devices have the potential of leading vehicular traffic out of the intended vehicular traffic space as shown in Figure 6H-39, the channelizing devices should be extended a distance in feet of 2.0 times the speed limit in mph beyond the downstream end of the transition area.*

09a *The spacing of channelizing devices should not exceed the maximum distances shown in Table 6F-101(CA).*

Option:

10 Warning lights (see Section 6F.83) may be added to channelizing devices in areas with frequent fog, snow, or severe roadway curvature, or where visual distractions are present.

Standard:

11 **Warning lights shall flash when placed on channelizing devices used alone or in a cluster to warn of a condition. Except for the sequential flashing warning lights discussed in Paragraphs 12 and 13, warning lights placed on channelizing devices used in a series to channelize road users shall be steady-burn.**

Option:

12 A series of sequential flashing warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices that form a merging taper in order to increase driver detection and recognition of the merging taper.

Standard:

13 **When used, the successive flashing of the sequential warning lights shall occur from the upstream end of the merging taper to the downstream end of the merging taper in order to identify the desired vehicle path. Each warning light in the sequence shall be flashed at a rate of not less than 55 nor more than 75 times per minute.**

14 **The retroreflective material used on channelizing devices shall have a smooth, sealed outer surface that will display a similar color day or night.**

Option:

15 The name and telephone number of the highway agency, contractor, or supplier may be displayed on the non-retroreflective surface of all types of channelizing devices.

Standard:

16 **The letters and numbers of the name and telephone number shall be non-retroreflective and not over 2 inches in height.**

Guidance:

17 *Particular attention should be given to maintaining the channelizing devices to keep them clean, visible, and properly positioned at all times.*

Standard:

18 **Devices that are damaged or have lost a significant amount of their retroreflectivity and effectiveness shall be replaced.**

Section 6F.64 Cones

Standard:

01 **Cones (see Figure 6F-7) shall be predominantly orange and shall be made of a material that can be struck without causing damage to the impacting vehicle. For daytime and low-speed roadways, cones shall be not less than 18 inches in height. When cones are used on freeways and other high-speed highways or at night on all highways, or when more conspicuous guidance is needed, cones shall be a minimum of 28 inches in height.**

02 **For nighttime use, cones shall be retroreflectorized or equipped with lighting devices for maximum visibility. Retroreflectorization of cones that are 28 to 36 inches in height shall be provided by a 6-inch wide white band located 3 to 4 inches from the top of the cone and an additional 4-inch wide white band located approximately 2 inches below the 6-inch band.**

03 **Retroreflectorization of cones that are more than 36 inches in height shall be provided by horizontal, circumferential, alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes that are 4 to 6 inches wide. Each cone shall have a minimum of two orange and two white stripes with the top stripe being orange. Any non-retroreflective spaces between the orange and white stripes shall not exceed 3 inches in width.**

Support:

03a The 36 inch and 42 inch high cones provide additional conspicuity in visually complex environments and for older road users.

Option:

04 Traffic cones may be used to channelize road users, divide opposing vehicular traffic lanes, divide lanes when two or more lanes are kept open in the same direction, and delineate short duration maintenance and utility work.

Guidance:

05 *Steps should be taken to minimize the possibility of cones being blown over or displaced by wind or moving vehicular traffic.*

Option:

06 Cones may be doubled up to increase their weight.

Support:

07 Some cones are constructed with bases that can be filled with ballast. Others have specially weighted bases, or weight such as sandbag rings that can be dropped over the cones and onto the base to provide added stability.

Guidance:

08 *Ballast should be kept to the minimum amount needed.*

Option:

09 Retroreflectorization of 28 inch in height or higher cones may be provided by a 13 inch band (sleeve).

Standard:

10 On State highways, the retroreflectorized bands shall be visible at 1000 feet at night under illumination of legal high beam headlights, by persons with vision of or corrected to 20/20.

Guidance:

11 *On local roads, the retroreflectorized bands should be visible at 1000 feet at night under illumination of legal high beam headlights, by persons with vision of or corrected to 20/20.*

Support:

12 Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.01A(4) for visibility criteria cited. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6F.65 Tubular Markers

Support:

00a Tubular markers are used to guide and channelize traffic for temporary traffic control. Tubular markers generally have the same circular cross-section throughout their length. Tubular markers may be affixed to the ground or may be portable. There are three types of tubular markers and they are defined as following:

00b The term "tubular marker" is used for a tubular marker that is affixed to the pavement and is cylindrical from top to bottom

00c The term "channelizer (CA)" is a special type of tubular marker that is affixed to the pavement and has a cylindrical lower portion and a flattened upper portion. This term "channelizer (CA)" is not to be confused with the term "channelizing device(s)" in Section 6F.63. Although it is similar to the channelizer for permanent use, as discussed in Section 3H.01 and shown in Figure 3H-101(CA), there are differences. The channelizer (CA) is used for temporary traffic control.

00d The term "portable delineator" is used to describe a tubular marker that is not affixed to the pavement but stabilized by using a weighted base or weights, and is cylindrical from top to bottom. This term "portable delineator" is not to be confused with the term "delineator " in Section 6F.80.

Standard:

00e The retroreflectorized bands for tubular markers, channelizers (CA), and portable delineators shall be visible at 1000 feet during night under illumination of legal high beam headlights, by persons with vision of or corrected to 20/20.

Support:

00f Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.01A(4) for visibility criteria cited. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Tubular Marker

Standard:

01 **Tubular markers (see Figure 6F-7) shall be predominantly orange and shall be not less than 18 inches high and 2 inches wide facing road users. They shall be made of a material that can be struck without causing damage to the impacting vehicle.**

02 **Tubular markers shall be a minimum of 28 inches in height when they are used on freeways and other high-speed highways, on all highways during nighttime, or whenever more conspicuous guidance is needed.**

03 **For nighttime use, tubular markers shall be retroreflectorized. Retroreflectorization of tubular markers that have a height of less than 42 inches shall be provided by two 3-inch wide white bands placed a maximum of 2 inches from the top with a maximum of 6 inches between the bands. Retroreflectorization of tubular markers that have a height of 42 inches or more shall be provided by four 4- to 6-inch wide alternating orange and white stripes with the top stripe being orange.**

Support:

03a The 42 inch high tubular markers provide additional conspicuity in visually complex environments and for older road users.

Guidance:

04 *Tubular markers have less visible area than other devices and should be used only where space restrictions do not allow for the use of other more visible devices.*

05 *Tubular markers should be stabilized by affixing them to the pavement.*

Option:

06 Tubular markers may be used effectively to divide opposing lanes of road users, divide vehicular traffic lanes when two or more lanes of moving vehicular traffic are kept open in the same direction, and to delineate the edge of a pavement drop off where space limitations do not allow the use of larger devices.

Standard:

07 **A tubular marker shall be attached to the pavement to display the minimum 2-inch width to the approaching road users.**

Portable Delineator

Standard:

08 The design of a portable delineator shall be as shown in Figure 6F-102(CA). 09 Portable delineators shall be a minimum of 36 inches in height. The vertical portion of portable delineators shall be fluorescent orange or predominantly orange. The posts shall be not less than 3 inches in width or diameter. Retroreflectorization of portable delineators that have a height of less than 42 inches shall be provided by two 3-inch wide white bands placed a maximum of 2 inches from the top with a maximum of 6 inches between the bands. Retroreflectorization of portable delineators that have a height of 42 inches or more shall be provided by four 4-inch to 6-inch wide alternating orange and white stripes with the top stripe being orange.

Support:

10 The 42 inch or higher portable delineators provide additional conspicuity in visually complex environments and for older road users.

Guidance:

11 Portable delineators have less visible area than other devices and should be used only where space restrictions do not allow for the use of other more visible devices.

12 Portable delineators should be stabilized by using weighted bases, or weights such as sandbag rings that can be dropped over the portable delineators and onto the base to provide added stability. Ballast should be kept to the minimum amount needed.

Option:

13 Portable delineators may be used effectively to divide opposing lanes of road users, divide vehicular traffic lanes when two or more lanes of moving vehicular traffic are kept open in the same direction, and to delineate the edge of a pavement drop off where space limitations do not allow the use of larger devices.

Channelizer(CA)

Standard:

14 When a channelizer (CA) is used, it shall be attached to the pavement in a manner such that the retroreflectorized bands facing road users meet the minimum visibility requirements.

15 The design of a channelizer (CA) shall be as shown in Figure 6F-102(CA). The height shall be 36 inch minimum where speeds are above 40 mph. The height shall be 28 inch minimum where speeds are 40 mph or less. The width of the post shall be 2 ¼ inch minimum and the color predominantly orange. Channelizers (CA) shall be affixed with retroreflective white sheeting, 3 by 12 inches in size.

Support:

16 Channelizers (CA) are implanted in the ground or affixed to the pavement, and are not susceptible to displacement, and are capable of normally withstanding numerous vehicular impacts.

17 Channelizers (CA) are generally used in series to create a visual fence/barrier, to provide additional guidance and/or restriction to traffic.

Option:

18 Channelizers (CA) may be used in lieu of cones, portable delineators, or drums, to channelize traffic or divide opposing lanes of traffic.

Section 6F.66 Vertical Panels

Standard:

01 **Vertical panels (see Figure 6F-7) shall have retroreflective striped material that is 8 to 12 inches in width and at least 24 inches in height. They shall have alternating diagonal orange and white retroreflective stripes sloping downward at an angle of 45 degrees in the direction vehicular traffic is to pass.**

02 **Where the height of the retroreflective material on the vertical panel is 36 inches or more, a stripe width of 6 inches shall be used.**

Guidance:

02a *Vertical panels should be a minimum of 12 inch in width.*

Option:

03 Where the height of the retroreflective material on the vertical panel is less than 36 inches, a stripe width of 4 inches may be used.

04 Where space is limited, vertical panels may be used to channelize vehicular traffic, divide opposing lanes, or replace barricades.

Section 6F.67 Drums

Standard:

01 **Drums (see Figure 6F-7) used for road user warning or channelization shall be constructed of lightweight, deformable materials. They shall be a minimum of 36 inches in height and have at least an 18-inch minimum width regardless of orientation. Metal drums shall not be used. The markings on drums shall be horizontal, circumferential, alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes 4 to 6 inches wide. Each drum shall have a minimum of two orange and two white stripes with the top stripe being orange. Any non-retroreflectorized spaces between the horizontal orange and white stripes shall not exceed 3 inches wide. Drums shall have closed tops that will not allow collection of construction debris or other debris.**

Support:

02 Drums are highly visible, have good target value, give the appearance of being formidable obstacles and, therefore, command the respect of road users. They are portable enough to be shifted from place to place within a TTC zone in order to accommodate changing conditions, but are generally used in situations where they will remain in place for a prolonged period of time.

Option:

03 Although drums are most commonly used to channelize or delineate road user flow, they may also be used alone or in groups to mark specific locations.

Guidance:

04 *Drums should not be weighted with sand, water, or any material to the extent that would make them hazardous to road users or workers when struck. Drums used in regions susceptible to freezing should have drain holes in the bottom so that water will not accumulate and freeze causing a hazard if struck by a road user.*

Standard:

05 **Ballast shall not be placed on the top of a drum.**

06 On State highways, the retroreflectorized bands shall be maintained at or above minimum levels in Table 2A-3.

Guidance:

07 *On local roads, the retroreflectorized bands should be maintained at or above minimum levels in Table 2A-3.*

Support:

08 Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.01A(4) for visibility criteria cited. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6F.68 Type 1, 2, or 3 Barricades

Support:

01 A barricade is a portable or fixed device having from one to three rails with appropriate markings and is used to control road users by closing, restricting, or delineating all or a portion of the right-of-way.

02 As shown in Figure 6F-7, barricades are classified as Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3.

Standard:

03 **Stripes on barricade rails shall be alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes sloping downward at an angle of 45 degrees in the direction road users are to pass. Except as provided in Paragraph 4, the stripes shall be 6 inches wide.**

Option:

04 When rail lengths are less than 36 inches, 4-inch wide stripes may be used.

Standard:

05 **The minimum length for Type 1 and Type 2 Barricades shall be 24 inches, and the minimum length for Type 3 Barricades shall be 48 inches. Each barricade rail shall be 8 to 12 inches wide. Barricades used on freeways, expressways, and other high-speed roadways shall have a minimum of 270 square inches of retroreflective area facing road users.**

Support:

05a The Type I and Type II Barricades, 36 inch in length with each rail 12 inch wide, provide additional conspicuity in visually complex environments and for older road users.

Standard:

05b On State highways, the retroreflectorized bands shall be maintained at or above minimum levels in Table 2A-3.

Guidance:

05c *On local roads, the retroreflectorized bands should be maintained at or above minimum levels in Table 2A-3.*

Support:

05d Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.01A(4) for visibility criteria cited. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Guidance:

06 *Where barricades extend entirely across a roadway, the stripes should slope downward in the direction toward which road users must turn.*

07 *Where both right and left turns are provided, the barricade stripes should slope downward in both directions from the center of the barricade or barricades.*

08 *Where no turns are intended, the stripes should be positioned to slope downward toward the center of the barricade or barricades.*

09 *Barricade rails should be supported in a manner that will allow them to be seen by the road user, and in a manner that provides a stable support that is not easily blown over or displaced.*

10 *The width of the existing pedestrian facility should be provided for the temporary facility if practical. Traffic control devices and other construction materials and features should not intrude into the usable width of the sidewalk, temporary pathway, or other pedestrian facility. When it is not possible to maintain a minimum width of 60 inches throughout the entire length of the pedestrian pathway, a 60 x 60-inch passing space should be provided at least every 200 feet to allow individuals in wheelchairs to pass.*

11 *Barricade rail supports should not project into pedestrian circulation routes more than 4 inches from the support between 27 and 80 inches from the surface as described in Section 4.4.1 of the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11).*

Option:

12 For Type 1 Barricades, the support may include other unstriped horizontal rails necessary to provide stability.

Guidance:

13 *On high-speed expressways or in other situations where barricades may be susceptible to overturning in the wind, ballasting should be used.*

Option:

14 Sandbags may be placed on the lower parts of the frame or the stays of barricades to provide the required ballast.

Support:

15 Type 1 or Type 2 Barricades are intended for use in situations where road user flow is maintained through the TTC zone.

Option:

16 Barricades may be used alone or in groups to mark a specific condition or they may be used in a series for channelizing road users.

17 Type 1 Barricades may be used on conventional roads or urban streets.

Guidance:

18 *Type 2 or Type 3 Barricades should be used on freeways and expressways or other high-speed roadways. Type 3 Barricades should be used to close or partially close a road.*

Option:

19 Type 3 Barricades used at a road closure may be placed completely across a roadway or from curb to curb.

Guidance:

20 *Where provision is made for access of authorized equipment and vehicles, the responsibility for Type 3 Barricades should be assigned to a person who will provide proper closure at the end of each work day.*

Support:

21 When a highway is legally closed but access must still be allowed for local road users, barricades usually are not extended completely across the roadway.

Standard:

22 **A sign shall be installed with the appropriate legend concerning permissible use by local road users (see Section 6F.09). Adequate visibility of the barricades from both directions shall be provided.**

Option:

23 Signs may be installed on barricades (see Section 6F.03).

24 Barricades may be used as sign supports if the barricades have been successfully crash tested as one unit with a construction area sign attached.

Section 6F.69 Direction Indicator Barricades

Standard:

01 **The Direction Indicator Barricade (see Figure 6F-7) shall consist of a One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign mounted above a diagonal striped, horizontally aligned, retroreflective rail.**

02 **The One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign shall be black on an orange background. The stripes on the bottom rail shall be alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes sloping downward at an angle of 45 degrees in the direction road users are to pass. The stripes shall be 4 inches wide. The One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign shall be 24 x 12 inches. The bottom rail shall have a length of 24 inches and a height of 8 inches.**

Option:

03 The Direction Indicator Barricade may be used in tapers, transitions, and other areas where specific directional guidance to drivers is necessary.

Guidance:

04 *If used, Direction Indicator Barricades should be used in series to direct the driver through the transition and into the intended travel lane.*

Section 6F.70 Temporary Traffic Barriers as Channelizing Devices

Support:

01 Temporary traffic barriers are not TTC devices in themselves; however, when placed in a position identical to a line of channelizing devices and marked and/or equipped with appropriate channelization features to provide guidance and warning both day and night, they serve as TTC devices.

Standard:

02 **Temporary traffic barriers serving as TTC devices shall comply with requirements for such devices as set forth throughout Part 6.**

03 **Temporary traffic barriers (see Section 6F.85) shall not be used solely to channelize road users, but also to protect the work space. If used to channelize vehicular traffic, the temporary traffic barrier shall be supplemented with delineation, pavement markings, or channelizing devices for improved daytime and nighttime visibility.**

Guidance:

04 *Temporary traffic barriers should not be used for a merging taper except in low-speed urban areas.*

05 *When it is necessary to use a temporary traffic barrier for a merging taper in low-speed urban areas or for a constricted/restricted TTC zone, the taper length should be designed to optimize road user operations considering the available geometric conditions.*

Standard:

06 **When it is necessary to use a temporary traffic barrier for a merging taper in low-speed urban areas or for a constricted/restricted TTC zone, the taper shall be delineated.**

Guidance:

07 *When used for channelization, temporary traffic barriers should be of a light color for increased visibility.*

Option:

08 Side reflectors or top mounted reflectors (facing the road user) may be used on temporary traffic barriers.

Guidance:

09 *If used, the spacing of these reflectors should not exceed a distance in feet equal to 1.0 times the speed limit in mph through the TTC zone.*

Section 6F.71 Longitudinal Channelizing Devices

Support:

01 Longitudinal channelizing devices are lightweight, deformable devices that are highly visible, have good target value, and can be connected together.

Standard:

02 **If used singly as Type 1, 2, or 3 barricades, longitudinal channelizing devices shall comply with the general size, color, stripe pattern, retroreflectivity, and placement characteristics established for the devices described in this Chapter.**

Guidance:

03 *If used to channelize vehicular traffic at night, longitudinal channelizing devices should be supplemented with retroreflective material or delineation for improved nighttime visibility.*

Option:

04 Longitudinal channelizing devices may be used instead of a line of cones, drums, or barricades.

05 Longitudinal channelizing devices may be hollow and filled with water as a ballast.

06 Longitudinal channelizing devices may be used for pedestrian traffic control.

Standard:

07 **If used for pedestrian traffic control, longitudinal channelizing devices shall be interlocked to delineate or channelize flow. The interlocking devices shall not have gaps that allow pedestrians to stray from the channelizing path.**

Guidance:

08 *Longitudinal channelizing devices have not met the crashworthy requirements for temporary traffic barriers and should not be used to shield obstacles or provide positive protection for pedestrians or workers.*

Section 6F.72 Temporary Lane Separators

Option:

01 Temporary lane separators may be used to channelize road users, to divide opposing vehicular traffic lanes, to divide lanes when two or more lanes are open in the same direction, and to provide continuous pedestrian channelization.

Standard:

02 **Temporary lane separators shall be crashworthy. Temporary lane separators shall have a maximum height of 4 inches and a maximum width of 1 foot, and shall have sloping sides in order to facilitate crossover by emergency vehicles.**

Option:

03 Temporary lane separators may be supplemented with any of the approved channelizing devices contained in this Chapter, such as tubular markers, vertical panels, and opposing traffic lane dividers.

Standard:

04 **If appropriate channelizing devices are used to supplement a temporary lane separator, the channelizing devices shall be retroreflectorized to provide nighttime visibility. If channelizing devices are not used, the temporary lane separator shall contain retroreflectorization to enhance its visibility.**

Guidance:

05 *A temporary lane separator should be stabilized by affixing it to the pavement in a manner suitable to its design, while allowing the unit to be shifted from place to place within the TTC zone in order to accommodate changing conditions.*

Standard:

06 **At pedestrian crossing locations, temporary lane separators shall have an opening or be shortened to provide a pathway that is at least 60 inches wide for crossing pedestrians.**

Section 6F.73 Other Channelizing Devices

Option:

01 Channelizing devices other than those described in this Chapter may be used in special situations based on an engineering study.

Guidance:

02 *Other channelizing devices should comply with the general size, color, stripe pattern, retroreflection, and placement characteristics established for the devices described in this Chapter.*

Section 6F.74 Detectable Edging for Pedestrians

Support:

01 Individual channelizing devices, tape or rope used to connect individual devices, other discontinuous barriers and devices, and pavement markings are not detectable by persons with visual disabilities and are incapable of providing detectable path guidance on temporary or realigned sidewalks or other pedestrian facilities.

Guidance:

02 *When it is determined that a facility should be accessible to and detectable by pedestrians with visual disabilities, a continuously detectable edging should be provided throughout the length of the facility such that it can be followed by pedestrians using long canes for guidance. This edging should protrude at least 6 inches above the surface of the sidewalk or pathway, with the bottom of the edging a maximum of ~~2.5~~2.0 inches above the surface. This edging should be continuous throughout the length of the facility except for gaps at locations where pedestrians or vehicles will be turning or crossing. This edging should consist of a prefabricated or formed-in-place curbing or other continuous device that is placed along the edge of the sidewalk or walkway. This edging should be firmly attached to the ground or to other devices. Adjacent sections of this edging should be interconnected such that the edging is not displaced by pedestrian or vehicular traffic or work operations, and such that it does not constitute a hazard to pedestrians, workers, or other road users.*

Support:

03 Examples of detectable edging for pedestrians include:

A. Prefabricated lightweight sections of plastic, metal, or other suitable materials that are interconnected and fixed in place to form a continuous edge.
B. Prefabricated lightweight sections of plastic, metal, or other suitable materials that are interconnected, fixed in place, and placed at ground level to provide a continuous connection between channelizing devices located at intervals along the edge of the sidewalk or walkway.
C. Sections of lumber interconnected and fixed in place to form a continuous edge.
D. Formed-in-place asphalt or concrete curb.
E. Prefabricated concrete curb sections that are interconnected and fixed in place to form a continuous edge.
F. Continuous temporary traffic barrier or longitudinal channelizing barricades placed along the edge of the sidewalk or walkway that provides a pedestrian edging at ground level.
G. Chain link or other fencing equipped with a continuous bottom rail.

Guidance:

04 *Detectable pedestrian edging should be orange, white, or yellow and should match the color of the adjacent channelizing devices or traffic control devices, if any are present.*

05 *If prefabricated edging is used to separate pedestrians and vehicular traffic, such edging should be certified as crashworthy (see section 6F.01). If section of lumber is used to form a railing system, any part of the railing that is more than 3 feet above pavement should be treated lumber and cause no harm to bare hand touching it.*

Section 6F.75 Temporary Raised Islands

Standard:

01 **Temporary raised islands shall be used only in combination with pavement striping and other suitable channelizing devices.**

Option:

02 A temporary raised island may be used to separate vehicular traffic flows in two-lane, two-way operations on roadways having a vehicular traffic volume range of 4,000 to 15,000 average daily traffic (ADT) and on freeways having a vehicular traffic volume range of 22,000 ADT to 60,000 ADT.

03 Temporary raised islands also may be used in other than two-lane, two-way operations where physical separation of vehicular traffic from the TTC zone is not required.

Guidance:

04 *Temporary raised islands should have the basic dimensions of 4 inches high by at least 12 inches wide and have rounded or chamfered corners.*

05 *The temporary raised islands should not be designed in such a manner that they would cause a motorist to lose control of the vehicle if the vehicle inadvertently strikes the temporary raised island. If struck, pieces of the island should not be dislodged to the extent that they could penetrate the occupant compartment or involve other vehicles.*

Standard:

06 **At pedestrian crossing locations, temporary raised islands shall have an opening or be shortened to provide at least a 60-inch wide pathway for the crossing pedestrian.**

Section 6F.76 Opposing Traffic Lane Divider and Sign (W6-4)

Support:

01 Opposing traffic lane dividers are delineation devices used as center lane dividers to separate opposing vehicular traffic on a two-lane, two-way operation.

Standard:

02 **Opposing traffic lane dividers shall not be placed across pedestrian crossings.**

03 **The Opposing Traffic Lane Divider (W6-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be an upright, retroreflective orange-colored sign placed on a flexible support and sized at least 12 inches wide by 18 inches high.**

Guidance:

04 *The Opposing Traffic Lane Divider (W6-4) sign should only be used to supplement a channelizing device that is being used to separate opposing traffic in a TTC zone.*

Section 6F.77 Pavement Markings

Support:

01 Pavement markings are installed or existing markings are maintained or enhanced in TTC zones to provide road users with a clearly defined path for travel through the TTC zone in day, night, and twilight periods under both wet and dry pavement conditions.

Guidance:

02 *The work should be planned and staged to provide for the placement and removal of the pavement markings in a way that minimizes the disruption to traffic flow approaching and through the TTC zone during the placement and removal process.*

Standard:

03 **Existing pavement markings shall be maintained in all long-term stationary (see Section 6G.02) TTC zones in accordance with Chapters 3A and 3B, except as otherwise provided for temporary pavement markings in Section 6F.78. Pavement markings shall match the alignment of the markings in place at both ends of the TTC zone. Pavement markings shall be placed along the entire length of any paved detour or temporary roadway prior to the detour or roadway being opened to road users.**

04 **For long-term stationary operations, pavement markings in the temporary traveled way that are no longer applicable shall be removed or obliterated as soon as practical. Pavement marking obliteration shall remove the non-applicable pavement marking material, and the obliteration method shall minimize pavement scarring. Painting over existing pavement markings with black paint or spraying with asphalt shall not be accepted as a substitute for removal or obliteration.**

Option:

05 Removable, non-reflective, preformed tape that is approximately the same color as the pavement surface may be used where markings need to be covered temporarily.

Guidance:

06 *Centerlines and lane lines should be placed, replaced, or delineated where appropriate before the roadway is opened to traffic.*

Standard:

07 On State highways, whenever construction or maintenance work causes obliteration of center stripe, temporary or permanent center stripe shall be in place prior to opening the State highway to public traffic.

Section 6F.78 Temporary Markings

Support:

01 Temporary markings are those pavement markings or devices that are placed within TTC zones to provide road users with a clearly defined path of travel through the TTC zone when the permanent markings are either removed or obliterated during the work activities. Temporary markings are typically needed during the reconstruction of a road while it is open to traffic, such as overlays or surface treatments or where lanes are temporarily shifted on pavement that is to remain in place.

Guidance:

02 *Unless justified based on engineering judgment, temporary pavement markings should not remain in place for more than 14 days after the application of the pavement surface treatment or the construction of the final pavement surface on new roadways or over existing pavements.*

03 *The temporary use of edge lines, channelizing lines, lane-reduction transitions, gore markings, and other longitudinal markings, and the various non-longitudinal markings (such as stop lines, railroad crossings, crosswalks, words, symbols, or arrows) should be in accordance with the State's or highway agency's policy.*

Standard:

04 **Warning signs, channelizing devices, and delineation shall be used to indicate required road user paths in TTC zones where it is not possible to provide a clear path by pavement markings.**

05 **Except as otherwise provided in this Section, all temporary pavement markings for no-passing zones shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 3A and 3B. All temporary broken-line pavement markings shall use the same cycle length as permanent markings and shall have line segments that are at least 2 feet long.**

Guidance:

06 *All pavement markings and devices used to delineate road user paths should be reviewed during daytime and nighttime periods.*

Option:

07 Half-cycle lengths with a minimum of 2-foot stripes may be used on roadways with severe curvature (see Section 3A.06) for broken line center lines in passing zones and for lane lines.

08 For temporary situations of 14 days or less, for a two- or three-lane road, no-passing zones may be identified by using DO NOT PASS (R4-1), PASS WITH CARE (R4-2), and NO PASSING ZONE (W14-3) signs (see Sections 2B.28, 2B.29, and 2C.45) rather than pavement markings. Also, DO NOT PASS, PASS WITH CARE, and NO PASSING ZONE signs may be used instead of pavement markings on roads with low volumes for longer periods in accordance with the State's or highway agency's policy.

Guidance:

09 *If used, the DO NOT PASS, PASS WITH CARE, and NO PASSING ZONE signs should be placed in accordance with Sections 2B.28, 2B.29, and 2C.45.*

10 *If used, the NO CENTER LINE sign should be placed in accordance with Section 6F.47.*

Standard:

11 Temporary lane lines and/or centerlines shall consist of retroreflectorized lines approximately 24 inch long, 4 inch wide, spaced approximately 24 feet apart.

Option:

12 Day/night raised retroreflectorized pavement markers, approved by Caltrans, may be used in lieu of 24 inch lines. See Section 6F.79 for spacing requirements.

Guidance:

13 *Right edge lines should not be simulated with dashed lines or raised pavement markers because they could confuse motorists.*

Option:

14 Portable delineators, permanent type delineators, etc., may be used where it is considered desirable to enhance the edge of traveled way due to curvilinear alignment, narrowing pavement, etc.

Standard:

15 Locations on two-lane conventional highways where no-passing zone centerline delineation has been obliterated shall be posted with a sign package consisting of a ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign and WORK ZONE (G20-5aP) plaque in combination with a DO NOT PASS (R4-1) sign.

Guidance:

16 *The R4-1 sign should be posted at approximate 2000 feet intervals throughout the extended no-pass zone. A PASS WITH CARE (R4-2) sign should also be placed at the end of the zone.*

Section 6F.79 Temporary Raised Pavement Markers

Option:

01 Retroreflective or internally illuminated raised pavement markers, or non-retroreflective raised pavement markers supplemented by retroreflective or internally illuminated markers, may be substituted for markings of other types in TTC zones.

Standard:

02 **If used, the color and pattern of the raised pavement markers shall simulate the color and pattern of the markings for which they substitute.**

03 ~~**If temporary raised pavement markers are used to substitute for broken line segments, a group of at least three retroreflective markers shall be equally spaced at no greater than N/8 (see Section 3B.14). The value of N for a broken or dotted line shall equal the length of one line segment plus one gap.**~~

04 ~~**If temporary raised pavement markers are used to substitute for solid lines, the markers shall be equally spaced at no greater than N/4, with retroreflective or internally illuminated units at a spacing no greater than N/2. The value of N referenced for solid lines shall equal the N for the broken or dotted lines that might be adjacent to or might extend the solid lines (see Section 3B.11).**~~

04a If raised pavement markers are used to substitute for broken line segments, at least two retroreflective markers shall be placed, one at each end of a segment of 4 feet or less. For segments over 4 feet, a group of at least three retroreflective markers shall be equally spaced. See Section 3A.06 for more details.

~~Option:~~

05 ~~Temporary raised pavement markers may be used to substitute for broken line segments by using at least two retroreflective markers placed at each end of a segment of 2 to 5 feet in length, using the same cycle length as permanent markings.~~

Guidance:

06 *Temporary raised pavement markers used on ~~2- to 5-foot~~ 4-foot or less segments to substitute for broken line segments should not be in place for more than 14 days unless justified by engineering judgment.*

07 *Raised pavement markers should be considered for use along surfaced detours or temporary roadways, and other changed or new travel-lane alignments.*

Option:

08 Retroreflective or internally illuminated raised pavement markers, or non-retroreflective raised pavement markers supplemented by retroreflective or internally illuminated markers, may also be used in TTC zones to supplement markings as prescribed in Chapters 3A and 3B.

Section 6F.80 Delineators

Standard:

01 **When used, delineators shall combine with or supplement other TTC devices. They shall be mounted on crashworthy supports so that the reflecting unit is approximately 4 feet above the near roadway edge. The standard color for delineators used along both sides of two-way streets and highways and the right-hand side of one-way roadways shall be white. Delineators used along the left-hand side of one-way roadways shall be yellow.**

Guidance:

02 *Spacing along roadway curves should be as set forth in Section 3F.04 and should be such that several delineators are constantly visible to the driver.*

Option:

03 Delineators may be used in TTC zones to indicate the alignment of the roadway and to outline the required vehicle path through the TTC zone.

Standard:

04 The delineators shall be placed 2 feet to 6 feet outside the outer edge of the shoulder. Retroreflection of delineators shall be 3 x 12 inch minimum size.

Section 6F.81 Lighting Devices

Guidance:

01 *Lighting devices should be provided in TTC zones based on engineering judgment.*

02 *When used to supplement channelization, the maximum spacing for warning lights should be identical to the channelizing device spacing requirements.*

Option:

03 Lighting devices may be used to supplement retroreflectorized signs, barriers, and channelizing devices.

04 During normal daytime maintenance operations, the functions of flashing warning beacons may be provided by high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on a maintenance vehicle.

Standard:

05 **Although vehicle hazard warning lights are permitted to be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, they shall not be used instead of high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Section 6F.82 Floodlights

Support:

01 Utility, maintenance, or construction activities on highways are frequently conducted during nighttime periods when vehicular traffic volumes are lower. Large construction projects are sometimes operated on a double-shift basis requiring night work (see Section 6G.19).

Guidance:

02 *When nighttime work is being performed, floodlights should be used to illuminate the work area, equipment crossings, and other areas.*

Standard:

02a Highway construction work lighting shall be as per Construction Safety Order 1523 (California Code of Regulations Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 3, Section 1523 - Illumination). See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

03 **Except in emergency situations, flagger stations shall be illuminated at night.**

04 **Floodlighting shall not produce a disabling glare condition for approaching road users, flaggers, or workers.**

Guidance:

05 *The adequacy of the floodlight placement and elimination of potential glare should be determined by driving through and observing the floodlighted area from each direction on all approaching roadways after the initial floodlight setup, at night, and periodically.*

Support:

06 Desired illumination levels vary depending upon the nature of the task involved. An average horizontal luminance of ~~5 foot candles~~ 10 foot candles (108 lux) can be adequate for general activities. Tasks requiring high levels of precision and extreme care can require an average horizontal luminance of 20 foot candles.

Section 6F.83 Warning Lights

Support:

01 Type A, Type B, Type C, and Type D 360-degree warning lights are portable, powered, yellow, lens-directed, enclosed lights.

Standard:

02 **Warning lights shall be in accordance with the current ITE "Purchase Specification for Flashing and Steady-Burn Warning Lights" (see Section 1A.11).**

03 **When warning lights are used, they shall be mounted on signs or channelizing devices in a manner that, if hit by an errant vehicle, they will not be likely to penetrate the windshield.**

Guidance:

04 *The maximum spacing for warning lights should be identical to the channelizing device spacing requirements.*

Support:

05 The light weight and portability of warning lights are advantages that make these devices useful as supplements to the retroreflectorization on signs and channelizing devices. The flashing lights are effective in attracting road users' attention.

Option:

06 Warning lights may be used in either a steady-burn or flashing mode.

Standard:

07 **Except for the sequential flashing warning lights that are described in Paragraphs 8 and 9, flashing warning lights shall not be used for delineation, as a series of flashers fails to identify the desired vehicle path.**

Option:

08 A series of sequential flashing warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices that form a merging taper in order to increase driver detection and recognition of the merging taper.

Standard:

09 **If a series of sequential flashing warning lights is used, the successive flashing of the lights shall occur from the upstream end of the merging taper to the downstream end of the merging taper in order to identify the desired vehicle path. Each flashing warning light in the sequence shall be flashed at a rate of not less than 55 or more than 75 times per minute.**

10 **Type A Low-Intensity Flashing warning lights, Type C Steady-Burn warning lights, and Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights shall be maintained so as to be capable of being visible on a clear night from a distance of 3,000 feet. Type B High-Intensity Flashing warning lights shall be maintained so as to be capable of being visible on a sunny day when viewed without the sun directly on or behind the device from a distance of 1,000 feet.**

11 **Warning lights shall have a minimum mounting height of 30 inches to the bottom of the lens.**

Support:

12 Type A Low-Intensity Flashing warning lights are used to warn road users during nighttime hours that they are approaching or proceeding in a potentially hazardous area.

Option:

13 Type A warning lights may be mounted on channelizing devices.

Support:

14 Type B High-Intensity Flashing warning lights are used to warn road users during both daylight and nighttime hours that they are approaching a potentially hazardous area.

Option:

15 Type B warning lights are designed to operate 24 hours per day and may be mounted on advance warning signs or on independent supports.

16 Type C Steady-Burn warning lights and Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights may be used during nighttime hours to delineate the edge of the traveled way.

Guidance:

17 *When used to delineate a curve, Type C and Type D 360-degree warning lights should only be used on devices on the outside of the curve, and not on the inside of the curve.*

Support:

18 Flashing warning beacon is a type of warning light and often used to supplement other TTC devices.

Standard:

19 Flashing warning beacon shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4L and Caltrans' standard signal lenses. A flashing warning beacon shall be a flashing yellow light with a minimum nominal diameter of 12 inch. Where flashing warning beacon is required, a Type B warning light shall not be used in its place. When placed within 15 feet of the edge of travel way the beacon and its support shall be certified as crashworthy (see section 6F.01) or the beacon shall meet the lightweight criteria set for Type B warning light and is mounted on a certified crashworthy support. The mounting height shall be between 6 feet and 10 feet, measured from the bottom of the base to the center of the lens.

Section 6F.84 Temporary Traffic Control Signals

Standard:

01 **Temporary traffic control signals (see Section 4D.32) used to control road user movements through TTC zones and in other TTC situations shall comply with the applicable provisions of Part 4** and for State highways, Caltrans' Standard Plans and/or Special Provisions. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication**.**

Support:

02 Temporary traffic control signals are typically used in TTC zones such as temporary haul road crossings; temporary one-way operations along a one-lane, two-way highway; temporary one-way operations on bridges, reversible lanes, and intersections.

Standard:

03 **A temporary traffic control signal that is used to control traffic through a one-lane, two-way section of roadway shall comply with the provisions of Section 4H.02.**

Guidance:

04 *Where pedestrian traffic is detoured to a temporary traffic control signal, engineering judgment should be used to determine if pedestrian signals or accessible pedestrian signals (see Section 4E.09) are needed for crossing along an alternate route.*

05 *When temporary traffic control signals are used, conflict monitors typical of traditional traffic control signal operations should be used.*

Option:

06 Temporary traffic control signals may be portable or temporarily mounted on fixed supports.

Guidance:

07 *Temporary traffic control signals should only be used in situations where temporary traffic control signals are preferable to other means of traffic control, such as changing the work staging or work zone size to eliminate one-way vehicular traffic movements, using flaggers to control one-way or crossing movements, using STOP or YIELD signs, and using warning devices alone.*

Support:

08 Factors related to the design and application of temporary traffic control signals include the following:

A. Safety and road user needs;
B. Work staging and operations;
C. The feasibility of using other TTC strategies (for example, flaggers, providing space for two lanes, or detouring road users, including bicyclists and pedestrians);
D. Sight distance restrictions;
E. Human factors considerations (for example, lack of driver familiarity with temporary traffic control signals);
F. Road-user volumes including roadway and intersection capacity;
G. Affected side streets and driveways;
H. Vehicle speeds;
I. The placement of other TTC devices;
J. Parking;
K. Turning restrictions;
L. Pedestrians;
M. The nature of adjacent land uses (such as residential or commercial);
N. Legal authority;
O. Signal phasing and timing requirements;
P. Full-time or part-time operation;
Q. Actuated, fixed-time, or manual operation;
R. Power failures or other emergencies;
S. Inspection and maintenance needs;
T. Need for detailed placement, timing, and operation records; and
U. Operation by contractors or by others.

09 Although temporary traffic control signals can be mounted on trailers or lightweight portable supports, fixed supports offer superior resistance to displacement or damage by severe weather, vehicle impact, and vandalism.

Guidance:

10 *Other TTC devices should be used to supplement temporary traffic control signals, including warning and regulatory signs, pavement markings, and channelizing devices.*

11 *Temporary traffic control signals not in use should be covered or removed.*

12 *If a temporary traffic control signal is located within 1/2 mile of an adjacent traffic control signal, consideration should be given to interconnected operation.*

Standard:

13 **Temporary traffic control signals shall not be located within 200 feet of a grade crossing unless the temporary traffic control signal is provided with preemption in accordance with Section 4D.27, or unless a uniformed officer or flagger is provided at the crossing to prevent vehicles from stopping within the crossing.**

Section 6F.85 Temporary Traffic Barriers

Support:

01 Temporary traffic barriers, including shifting portable or movable barriers, are devices designed to help prevent penetration by vehicles while minimizing injuries to vehicle occupants, and to protect workers, bicyclists, and pedestrians.

02 The four primary functions of temporary traffic barriers are:

A. To keep vehicular traffic from entering work areas, such as excavations or material storage sites;
B. To separate workers, bicyclists, and pedestrians from motor vehicle traffic;
C. To separate opposing directions of vehicular traffic; and
D. To separate vehicular traffic, bicyclists, and pedestrians from the work area such as false work for bridges and other exposed objects.

Option:

03 Temporary traffic barriers may be used to separate two-way vehicular traffic.

Guidance:

04 *Because the protective requirements of a TTC situation have priority in determining the need for temporary traffic barriers, their use should be based on an engineering study.*

Standard:

05 **Temporary traffic barriers shall be supplemented with standard delineation, pavement markings, or channelizing devices for improved daytime and nighttime visibility if they are used to channelize vehicular traffic. The delineation color shall match the applicable pavement marking color.**

06 **Temporary traffic barriers, including their end treatments, shall be crashworthy. In order to mitigate the effect of striking the upstream end of a temporary traffic barrier, the end shall be installed in accordance with AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11) by flaring until the end is outside the acceptable clear zone or by providing crashworthy end treatments.**

Option:

07 Warning lights or steady-burn lamps may be mounted on temporary traffic barrier installations.

07a Side reflectors or top mounted reflectors (facing the road user) may be used on temporary traffic barriers.

Guidance:

07b *If used, the spacing of these reflectors should not exceed a distance in feet equal to 1.0 times the speed limit in mph through the TTC zone.*

Support:

08 Movable barriers are capable of being repositioned laterally using a transfer vehicle that travels along the barrier. Movable barriers enable short-term closures to be installed and removed on long-term projects. Providing a barrier-protected work space for short-term closures and providing unbalanced flow to accommodate changes in the direction of peak-period traffic flows are two of the advantages of using movable barriers.

09 Figure 6H-45 shows a temporary reversible lane using movable barriers. The notable feature of the movable barrier is that in both Phase A and Phase B, the lanes used by opposing traffic are separated by a barrier.

10 Figure 6H-34 shows an exterior lane closure using a temporary traffic barrier. Notes 7 through 9 address the option of using a movable barrier. By using a movable barrier, the barrier can be positioned to close the lane during the off-peak periods and can be relocated to open the lane during peak periods to accommodate peak

traffic flows. With one pass of the transfer vehicle, the barrier can be moved out of the lane and onto the shoulder. Furthermore, if so desired, with a second pass of the transfer vehicle, the barrier could be moved to the roadside beyond the shoulder.

11 More specific information on the use of temporary traffic barriers is contained in Chapters 8 and 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Support:

12 More specific information on the use of portable barriers and crash cushions can be obtained from Caltrans' Standard Plans and Standard Specifications. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6F.86 Crash Cushions

Support:

01 Crash cushions are systems that mitigate the effects of errant vehicles that strike obstacles, either by smoothly decelerating the vehicle to a stop when hit head-on, or by redirecting the errant vehicle. The two types of crash cushions that are used in TTC zones are stationary crash cushions and truck-mounted attenuators. Crash cushions in TTC zones help protect the drivers from the exposed ends of barriers, fixed objects, shadow vehicles, and other obstacles. Specific information on the use of crash cushions can be found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

02 **Crash cushions shall be crashworthy. They shall also be designed for each application to stop or redirect errant vehicles under prescribed conditions. Crash cushions shall be periodically inspected to verify that they have not been hit or damaged. Damaged crash cushions shall be promptly repaired or replaced to maintain their crashworthiness.**

Support:

03 Stationary crash cushions are used in the same manner as permanent highway installations to protect drivers from the exposed ends of barriers, fixed objects, and other obstacles.

Standard:

04 **Stationary crash cushions shall be designed for the specific application intended.**

05 **Truck-mounted attenuators shall be energy-absorbing devices attached to the rear of shadow trailers or trucks. If used, the shadow vehicle with the attenuator shall be located in advance of the work area, workers, or equipment to reduce the severity of rear-end crashes from errant vehicles.**

Support:

06 Trucks or trailers are often used as shadow vehicles to protect workers or work equipment from errant vehicles. These shadow vehicles are normally equipped with flashing arrows, changeable message signs, and/ or high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights located properly in advance of the workers and/or equipment that they are protecting. However, these shadow vehicles might themselves cause injuries to occupants of the errant vehicles if they are not equipped with truck-mounted attenuators.

Guidance:

07 *The shadow truck should be positioned a sufficient distance in advance of the workers or equipment being protected so that there will be sufficient distance, but not so much so that errant vehicles will travel around the shadow truck and strike the protected workers and/or equipment.*

Support:

08 Chapter 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11) contains additional information regarding the use of shadow vehicles.

Guidance:

09 *If used, the truck-mounted attenuator should be used in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.*

Support:

10 Information about designs and types of crash cushions currently approved for use on State highways is available from Caltrans' Division of Traffic Operations in Sacramento.

Section 6F.87 Rumble Strips

Support:

01 Transverse rumble strips consist of intermittent, narrow, transverse areas of rough-textured or slightly raised or depressed road surface that extend across the travel lanes to alert drivers to unusual vehicular traffic conditions. Through noise and vibration they attract the driver's attention to such features as unexpected changes in alignment and to conditions requiring a stop.

Option:

01a Portable transverse rumble strips may be used for flagging operations, as they are easy to set out, remove and/or relocate.

02 Longitudinal rumble strips consist of a series of rough-textured or slightly raised or depressed road surfaces located along the shoulder to alert road users that they are leaving the travel lanes.

Standard:

03 **If it is desirable to use a color other than the color of the pavement for a longitudinal rumble strip, the color of the rumble strip shall be the same color as the longitudinal line the rumble strip supplements.**

04 **If the color of a transverse rumble strip used within a travel lane is not the color of the pavement, the color of the rumble strip shall be white, black, or orange.**

04a The color of a portable transverse rumble strip used within a travel lane shall be black or orange. The height of the portable transverse rumble strip shall be from 5/8 to 3/4 inch, including the height of adhesives, if used. The width of each portable transverse rumble strip shall not be less than 12 inches, nor more than 13 inches. Each portable transverse rumble strip shall be at least 10 feet long and shall have a minimum weight of 105 lbs.

Option:

05 Intervals between transverse rumble strips may be reduced as the distance to the approached conditions is diminished in order to convey an impression that a closure speed is too fast and/or that an action is imminent. A RUMBLE STRIPS (C45(CA)) sign warning drivers of the onset of rumble strips may be placed in advance of any transverse rumble strip installation.

Guidance:

06 *Transverse rumble strips should be placed transverse to vehicular traffic movement. They should not adversely affect overall pavement skid resistance under wet or dry conditions.*

07 *In urban areas, even though a closer spacing might be warranted, transverse rumble strips should be designed in a manner that does not promote unnecessary braking or erratic steering maneuvers by road users.*

08 *Transverse rumble strips should not be placed on sharp horizontal or vertical curves.*

09 *Rumble strips should not be placed through pedestrian crossings ~~or on bicycle routes~~.*

10 ~~*Transverse rumble strips should not be placed on roadways used by bicyclists unless a minimum clear path of 4 feet is provided at each edge of the roadway or on each paved shoulder as described in AASHTO's "Guide to the Development of Bicycle Facilities" (see Section 1A.11).*~~

11 ~~*Longitudinal rumble strips should not be placed on the shoulder of a roadway that is used by bicyclists unless a minimum clear path of 4 feet is also provided on the shoulder.*~~

12 *If used for flagging operation, 2 arrays (1 array is a single group or set) of portable transverse rumble strips should be placed transverse to the vehicular traffic movement in advance of and approach to each flagger station. Each array should consist of 3 rumble strips spaced no less 6 feet and no more than 10 feet apart. The 1st array should be placed adjacent to the ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD (W20-4) sign and the 2nd array should be placed adjacent to the California Flagger symbol (C9A(CA)) sign. See Figure 6H-10A(CA).*

Standard:

13 If portable transverse rumble strips are used for flagging operations, the RUMBLE STRIPS (C45(CA)) sign shall be placed half way between the ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1) sign and the ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD (W20-4) (see Figure 6H-10A(CA)) .

14 If the portable transverse rumble strips become out of alignment (skewed) by more than 6 inches, measured from one end to the other, they shall be readjusted to bring the placement back to the original location.

Section 6F.88 Screens

Support:

01 Screens are used to block the road users' view of activities that can be distracting. Screens might improve safety and motor vehicle traffic flow where volumes approach the roadway capacity because they discourage gawking and reduce headlight glare from oncoming motor vehicle traffic.

Guidance:

02 *Screens should not be mounted where they could adversely restrict road user visibility and sight distance and adversely affect the reasonably safe operation of vehicles.*

Option:

03 Screens may be mounted on the top of temporary traffic barriers that separate two-way motor vehicle traffic.

03a Temporary traffic screen may be mounted on top of temporary traffic barriers, when barriers are used in transition and crossover areas for glare-control on high-volume roadways.

Guidance:

03b *If used, temporary traffic screen panels should be contiguous without gaps, minimum 32 inches in height.*

04 *Design of screens should be in accordance with Chapter 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).*

Section 6F.101(CA) LOOSE GRAVEL Sign (W8-7)

Guidance:

01 *The LOOSE GRAVEL (W8-7) sign should be used on chip seal jobs or other areas to warn motorists that there is loose gravel on the roadway.*

Standard:

02 When used, the W8-7 sign shall be placed at the beginning of work and at maximum 2000 feet intervals.

Option:

03 When warning is intended to be directed primarily to motorcyclists, use of the W8-7 sign with motorcycle plaque (W8-15P) may be considered.

04 The Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque may be used in combination with the W8-7 sign to indicate the need to decrease speed at a particular location. See Section 6C.01.

Guidance:

05 *The advisory speed should be reasonable or prudent, considering weather, visibility, traffic, surface condition and width of the roadway.*

Standard:

06 On highways with speed limits of 40 mph or higher for seal coat projects, the W13-1P (35 mph or lower) plaque shall be used to supplement the W8-7 sign during placement and/or brooming of screenings.

Section 6F.102(CA) NARROW LANE(S) Sign (C12(CA))

Option:

01 The NARROW LANE(S) (C12(CA)) sign may be used, when appropriate, to warn the approaching motorist of a narrow lane condition.

Guidance:

02 *When used, the C12(CA) sign should be used in conjunction with an Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque. See Section 6C.01.*

Section 6F.103(CA) OPEN TRENCH Sign (C27(CA))

Standard:

01 The OPEN TRENCH (C27(CA)) sign shall be used in advance of open trenches in/or adjacent to roadway.

02 The edge of the traveled way shall be defined by edge line delineation consisting of appropriate markers or striping. Edge line delineation shall be white when located on the right of traffic and yellow when located on the left of traffic.

Guidance:

03 *Trenches in excess of 0.15 feet in depth but not exceeding 0.25 feet in depth that are less than 8 feet from the edge of traveled way should be identified by LOW SHOULDER (W8-9) signs set in the trench adjacent to the edge of pavement at intervals not to exceed every 2,000 feet.*

Option:

04 Portable delineators may be placed at intervals not to exceed 100 feet in lieu of edge line delineation.

Standard:

05 Trenches in excess of 0.25 feet but less than 2.5 feet in depth that are less than 8 feet from the edge of traveled way shall be identified by alternating C27(CA) and NO SHOULDER (C31A(CA)) signs set in the trench at intervals not to exceed 2,000 feet.

Guidance:

06 *Channelizers (CA) or portable delineators should be placed 2 feet to 6 feet outside of the edge line at 100 feet intervals for the conditions described above.*

07 *Trenches in excess of 0.25 feet in depth but not exceeding 2.5 feet in depth that are 8 feet to 15 feet from the edge of traveled way should be identified by C27(CA) signs set in the trench at intervals not to exceed every 2,000 feet. Portable delineators should be placed at 200 feet intervals within 2 feet from the edge of the trench and at 100 feet intervals for edge conditions exceeding 0.5 feet in depth.*

08 *Trenches in excess of 0.5 feet in depth but not exceeding 2.5 feet in depth that are more than 15 feet from the edge of traveled way at locations where a recovery area was available prior to construction should be identified by placing delineators at 200 feet intervals within 2 feet from the edge of the trench and by placing C27(CA) signs in the trench at intervals not to exceed 2,000 feet.*

Standard:

09 Signing for trenches in excess of 2.5 feet in depth shall be based upon engineering judgment or studies (as noted in Section 1A.09) to ensure proper visibility of barricades and signing.

Support:

10 Refer to Tables 6F-101(CA) and 6H-3.

Section 6F.104(CA) Moving Lane Closure Signs (W23-1 and SC10(CA), SC11(CA), SC13(CA), SC15(CA))

Standard:

01 On State highways, the following signs shall be used as shown in Caltrans' Standard Plans T15, T16 and T17 for moving lane closures. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

A. LANE CLOSED AHEAD or ROAD WORK AHEAD (SC10(CA)).
B. LANE CLOSED (SC11(CA)).
C. SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD (W23-1).
D. DO NOT PASS (SC13(CA)).
E. CAUTION (SC15(CA)).

02 The Moving Lane Closure signs shall have a black legend on either a white or an orange background.

03 If used, the SC10(CA) sign and a Type II arrow board shall be mounted on the designated sign vehicle.

04 The SC11(CA) sign and a Type II arrow board shall be mounted on the designated sign vehicle.

05 If used, the W23-1 sign shall be mounted on the rear of the designated sign vehicle.

06 The SC13(CA) sign shall be mounted on the rear and/or the front of the designated sign vehicle.

07 If used, the SC15(CA) sign shall be mounted on the front of the designated sign vehicle.

Section 6F.105(CA) Object Markers

Standard:

01 When used in work zones, the Type N-3(CA) or OM1-3 object markers shall have an orange or fluorescent orange retroreflective background.

02 When used in work zones, the Type P(CA), R(CA), OM-3L, OM-3R and OM-3C object marker shall have alternating retroreflective orange and white stripes.

Support:

03 Figure 6F-103(CA) shows examples of object markers in TTC zones.

04 See Chapter 2C for more details.

Section 6F.106(CA) Slow For The Cone Zone (SC19(CA) and SC20(CA)) Signs

Option:

01 The Slow For The Cone Zone (SC19(CA)) and SLOW FOR THE CONE ZONE (SC20(CA)) signs (see Figures 6H-32(CA), 6H-33 & 6H-36(CA)) may be used to remind motorists to slow down when entering a temporary traffic control (TTC) zone to improve worker and road user safety.

02 If used, SC19(CA) and/or SC20(CA) signs may be used within the advance warning area, transition area, or activity area of a TTC zone.

03 A pictograph may be used on the SC19(CA) sign to identify a governmental jurisdiction, an area of jurisdiction, a governmental agency, a military base or branch of service, a governmental-approved university or college, or a governmental-approved institution.

Standard:

04 If a pictograph is used on the SC19(CA) sign, the maximum dimension (height or width) of a pictograph shall not exceed two times the letter height of the largest legend used on the sign.

Section 6F.107(CA) FRESH CONCRETE (C43(CA) Sign

Option:

01 The FRESH CONCRETE (C43(CA)) sign (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) may be used to warn road users of the surface treatment.

Standard:

02 When used, the FRESH CONCRETE (C43(CA)) sign shall be placed at the beginning of the pavement work area.

Guidance:

03 *The FRESH CONCRETE (C43(CA)) sign should remain in place during the entire curing period.*

Section 6F.108(CA) CAUTION FREQUENT STOPPING AND BACKING STAY BACK 100 FEET (SC21(CA)) Sign and MOVE OVER OR SLOW WHEN AMBER LIGHTS FLASHING (R111(CA)) Sign

Option:

01 For mobile operations, CAUTION FREQUENT STOPPING AND BACKING STAY BACK 100 FEET (SC21(CA)) sign (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) may be mounted on a work vehicle to warn road users and workers of the frequent stopping and backing maneuvers made by the vehicle.

02 On Freeways, lane and/or shoulder closures, incident management, and for short duration work, MOVE OVER OR SLOW WHEN AMBER LIGHTS FLASHING (R111(CA)) Sign (see Figure 6F-101(CA)) may be temporarily displayed on the back of a work vehicle to warn and regulate road users to move over and/or slow when passing work vehicles displaying a flashing amber warning light within or adjacent to the highway.

Figure 6F-1. Height and Lateral Location of Signs—Typical Installations

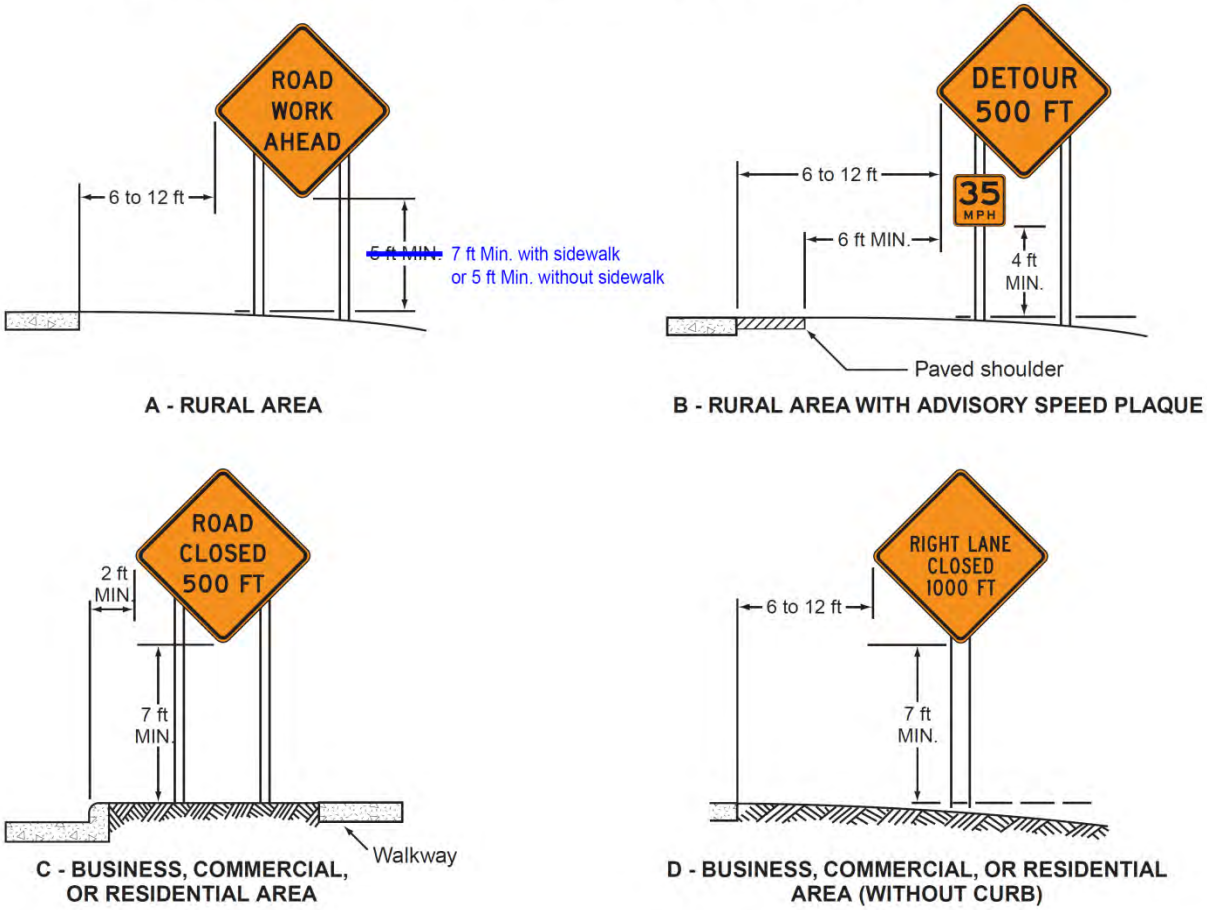


Figure 6F-2. Methods of Mounting Signs Other Than on Posts

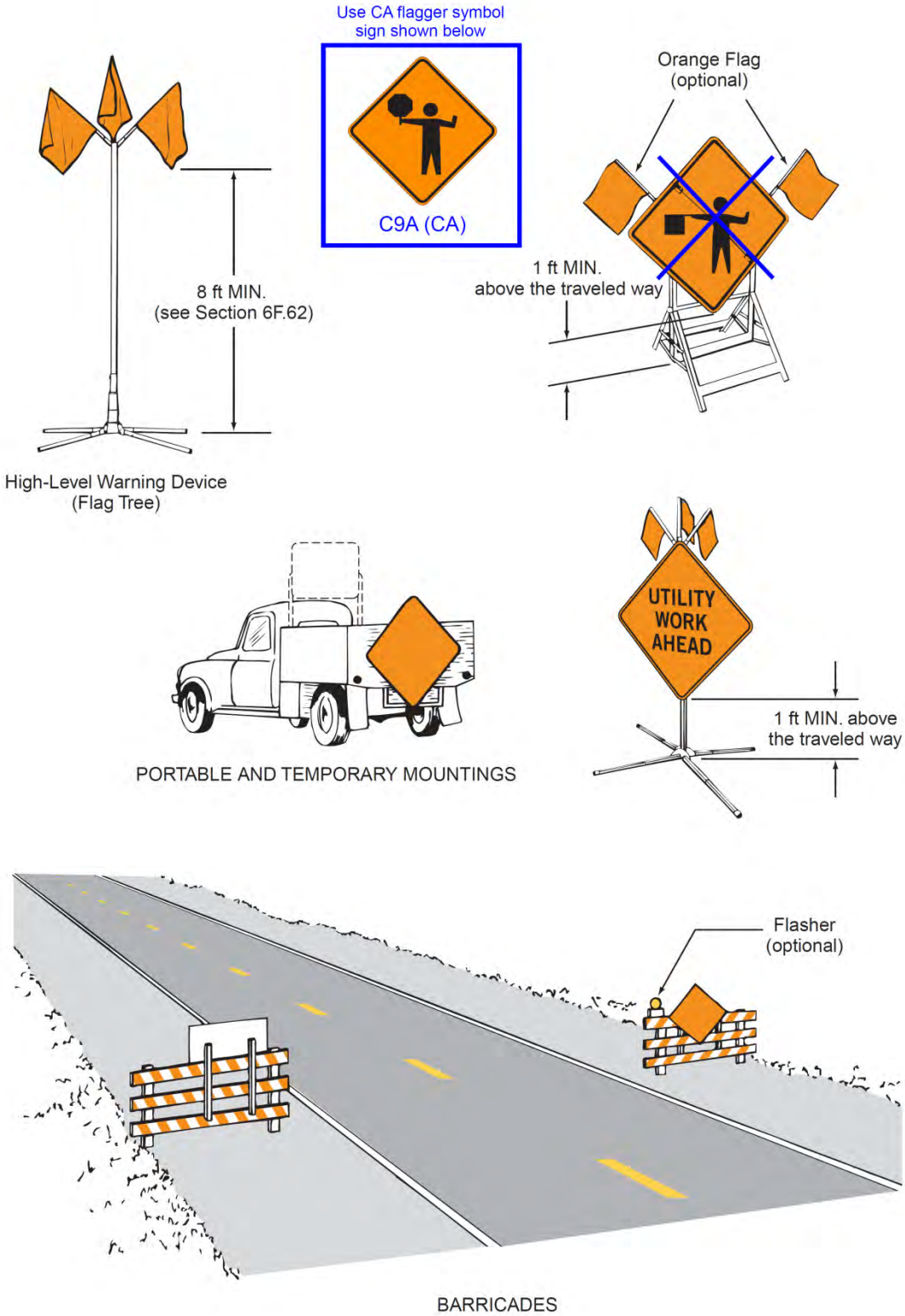


Figure 6F-3. Regulatory Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 1 of 2)

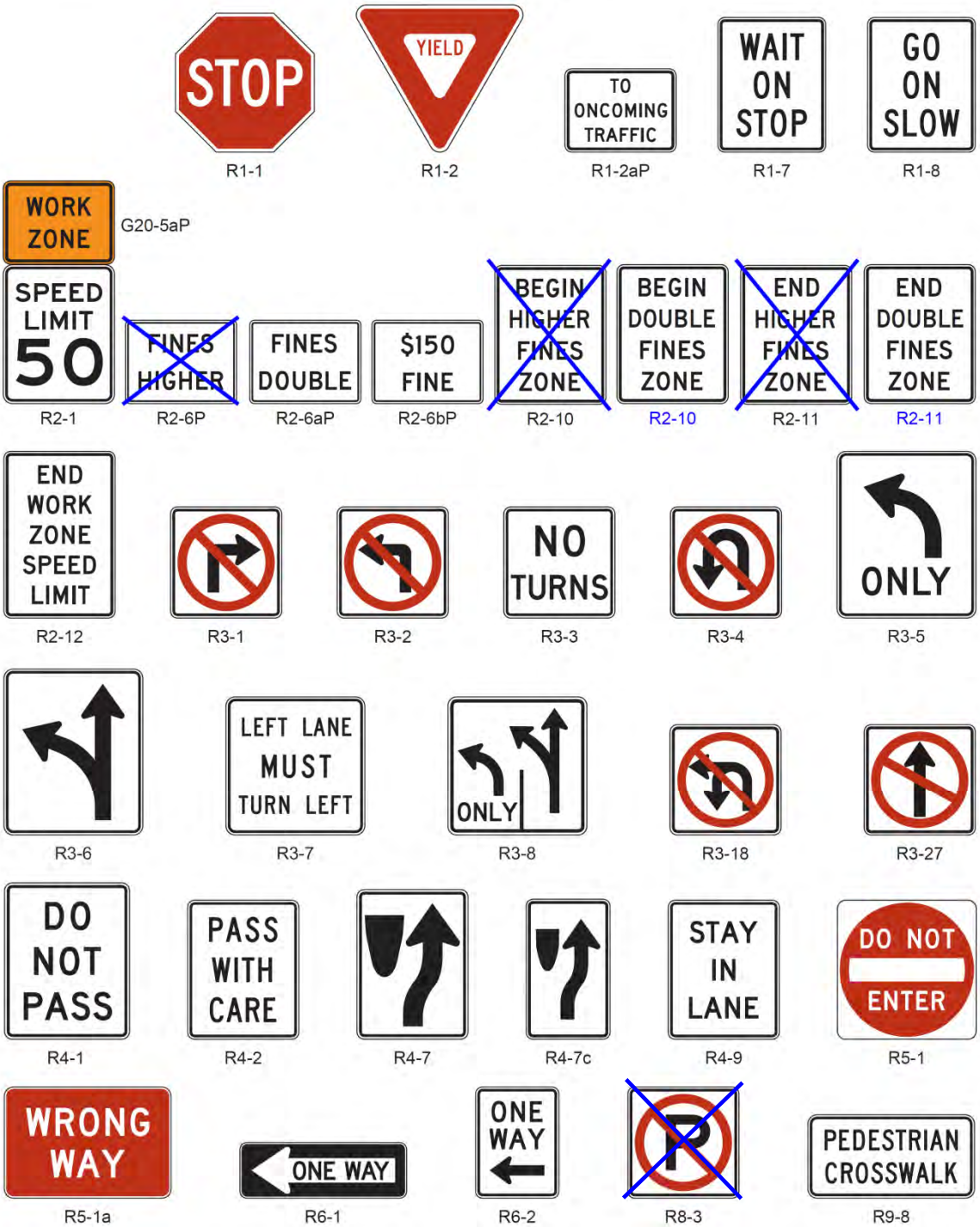


Figure 6F-3. Regulatory Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 2 of 2)

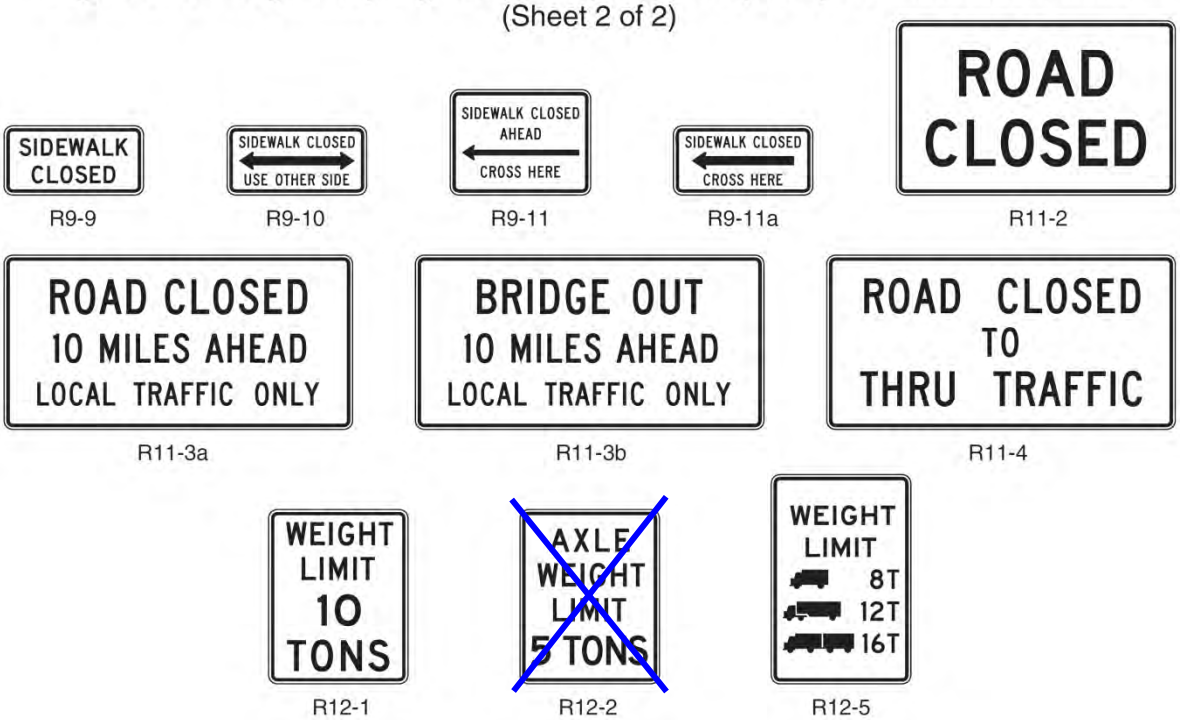


Figure 6F-4. Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 1 of 3)

Figure 6F-4. Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 2 of 3)

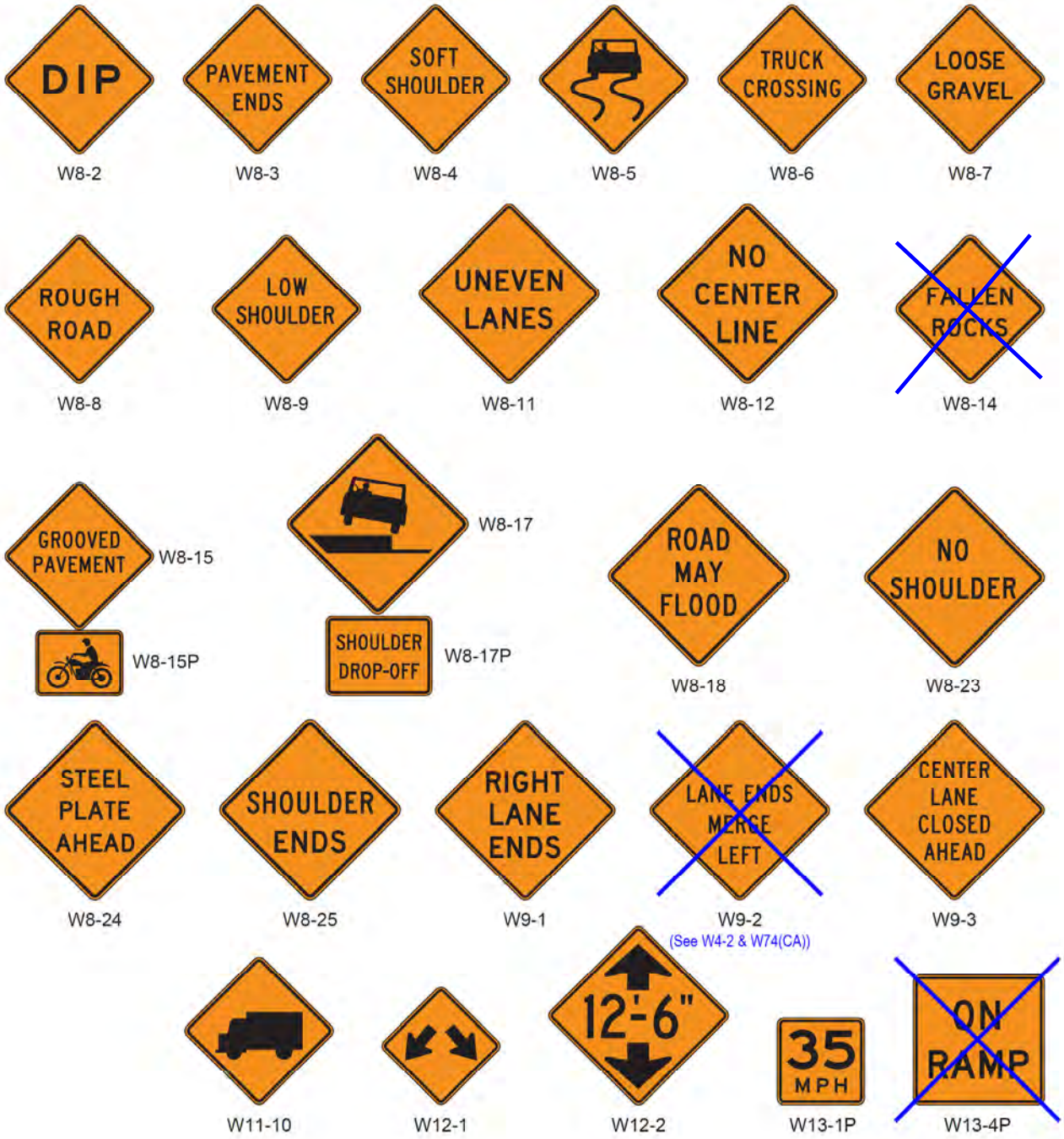
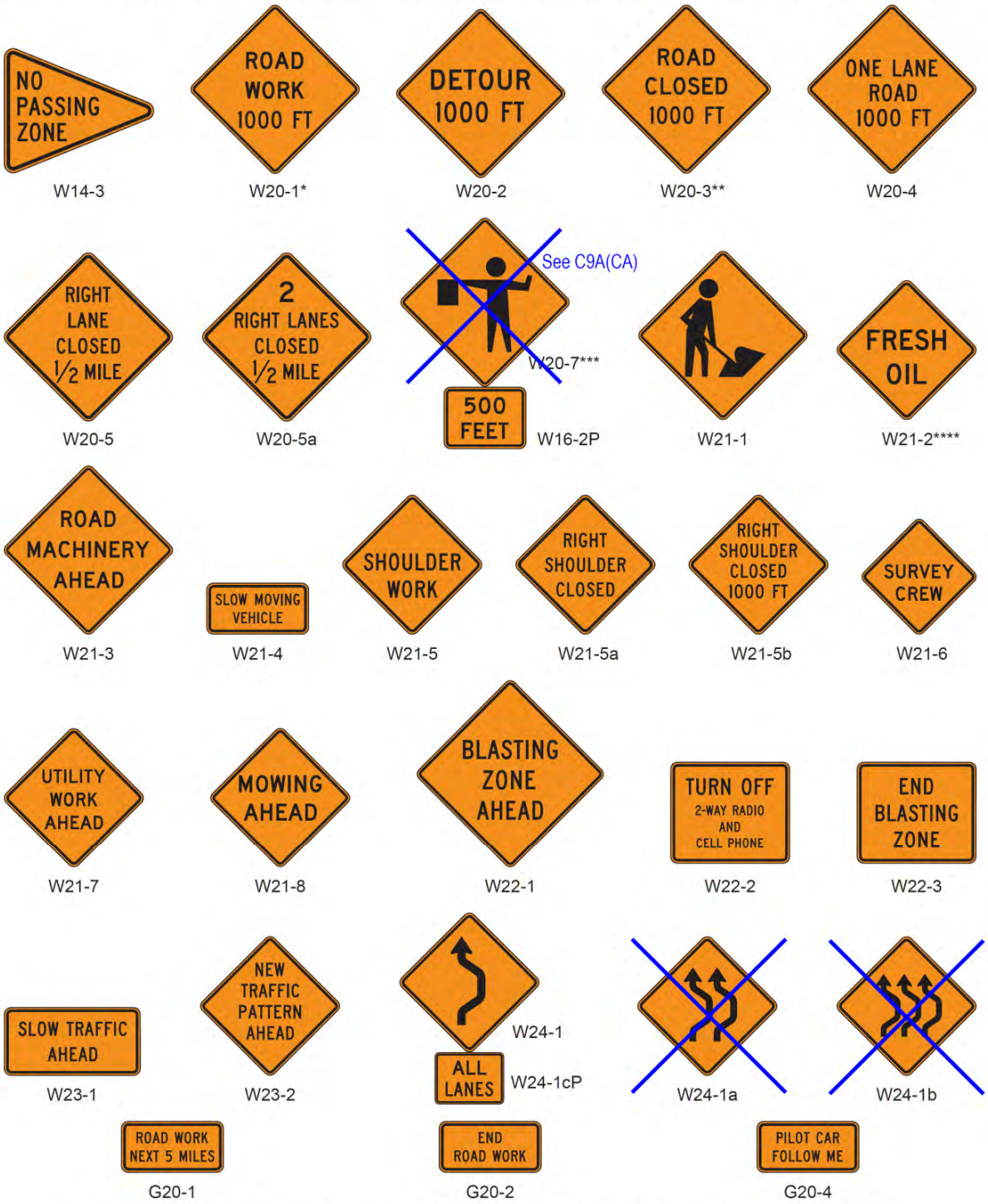


Figure 6F-4. Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones (Sheet 3 of 3)



* An optional STREET WORK word message sign is shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.
** An optional STREET CLOSED word message sign is shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.
*** An optional FLAGGER (W20-7a) word message sign is shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.
**** An optional FRESH TAR word message sign is show in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.

Figure 6F-5. Exit Open and Closed and Detour Signs

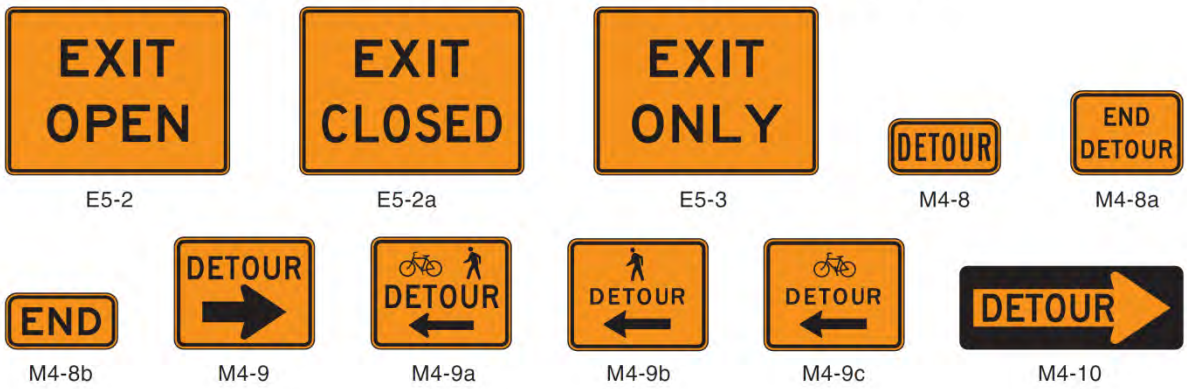


Figure 6F-6. Advance Warning Arrow Board Display Specifications

Operating Mode	Display (Type C arrow board illustrated)
1. At least one of the three following modes shall be provided:	(right arrow shown; left is similar)
Flashing Arrow	Merge Right
Sequential Arrow	Merge Right
Sequential Chevron	Merge Right
2. The following mode shall be provided: Flashing Double Arrow	Merge Right or Left
3. At least one of the following modes shall be provided: Flashing Caution or Alternating Diamond Caution	Flashing Caution or Flashing Caution or Alternating Diamond Caution

Arrow Board Type	Minimum Size	Minimum Legibility Distance	Minimum Number of Elements	Appropriate Use***
A	48 x 24 inches	1/2 mile	12	**Low-speed urban streets**
B	60 x 30 inches	3/4 mile	13	**Intermediate-speed facilities and maintenance or mobile operations on high-speed roadways**
II**	72 x 36 inches*	3/4 mile	13	**Use in place of Type B or C**
C or I	96 x 48 inches	1 mile	15	**High-speed, high volume roadways**
D	None*	1/2 mile	12	**On authorized vehicles**

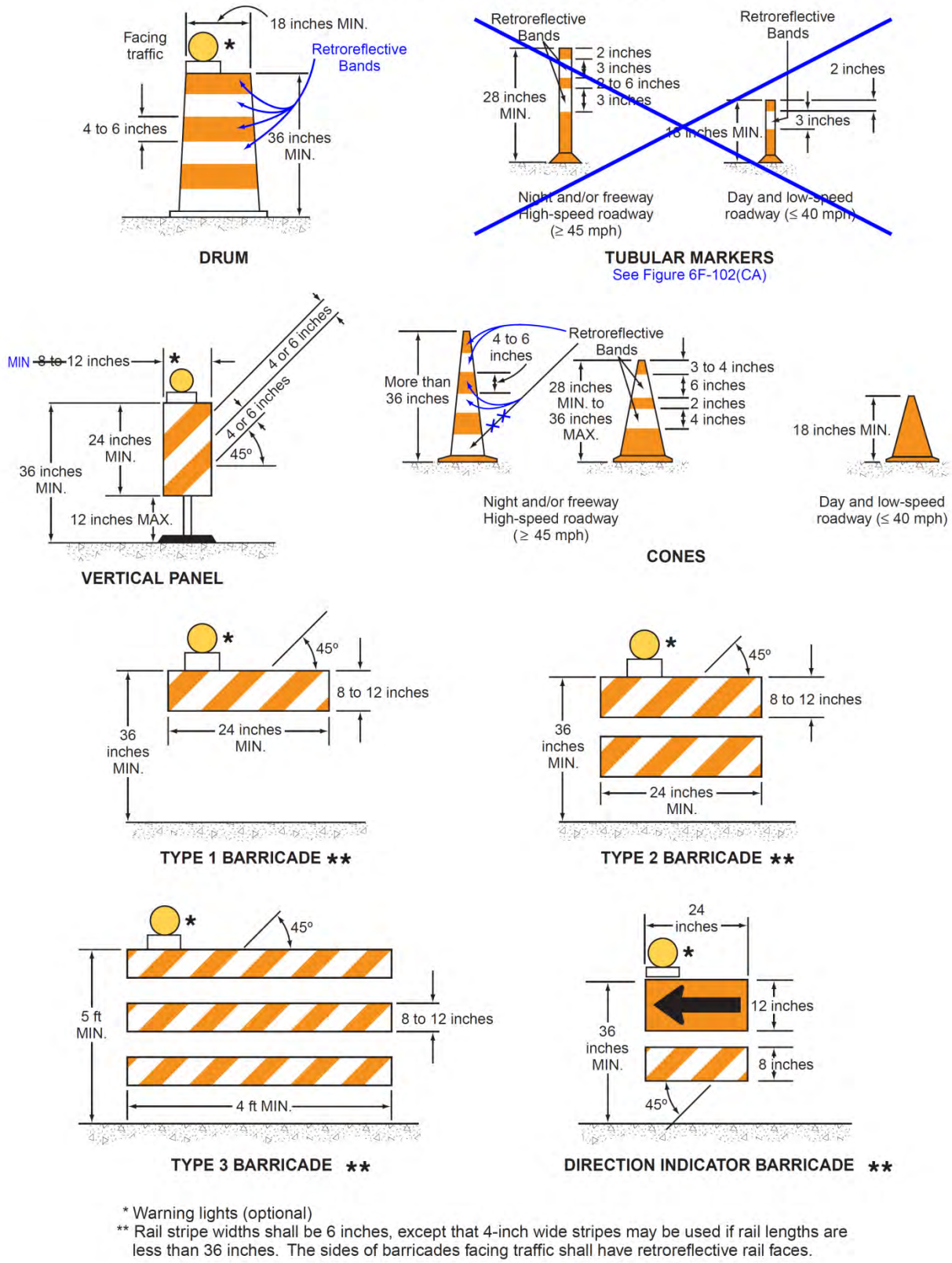
*Length of arrow equals 48 inches, width of arrowhead equals 24 inches

Standard:

** For State highways, the panel Type B shall be replaced by Type II.

*** See Section 6F.61 for more details.

Figure 6F-7. Channelizing Devices



* Warning lights (optional)
** Rail stripe widths shall be 6 inches, except that 4-inch wide stripes may be used if rail lengths are less than 36 inches. The sides of barricades facing traffic shall have retroreflective rail faces.

Figure 6F-101 (CA). California Temporary Traffic Control Signs (Sheet 1 of 2)

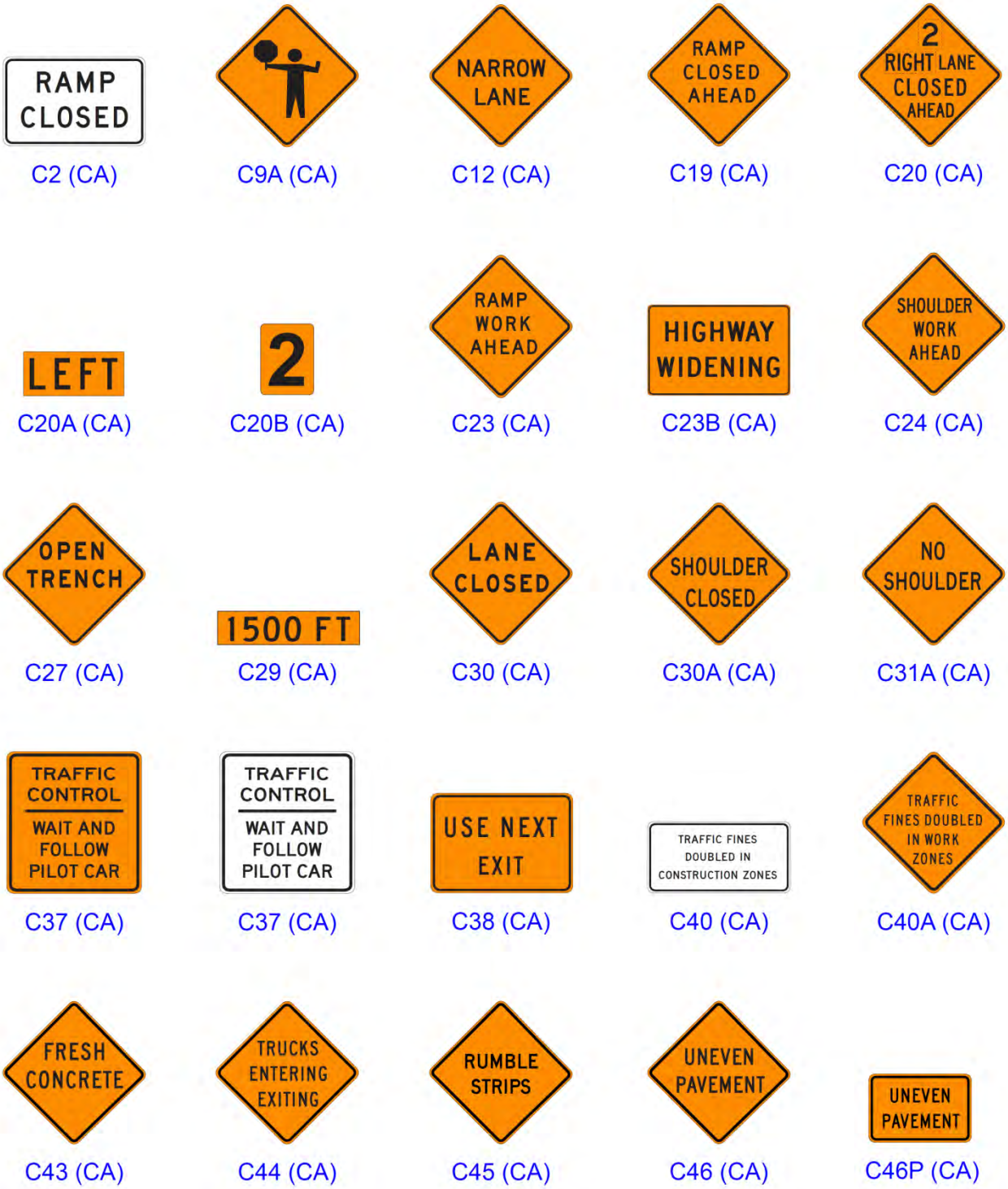


Figure 6F-101 (CA). California Temporary Traffic Control Signs (Sheet 2 of 2)

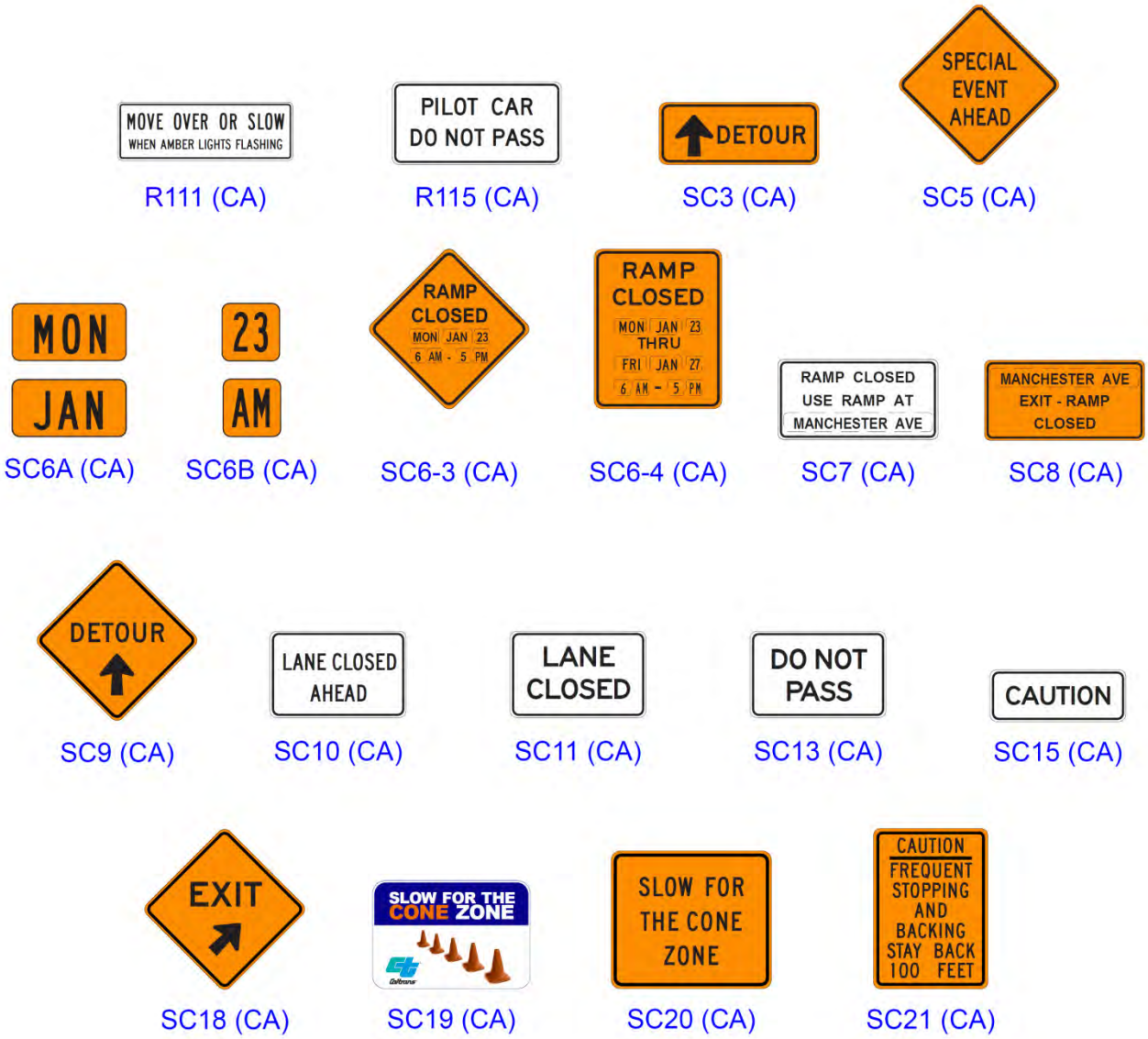


Figure 6F-102 (CA). Tubular Markers

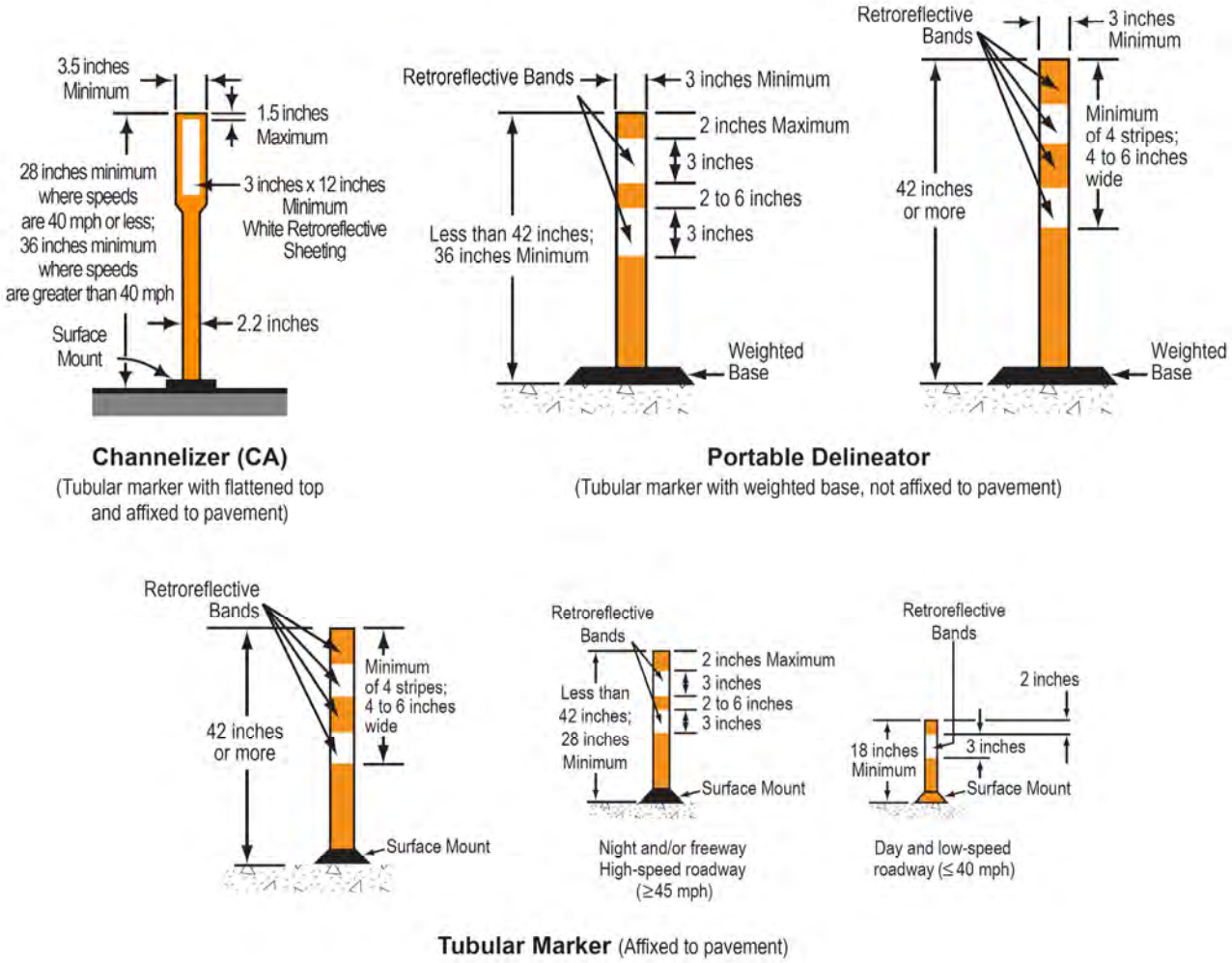
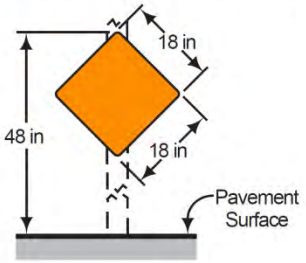
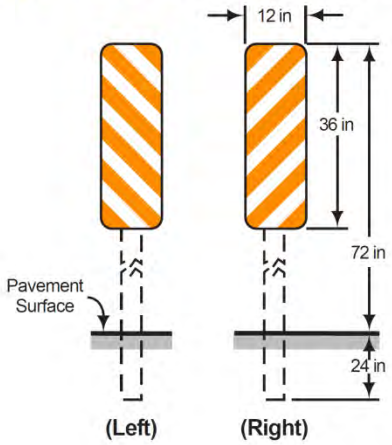


Figure 6F-103 (CA). Examples of Object Markers in Temporary Traffic Control Zones

Type N-3 (CA) Object Marker (OM1-3)



Type P (CA) Object Markers (OM-3L&R)



Type R (CA) Object Marker (OM-3C)

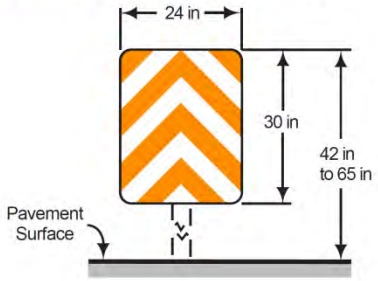


Figure 6F-104(CA) Typical Layout Using Channelizing Devices to Delineate a Portable Changeable Message Sign or Arrow Board on Shoulder

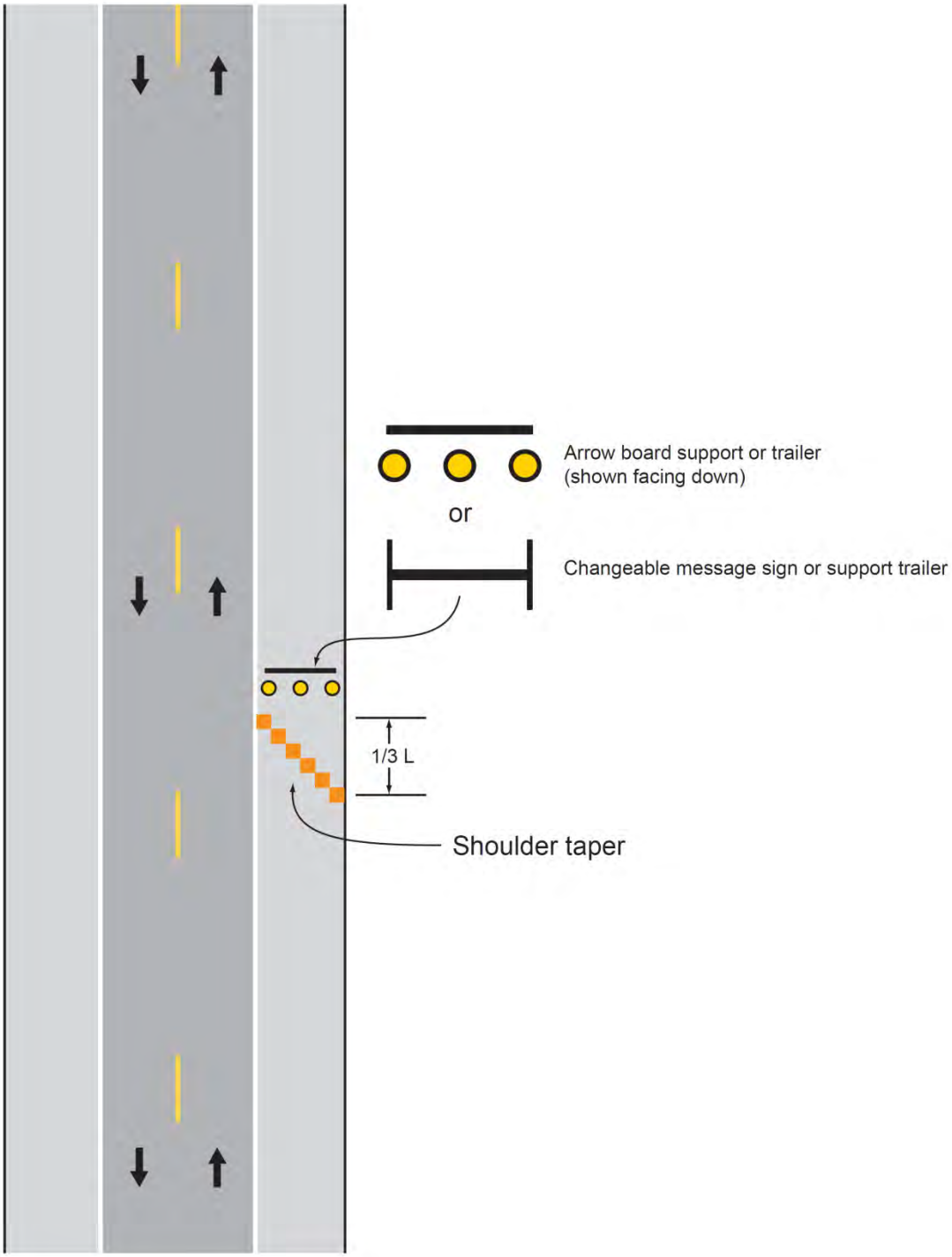


Table 6F-1. Temporary Traffic Control Zone Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 1 of 3)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road	Freeway or Expressway	Minimum	
Stop	R1-1	6F.06	30 x 30*	—	—	
Stop (on Stop/Slow Paddle)	R1-1	6E.03	18 x 18	—	—	
Yield	R1-2	6F.06	36 x 36 x 36*	—	30 x 30 x 30	
To Oncoming Traffic (plaque)	R1-2aP	6F.06	36 x 30	48 x 36	24 x 18	
Wait on Stop	R1-7	6E.05	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	
Go on Slow	R1-8	6E.05	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	
Speed Limit	R2-1	6F.12	24 x 30*	36 x 48	—	
~~Fines Higher (plaque)~~	~~R2-6P~~	~~6F.12~~	~~24 x 18~~	~~36 x 24~~		
Fines Double (plaque)	R2-6aP	6F.12	24 x 18	36 x 24	—	
$XX Fine (plaque)	R2-6bP	6F.12	24 x 18	36 x 24	—	
Begin Double ~~Higher~~ Fines Zone	R2-10	6F.12	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	
End Double ~~Higher~~ Fines Zone	R2-11	6F.12	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	
End Work Zone Speed Limit	R2-12	6F.12	24 x 36	36 x 54	—	
Movement Prohibition	R3-1,2,3,4,18,27	6F.06	24 x 24*	36 x 36	—	
Mandatory Movement (1 lane)	R3-5	6F.06	30 x 36	—	—	
Optional Movement (1 lane)	R3-6	6F.06	30 x 36	—	—	
Mandatory Movement (text)	R3-7	6F.06	30 x 30*	—	—	
Advance Intersection Lane Control	R3-8	6F.06	Varies x 30	—	—	
Do Not Pass	R4-1	6F.06	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	
Pass With Care	R4-2	6F.06	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	
Keep Right	R4-7	6F.06	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	
Narrow Keep Right	R4-7c	6F.06	18 x 30	—	—	
Stay in Lane	R4-9	6F.11	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	
Do Not Enter	R5-1	6F.06	30 x 30*	36 x 36	—	
Wrong Way	R5-1a	6F.06	36 x 24*	42 x 30	—	
One Way	R6-1	6F.06	36 x 12*	54 x 18	—	
One Way	R6-2	6F.06	24 x 30*	36 x 48	—	
~~No Parking (symbol)~~	~~R8-3~~	~~6F.06~~	~~24 x 24~~	~~30 x 30~~	—	
Pedestrian Crosswalk	R9-8	6F.13	36 x 18	—	—	
Sidewalk Closed	R9-9	6F.14	24 x 12	—	—	
Sidewalk Closed, Use Other Side	R9-10	6F.14	24 x 12	—	—	
Sidewalk Closed Ahead, Cross Here	R9-11	6F.14	24 x 18	—	—	
Sidewalk Closed, Cross Here	R9-11a	6F.14	24 x 12	—	—	
Road Closed	R11-2	6F.08	48 x 30	—	—	(Also see C2(CA) Sign Size)
Road Closed - Local Traffic Only	R11-3a,~~3b~~,4	6F.09	60 x 30	—	—	
Weight Limit	R12-1,~~2~~	6F.10	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	
Weight Limit (with symbols)	R12-5	6F.10	24 x 36	36 x 48	—	
Turn and Curve Signs	W1-1,2,3,4	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
~~Reverse Curve (2 or more lanes)~~	~~W1-4b,4c~~	~~6F.18~~	~~36 x 36~~	~~48 x 48~~	~~30 x 30~~	(See W1-4 Sign Size)
One-Direction Large Arrow	W1-6	6F.16	48 x 24	60 x 30	—	
Chevron	W1-8	6F.16	18 x 24	30 x 36	—	
Stop Ahead	W3-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Yield Ahead	W3-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Signal Ahead	W3-3	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Be Prepared to Stop	W3-4	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Reduced Speed Limit Ahead	W3-5	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	

Table 6F-1. Temporary Traffic Control Zone Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 2 of 3)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road	Freeway or Expressway	Minimum	
XX MPH Speed Zone Ahead	W3-5a	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Merging Traffic	W4-1,5	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	36 x 36	
Lane Ends	W4-2	6F.24	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Added Lane	W4-3,6	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
No Merge Area (plaque)	W4-5P	6F.16	18 x 24	24 x 30	—	
Road Narrows	W5-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Narrow Bridge	W5-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
One Lane Bridge	W5-3	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
~~Ramp Narrows~~	~~W5-4~~	~~6F.26~~	~~36 x 36~~	~~48 x 48~~	~~30 x 30~~	(See W5-1 or C12(CA) Sign Sizes)
Divided Highway	W6-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Divided Highway Ends	W6-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Two-Way Traffic	W6-3	6F.32	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Two-Way Traffic	W6-4	6F.76	12 x 18	12 x 18	—	
Hill (symbol)	W7-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Next XX Miles (plaque)	W7-3aP	6F.53	24 x 18	36 x 30	—	
Bump	W8-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Dip	W8-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Pavement Ends	W8-3	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Soft Shoulder	W8-4	6F.44	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Slippery When Wet	W8-5	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Truck Crossing	W8-6	6F.36	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Loose Gravel	W8-7	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Rough Road	W8-8	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Low Shoulder	W8-9	6F.44	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Uneven Lanes	W8-11	6F.45	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
No Center Line	W8-12	6F.47	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
~~Fallen Rocks~~	~~W8-14~~	~~6F.16~~	~~36 x 36~~	~~48 x 48~~	~~30 x 30~~	(See W50-1(CA) Sign)
Grooved Pavement	W8-15	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Motorcycle (plaque)	W8-15P	6F.54	24 x 18	30 x 24	—	
Shoulder Drop Off (symbol)	W8-17	6F.44	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Shoulder Drop-Off (plaque)	W8-17P	6F.44	24 x 18	30 x 24	—	
Road May Flood	W8-18	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24	
No Shoulder	W8-23	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Steel Plate Ahead	W8-24	6F.46	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Shoulder Ends	W8-25	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Lane Ends	W9-1~~,2~~	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Center Lane Closed Ahead	W9-3	6F.23	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Grade Crossing Advance Warning	W10-1	6F.16	36 dia.	—	—	
Truck	W11-10	6F.36	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Double Arrow	W12-1	6F.16	30 x 30	—	—	
Low Clearance	W12-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Advisory Speed (plaque)	W13-1P	6F.52	24 x 24	30 x 30	18 x 18	
~~On Ramp (plaque)~~	~~W13-4P~~	~~6F.25~~	~~36 x 36~~	~~36 x 36~~		
No Passing Zone (pennant)	W14-3	6F.16	48 x 48 x 36	64 x 64 x 48	40 x 40 x 30	
XX Feet (plaque)	W16-2P	6F.16	24 x 18	30 x 24	—	
Road Work (with distance)	W20-1	6F.18	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	(See C23(CA) for RAMP WORK AHEAD Sign)

Table 6F-1. Temporary Traffic Control Zone Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 3 of 3)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road	Freeway or Expressway	Minimum	
Detour (with distance)	W20-2	6F.19	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Road (Street) Closed (with distance)	W20-3	6F.20	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	(See C19(CA) for RAMP CLOSED Sign)
One Lane Road (with distance)	W20-4	6F.21	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Lane(s) Closed (with distance)	W20-5,5a	6F.22	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	(Also See C20(CA) Sign Size)
~~Flagger (symbol)~~	~~W20-7~~	~~6F.31~~	~~36 x 36~~	~~48 x 48~~	~~30 x 30~~	
Flagger	W20-7a	6F.31	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	(Also See C9A(CA) Sign Size)
Slow (on Stop/Slow Paddle)	W20-8	6E.03	18 x 18	—	—	
Workers	W21-1,1a	6F.33	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Fresh Oil (Tar)	W21-2	6F.34	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Road Machinery Ahead	W21-3	6F.35	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Slow Moving Vehicle	W21-4	6G.06	36 x 18	—	—	
Shoulder Work	W21-5	6F.37	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Shoulder Closed	W21-5a	6F.37	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Shoulder Closed (with distance)	W21-5b	6F.37	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Survey Crew	W21-6	6F.38	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Utility Work Ahead	W21-7	6F.39	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Mowing Ahead	W21-8	6G.06	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Blasting Zone Ahead	W22-1	6F.41	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Turn Off 2-Way Radio and Cell Phone	W22-2	6F.42	42 x 36	42 x 36	—	
End Blasting Zone	W22-3	6F.43	42 x 36	42 x 36	36 x 30	
Slow Traffic Ahead	W23-1	6F.27	54 x 30 ~~48 x 24~~	72 x 42 ~~48 x 24~~	48 x 24	
New Traffic Pattern Ahead	W23-2	6F.30	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
Double Reverse Curve (1 lane)	W24-1	6F.49	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30	
~~Double Reverse Curve (2 lanes)~~	~~W24-1a~~	~~6F.49~~	~~36 x 36~~	~~48 x 48~~	~~30 x 30~~	(See W24-1 Sign Size)
~~Double Reverse Curve (3 lanes)~~	~~W24-1b~~	~~6F.49~~	~~36 x 36~~	~~48 x 48~~	~~30 x 30~~	(See W24-1 Sign Size)
All Lanes	W24-1cP	6F.49	24 x ~~24~~ 18	30 x ~~30~~ 24	—	
Road Work (Construction) Next XX Miles	G20-1	6F.56	60 x 36 ~~36 x 18~~	90 x 48 ~~48 x 24~~	36 x 18	
End Road Work	G20-2	6F.57	36 x 18	48 x 24	—	
Pilot Car Follow Me	G20-4	6F.58	36 x 18	—	—	
Work Zone (plaque)	G20-5aP	6F.12	24 x 18	36 x 24	—	
Exit Open	E5-2	6F.28	48 x 36	48 x 36	—	
Exit Closed	E5-2a	6F.28	48 x 36	48 x 36	—	
Exit Only	E5-3	6F.29	48 x 36	48 x 36	—	
Detour	M4-8	6F.59	24 x 12	30 x 15	—	
End Detour	M4-8a	6F.59	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	
End	M4-8b	6F.59	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	
Detour	M4-9	6F.59	30 x 24	48 x 36	—	
Bike/Pedestrian Detour	M4-9a	6F.59	30 x 24	—	—	
Pedestrian Detour	M4-9b	6F.59	30 x 24	—	—	
Bike Detour	M4-9c	6F.59	30 x 24	—	—	
Detour	M4-10	6F.59	48 x 18	—	—	

* See Table 2B-1 for minimum size required for signs facing traffic on multi-lane conventional roads

Notes: 1. Larger signs may be used wherever necessary for greater legibility or emphasis
2. Dimensions are shown in inches and are shown as width x height

Table 6F-1(CA). California Temporary Traffic Control Zone Sign and Plaque Sizes

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road (Minimum)	Expressway	Freeway	Oversized
RAMP CLOSED	C2(CA)	6F.28	48 x 30	48 x 30	48 x 30	---
California Flagger Symbol	C9A(CA)	6F.31	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
NARROW LANE(S)	C12(CA)	6F.26, 6F.102(CA)	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
RAMP CLOSED AHEAD	C19(CA)	6F.28	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
RIGHT LANE CLOSED AHEAD	C20(CA)	6F.22	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	72 x 72
LEFT plaque	C20A(CA)	6F.22	16 x 7	19 x 8	19 x 8	33 x 10
Numeral plaque	C20B(CA)	6F.22	6 x 8	8 x 10	8 x 10	10 x 12
RAMP WORK AHEAD	C23(CA)	6F.18	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
ROAD (STREET) WORK Informational plaque	C23B(CA)	6F.18	Var x 18	Var x 24	Var x 24	---
SHOULDER WORK AHEAD	C24(CA)	6F.37	30 x 30	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
OPEN TRENCH	C27(CA)	6F.103(CA)	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
~~STOP Paddle (not assigned)~~	~~C28A(CA)~~	~~6E.03, 6E.07, 7D.03, 7D.05~~	~~18 x 18~~	~~18 x 18~~	~~---~~	~~24 x 24~~
~~SLOW Paddle (not assigned)~~	~~C28B(CA)~~	~~6E.03, 6E.07~~	~~18 x 18~~	~~18 x 18~~	~~---~~	~~24 x 24~~
XXXX FT	C29(CA)	6F.53	20 x 7	36 x 9	36 x 9	---
LANE CLOSED	C30(CA)	6F.22	30 x 30	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
SHOULDER CLOSED	C30A(CA)	6F.37	30 x 30	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
NO SHOULDER	C31A(CA)	6F.44, 6F.103(CA)	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
TRAFFIC CONTROL - WAIT AND FOLLOW PILOT CAR	C37(CA)	6F.58	36 x 42	36 x 42	---	---
USE NEXT EXIT	C38(CA)	6F.28	---	48 x 36	48 x 36	---
TRAFFIC FINES DOUBLED IN CONSTRUCTION ZONES	C40(CA)	6F.12	108 x 42	144 x 60	144 x 60	---
TRAFFIC FINES DOUBLED IN WORK ZONES	C40A(CA)	6F.12	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
FRESH CONCRETE	C43(CA)	6F.107(CA)	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
TRUCKS ENTERING EXITING	C44(CA)	6F.36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
RUMBLE STRIPS	C45(CA)	6F.87	36 x 36	48 x 48	---	---
UNEVEN PAVEMENT	C46(CA)	6F.45	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
UNEVEN PAVEMENT plaque	C46P(CA)	6F.45	30 x 18	36 x 24	36 x 24	---
MOVE OVER OR SLOW WHEN AMBER LIGHTS FLASHING	R111(CA)	6F.108(CA)	54 x 18	54 x 18	54 x 18	---
PILOT CAR DO NOT PASS	R115(CA)	6F.58	36 x 18	36 x 18	---	---
DETOUR with Arrow	SC3(CA)	6F.59	36 x 12	48 x 18	48 x 18	---
SPECIAL EVENT AHEAD	SC5(CA)	6F.18	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
RAMP CLOSED (Not more than one day)	SC6-3(CA)	6F.28	48 x 48	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
RAMP CLOSED (More than one day)	SC6-4(CA)	6F.28	48 x 60	48 x 60	48 x 60	---
Day/Month plaque	SC6A(CA)	6F.28	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	---
Time plaque	SC6B(CA)	6F.28	6 x 6	6 x 6	6 x 6	---
RAMP CLOSED, USE RAMP AT ___	SC7(CA)	6F.28	84 x 42	84 x 42	84 x 42	---
___ EXIT - RAMP CLOSED	SC8(CA)	6F.28	---	84 x 42	84 x 42	---
(FWY) DETOUR with Arrow	SC9(CA)	6F.59	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
LANE CLOSED AHEAD or ROAD WORK AHEAD	SC10(CA)	6F.104(CA)	48 x 30	66 x 36	66 x 36	---
LANE CLOSED	SC11(CA)	6F.104(CA)	42 x 30	54 x 42	54 x 42	---
DO NOT PASS	SC13(CA)	6F.104(CA)	42 x 30	54 x 42	54 x 42	---
CAUTION	SC15(CA)	6F.104(CA)	42 x 18	54 x 24	54 x 24	---
EXIT with Arrow	SC18(CA)	6F.28	---	48 x 48	48 x 48	---
Slow For The Cone Zone	SC19(CA)	6F.106(CA)	54 x 36	54 x 36	54 x 36	114 x 78
SLOW FOR THE CONE ZONE	SC20(CA)	6F.106(CA)	42 x 36	54 x 48	54 x 48	---
CAUTION FREQUENT STOPPING AND BACKING STAY BACK 100 FEET	SC21(CA)	6F.108(CA)	30 x 42	30 x 42	30 x 42	---
FLOODING AHEAD TURN AROUND DON'T DROWN	W86(CA)	6I.101(CA)	30 x 24	---	---	---

Table 6F-101(CA). Maximum Spacing of Channelizing Devices

Speed (mph)	Maximum Channelizing Devices Spacing		
	Taper* (feet)	Tangent (feet)	Conflict** (feet)
20	20	40	10
25	25	50	12
30	30	60	15
35	35	70	17
40	40	80	20
45	45	90	22
50	50	100	25
55	50	100	25
60	50	100	25
65	50	100	25
70	50	100	25
75	50	100	25

* Maximum channelizing device spacing for all speeds on one-lane/two-way tapers is 20 feet.
Maximum channelizing device spacing for all speeds on downstream tapers is 20 feet.
All other tapers are as shown.

** Use on intermediate and short-term projects for taper and tangent sections where there are no pavement markings or where there is a conflict between existing pavement markings and channelizing devices.

Table 6F-102(CA). Pavement Surface Tolerances*

Direction of Travel	Steps **	
	Bicycles / Motorcycles	4 wheeled motor vehicles
Parallel to travel	No more than 3/8" high	No more than 2" high
Perpendicular to travel	No more than 3/4" high	No more than 2" high

Notes:

* Criteria for displaying warning signs. If a step of more than 3" high exists in the pavement, do not open that portion of roadway to traffic.

** Step -- A ridge in the pavement, such as that which might exist between the pavement and a concrete gutter or manhole cover; or that might exist between two pavement blankets when the top level does not extend to the edge of the roadway.

CHAPTER 6G. TYPE OF TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE ACTIVITIES

Section 6G.01 Typical Applications

Support:

01 Each TTC zone is different. Many variables, such as location of work, highway type, geometrics, vertical and horizontal alignment, intersections, interchanges, road user volumes, road vehicle mix (buses, trucks, and cars), and road user speeds affect the needs of each zone. The goal of TTC in work zones is safety with minimum disruption to road users. The key factor in promoting TTC zone safety is proper judgment.

02 Typical applications (TAs) of TTC zones are organized according to duration, location, type of work, and highway type. Table 6H-1 is an index of these typical applications. These typical applications include the use of various TTC methods, but do not include a layout for every conceivable work situation.

03 Well-designed TTC plans for planned special events will likely be developed from a combination of treatments from several of the typical applications.

Guidance:

04 *For any planned special event that will have an impact on the traffic on any street or highway, a TTC plan should be developed in conjunction with and be approved by the agency or agencies that have jurisdiction over the affected roadways.*

05 *Typical applications should be altered, when necessary, to fit the conditions of a particular TTC zone.*

Option:

06 Other devices may be added to supplement the devices shown in the typical applications, while others may be deleted. The sign spacings and taper lengths may be increased to provide additional time or space for driver response.

Support:

07 Decisions regarding the selection of the most appropriate typical application to use as a guide for a specific TTC zone require an understanding of each situation. Although there are many ways of categorizing TTC zone applications, the four factors mentioned earlier (work duration, work location, work type, and highway type) are used to characterize the typical applications illustrated in Chapter 6H.

Section 6G.02 Work Duration

Support:

01 Work duration is a major factor in determining the number and types of devices used in TTC zones. The duration of a TTC zone is defined relative to the length of time a work operation occupies a spot location.

Standard:

02 **The five categories of work duration and their time at a location shall be:**

A. Long-term stationary is work that occupies a location more than 3 days.

B. Intermediate-term stationary is work that occupies a location more than one daylight period up to 3 days, or nighttime work lasting more than 1 hour.

C. Short-term stationary is daytime work that occupies a location for more than 1 hour within a single daylight period.

D. Short duration is work that occupies a location up to 1 hour.

E. Mobile is work that moves intermittently or continuously.

Support:

03 At long-term stationary TTC zones, there is ample time to install and realize benefits from the full range of TTC procedures and devices that are available for use. Generally, larger channelizing devices, temporary roadways, and temporary traffic barriers are used.

Standard:

04 **Since long-term operations extend into nighttime, retroreflective and/or illuminated devices shall be used in long-term stationary TTC zones.**

Guidance:

05 *Inappropriate markings in long-term stationary TTC zones should be removed and replaced with temporary markings.*

Support:

06 In intermediate-term stationary TTC zones, it might not be feasible or practical to use procedures or devices that would be desirable for long-term stationary TTC zones, such as altered pavement markings, temporary traffic barriers, and temporary roadways. The increased time to place and remove these devices in some cases could significantly lengthen the project, thus increasing exposure time.

Standard:

07 **Since intermediate-term operations extend into nighttime, retroreflective and/or illuminated devices shall be used in intermediate-term stationary TTC zones.**

Support:

08 Most maintenance and utility operations are short-term stationary work.

09 As compared to stationary operations, mobile and short-duration operations are activities that might involve different treatments. Devices having greater mobility might be necessary such as signs mounted on trucks. Devices that are larger, more imposing, or more visible can be used effectively and economically. The mobility of the TTC zone is important.

Guidance:

10 *Safety in short-duration or mobile operations should not be compromised by using fewer devices simply because the operation will frequently change its location.*

Option:

11 Appropriately colored or marked vehicles with high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights may be used in place of signs and channelizing devices for short-duration or mobile operations. These vehicles may be augmented with signs or arrow boards.

Support:

12 During short-duration work, it often takes longer to set up and remove the TTC zone than to perform the work. Workers face hazards in setting up and taking down the TTC zone. Also, since the work time is short, delays affecting road users are significantly increased when additional devices are installed and removed.

Option:

13 Considering these factors, simplified control procedures may be warranted for short-duration work. A reduction in the number of devices may be offset by the use of other more dominant devices such as high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on work vehicles.

Support:

14 Mobile operations often involve frequent short stops for activities such as litter cleanup, pothole patching, or utility operations, and are similar to short-duration operations.

Guidance:

15 *Warning signs and high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights should be used on the vehicles that are participating in the mobile work.*

Option:

16 Flags and/or channelizing devices may additionally be used and moved periodically to keep them near the mobile work area.

17 Flaggers may be used for mobile operations that often involve frequent short stops.

Support:

18 Mobile operations also include work activities where workers and equipment move along the road without stopping, usually at slow speeds. The advance warning area moves with the work area.

Guidance:

19 *When mobile operations are being performed, a shadow vehicle equipped with an arrow board or a sign should follow the work vehicle, especially when vehicular traffic speeds or volumes are high. Where feasible, warning signs should be placed along the roadway and moved periodically as work progresses.*

20 *Under high-volume conditions, consideration should be given to scheduling mobile operations work during off-peak hours.*

21 *If there are mobile operations on a high-speed travel lane of a multi-lane divided highway, arrow boards and/or Portable Changeable Message Signs should be used.*

Standard:

22 **Mobile operations shall have appropriate devices on the equipment (that is, high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, signs, or special lighting), or shall use a separate vehicle with appropriate warning devices.**

Option:

23 For mobile operations that move at speeds of less than 3 mph, mobile signs or stationary signing that is periodically retrieved and repositioned in the advance warning area may be used.

Section 6G.03 Location of Work

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

02 The choice of TTC needed for a TTC zone depends upon where the work is located. As a general rule, the closer the work is to road users (including bicyclists and pedestrians), the greater the number of TTC devices that are needed. Procedures are described later in this Chapter for establishing TTC zones in the following locations:

A. Outside the shoulder,
B. On the shoulder with no encroachment,
C. On the shoulder with minor encroachment,
D. Within the median, and
E. Within the traveled way.

Standard:

03 **When the work space is within the traveled way, except for short-duration and mobile operations, advance warning shall provide a general message that work is taking place and shall supply information about highway conditions. TTC devices shall indicate how vehicular traffic can move through the TTC zone.**

Section 6G.04 Modifications To Fulfill Special Needs

Support:

01 The typical applications in Chapter 6H illustrate commonly encountered situations in which TTC devices are employed.

Option:

02 Other devices may be added to supplement the devices provided in the typical applications, and device spacing may be adjusted to provide additional reaction time. When conditions are less complex than those depicted in the typical applications, fewer devices may be needed.

Guidance:

03 *When conditions are more complex, typical applications should be modified by giving particular attention to the provisions set forth in Chapter 6B and by incorporating appropriate devices and practices from the following list:*

A. Additional devices:

1. Signs
2. Arrow boards
3. More channelizing devices at closer spacing (see Section 6F.74 for information regarding detectable edging for pedestrians)
4. Temporary raised pavement markers
5. High-level warning devices
6. Portable changeable message signs
7. Temporary traffic control signals (including pedestrian signals and accessible pedestrian signals)
8. Temporary traffic barriers
9. Crash cushions
10. Screens
11. Rumble strips
12. More delineation

B. Upgrading of devices:
1. A full complement of standard pavement markings
2. Brighter and/or wider pavement markings
3. Larger and/or brighter signs
4. Channelizing devices with greater conspicuity
5. Temporary traffic barriers in place of channelizing devices
C. Improved geometrics at detours or crossovers
D. Increased distances:
1. Longer advance warning area
2. Longer tapers
E. Lighting:
1. Temporary roadway lighting
2. Steady-burn lights used with channelizing devices
3. Flashing lights for isolated hazards
4. Illuminated signs
5. Floodlights
F. Pedestrian routes and temporary facilities
G. Bicycle diversions and temporary facilities

Section 6G.05 Work Affecting Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities

Support:

01 It is not uncommon, particularly in urban areas, that road work and the associated TTC will affect existing pedestrian or bicycle facilities. It is essential that the needs of all road users, including pedestrians with disabilities, are considered in TTC zones.

02 In addition to specific provisions identified in Sections 6G.06 through 6G.14, there are a number of provisions that might be applicable for all of the types of activities identified in this Chapter.

Guidance:

03 *Where pedestrian or bicycle usage is high, the typical applications should be modified by giving particular attention to the provisions set forth in Chapter 6D, this Chapter, Section 6F.74, and in other Sections of Part 6 related to accessibility and detectability provisions in TTC zones.*

04 *Pedestrians should be separated from the worksite by appropriate devices that maintain the accessibility and detectability for pedestrians with disabilities.*

05 *Bicyclists and pedestrians should not be exposed to unprotected excavations, open utility access, overhanging equipment, or other such conditions.*

06 *Except for short duration and mobile operations, when a highway shoulder is occupied, a SHOULDER WORK (W21-5) sign, a SHOULDER CLOSED C30A(CA) sign, or other similar signs should be placed in advance of the activity area. When work is performed on a paved shoulder 8 feet or more in width, channelizing devices should be placed on a taper having a length that conforms to the requirements of a shoulder taper. Signs should be placed such that they do not narrow any existing pedestrian passages to less than 48 inches.*

06a *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02), information and devices contained in Figures 6H-101(CA) through 6H-104(CA), as appropriate per situation encountered, should be used in order to replicate existing conditions for the needs and control of bicyclists through a TTC zone.*

06b *Except for short durations and mobile operations (see Section 6G.02), when a highway shoulder is occupied and bicyclists would be sharing a lane with vehicular traffic, as a result of the TTC zone, a combination of Bicycle crossing (W11-1) and SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be placed in advance of the activity area. When work is performed on a paved shoulder 8 feet or more in width, channelizing devices should be placed on a taper having a length that conforms to the requirements of a shoulder taper. Signs should be placed such that they do not block the bicyclist's path of travel and they do not narrow any existing pedestrian passages to less than 48 inches.*

07 *Pedestrian detours should be avoided since pedestrians rarely observe them and the cost of providing accessibility and detectability might outweigh the cost of maintaining a continuous route. Whenever possible,*

work should be done in a manner that does not create a need to detour pedestrians from existing routes or crossings.

Standard:

08 **Where pedestrian routes are closed, alternate pedestrian routes shall be provided.**

09 **When existing pedestrian facilities are disrupted, closed, or relocated in a TTC zone, the temporary facilities shall be detectable and shall include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility.**

Option:

10 If establishing or maintaining an alternate pedestrian route is not feasible during the project, an alternate means of providing for pedestrians may be used, such as adding free bus service around the project or assigning a person the responsibility to assist pedestrians with disabilities through the project limits. See Section 6D.01 for details.

Section 6G.06 Work Outside of the Shoulder

Support:

01 When work is being performed off the roadway (beyond the shoulders, but within the right-of-way), little or no TTC might be needed. TTC generally is not needed where work is confined to an area 15 feet or more from the edge of the traveled way. However, TTC is appropriate where distracting situations exist, such as vehicles parked on the shoulder, vehicles accessing the worksite via the highway, and equipment traveling on or crossing the roadway to perform the work operations (for example, mowing). For work beyond the shoulder, see Figure 6H-1.

Guidance:

02 *Where the situations described in Paragraph 1 exist, a single warning sign, such as ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1) or Workers (W21-1) sign, should be used. If the equipment travels on the roadway, the equipment should be equipped with appropriate flags, high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, and/or a SLOW MOVING VEHICLE (W21-4) sign.*

Option:

03 If work vehicles are on the shoulder, a SHOULDER WORK (W21-5) sign may be used. For mowing operations, the sign MOWING AHEAD (W21-8) may be used.

04 Where the activity is spread out over a distance of more than 2 miles, the SHOULDER WORK (W21-5) sign may be repeated every 1 mile.

05 A supplementary plaque with the message NEXT XX MILES (W7-3aP) may be used.

Guidance:

06 *A general warning sign like ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD (W21-3) should be used if workers and equipment must occasionally move onto the shoulder.*

Section 6G.07 Work on the Shoulder with No Encroachment

Support:

01 The provisions of this Section apply to short-term through long-term stationary operations.

Standard:

02 **When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, at least one advance warning sign shall be used. In addition, channelizing devices shall be used to close the shoulder in advance to delineate the beginning of the work space and direct motor vehicle traffic to remain within the traveled way.**

Guidance:

03 *When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed on freeways and expressways, road users should be warned about potential disabled vehicles that cannot get off the traveled way. An initial general warning sign, such as ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1), should be used, followed by a RIGHT or LEFT SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) sign. Where the downstream end of the shoulder closure extends beyond the distance that can be perceived by road users, a supplementary plaque bearing the message NEXT XX FEET (W16-4P) or MILES (W7-3aP) should be placed below the SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) sign. On multi-lane, divided highways, signs advising of shoulder work or the condition of the shoulder should be placed only on the side of the affected shoulder.*

04 *When an improved shoulder is closed on a high-speed roadway, it should be treated as a closure of a portion of the road system because road users expect to be able to use it in emergencies. Road users should be given ample advance warning that shoulders are closed for use as refuge areas throughout a specified length of the approaching TTC zone. The sign(s) should read SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) with distances indicated. The work space on the shoulder should be closed off by a taper or channelizing devices with a length of 1/3 L using the formulas in Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4.*

05 *When the shoulder is not occupied but work has adversely affected its condition, the LOW SHOULDER (W8-9) or SOFT SHOULDER (W8-4) sign should be used, as appropriate.*

06 *Where the condition extends over a distance in excess of 1 mile, the sign should be repeated at 1-mile intervals.*

Option:

07 In addition, a supplementary plaque bearing the message NEXT XX MILES (W7-3aP) may be used. Temporary traffic barriers may be needed to inhibit encroachment of errant vehicles into the work space and to protect workers.

Standard:

08 **When used for shoulder work, arrow boards shall operate only in the caution mode.**

Support:

09 A typical application for stationary work operations on shoulders is shown in Figure 6H-3. Short duration or mobile work on shoulders is shown in Figure ~~6H-5~~ 6H-5(CA).

Section 6G.08 Work on the Shoulder with Minor Encroachment

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

Guidance:

02 *When work takes up part of a lane, vehicular traffic volumes, vehicle mix (buses, trucks, cars, and bicycles), speed, and capacity should be analyzed to determine whether the affected lane should be closed. Unless the lane encroachment permits a remaining lane width of 10 feet, the lane should be closed.*

03 *Truck off-tracking should be considered when determining whether the minimum lane width of 10 feet is adequate.*

Option:

04 Except on State highways, a ~~A~~ lane width of 9 feet may be used for short-term stationary work on low-volume, low-speed roadways when vehicular traffic does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles.

Support:

05 Figure 6H-6 illustrates a method for handling vehicular traffic where the stationary or short duration work space encroaches slightly into the traveled way.

Section 6G.09 Work Within the Median

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

Guidance:

02 *If work in the median of a divided highway is within 15 feet from the edge of the traveled way for either direction of travel, TTC should be used through the use of advance warning signs and channelizing devices.*

Section 6G.10 Work Within the Traveled Way of a Two-Lane Highway

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

02 Detour signs are used to direct road users onto another roadway. At diversions, road users are directed onto a temporary roadway or alignment placed within or adjacent to the right-of-way. Typical applications for detouring

or diverting road users on two-lane highways are shown in Figures 6H-7, 6H-8, and 6H-9. Figure 6H-7 illustrates the controls around an area where a section of roadway has been closed and a diversion has been constructed. Channelizing devices and pavement markings are used to indicate the transition to the temporary roadway.

Guidance:

03 *When a detour is long, Detour (M4-8, M4-9) signs should be installed to remind and reassure road users periodically that they are still successfully following the detour.*

04 *When an entire roadway is closed, as illustrated in Figure 6H-8, a detour should be provided and road users should be warned in advance of the closure, which in this example is a closure 10 miles from the intersection. If local road users are allowed to use the roadway up to the closure, the ROAD CLOSED AHEAD, LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY (R11-3a) sign should be used. The portion of the road open to local road users should have adequate signing, marking, and delineation.*

05 *Detours should be signed so that road users will be able to traverse the entire detour route and back to the original roadway as shown in Figure 6H-9.*

Support:

06 Techniques for controlling vehicular traffic under one-lane, two-way conditions are described in Section 6C.10.

Option:

07 Flaggers may be used as shown in Figure ~~6H-10~~ 6H-10(CA) and 6H-10A(CA).

08 STOP/YIELD sign control may be used on roads with low traffic volumes as shown in Figure 6H-11.

09 A temporary traffic control signal may be used as shown in Figure 6H-12.

Support:

10 Refer to CVC 21363 for detour signs.

Section 6G.11 Work Within the Traveled Way of an Urban Street

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

02 In urban TTC zones, decisions are needed on how to control vehicular traffic, such as how many lanes are required, whether any turns need to be prohibited at intersections, and how to maintain access to business, industrial, and residential areas.

03 Pedestrian traffic needs separate attention. Chapter 6D contains information regarding pedestrian movements near TTC zones.

Standard:

04 **If the TTC zone affects the movement of bicyclists, adequate access to the roadway or shared-use paths shall be provided (see Part 9).**

05 **Where transit stops are affected or relocated because of work activity, both pedestrian and vehicular access to the affected or relocated transit stops shall be provided.**

Guidance:

06 *If a designated bicycle route is closed because of the work being done, a signed alternate route should be provided. Bicyclists should not be directed onto the path used by pedestrians.*

07 *Worksites within the intersection should be protected against inadvertent pedestrian incursion by providing detectable channelizing devices.*

Support:

08 Utility work takes place both within and outside the roadway to construct and maintain services such as power, gas, light, water, or telecommunications. Operations often involve intersections, since that is where many of the network junctions occur. The work force is usually small, only a few vehicles are involved, and the number and types of TTC devices placed in the TTC zone is usually minimal.

Standard:

09 **All TTC devices shall be retroreflective or illuminated if utility work is performed during nighttime hours.**

Guidance:

10 *As discussed under short-duration projects, however, the reduced number of devices in utility work zones should be offset by the use of high-visibility devices, such as high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on work vehicles or high-level warning devices.*

Support:

11 Figures 6H-6, ~~6H-10~~ 6H-10(CA), 6H-10A(CA), 6H-15, 6H-18, 6H-21, 6H-22, 6H-22A(CA), 6H-22B(CA), 6H-23, 6H-26, and 6H-33 are examples of typical applications for utility operations. Other typical applications might apply as well.

Section 6G.12 Work Within the Traveled Way of a Multi-Lane, Non-Access Controlled Highway

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

02 Work on multi-lane (two or more lanes of moving motor vehicle traffic in one direction) highways is divided into right-lane closures, left-lane closures, interior-lane closures, multiple-lane closures, and closures on five-lane roadways.

Standard:

03 **When a lane is closed on a multi-lane road for other than a mobile operation, a transition area containing a merging taper shall be used.**

Guidance:

04 *When justified by an engineering study, temporary traffic barriers (see Section 6F.70) should be used to prevent incursions of errant vehicles into hazardous areas or work space.*

Support:

05 Figure 6H-34 illustrates a lane closure in which temporary traffic barriers are used.

Option:

06 When the right lane is closed, TTC similar to that shown in Figure 6H-33 may be used for undivided or divided four-lane roads.

Guidance:

07 *If morning and evening peak hour vehicular traffic volumes in the two directions are uneven and the greater volume is on the side where the work is being done in the right-hand lane, consideration should be given to closing the inside lane for opposing vehicular traffic and making the lane available to the side with heavier vehicular traffic, as shown in Figure* 6H-31.

08 *If the larger vehicular traffic volume changes to the opposite direction at a different time of the day, the TTC should be changed to allow two lanes for opposing vehicular traffic by moving the devices from the opposing lane to the center line. When it is necessary to create a temporary center line that is not consistent with the pavement markings, channelizing devices should be used and closely spaced.*

Option:

09 When closing a left lane on a multi-lane undivided road, as vehicular traffic flow permits, the two interior lanes may be closed, as shown in Figure 6H-30, to provide drivers and workers additional lateral clearance and to provide access to the work space.

Standard:

10 **When only the left lane is closed on undivided roads, channelizing devices shall be placed along the center line as well as along the adjacent lane.**

Guidance:

11 *When an interior lane is closed, an adjacent lane should also be considered for closure to provide additional space for vehicles and materials and to facilitate the movement of equipment within the work space.*

12 *When multiple lanes in one direction are closed, a capacity analysis should be made to determine the number of lanes needed to accommodate motor vehicle traffic needs. Vehicular traffic should be moved over one lane at a time. As shown in Figure 6H-37, the tapers should be separated by a distance of 2L, with L being determined by the formulas in Tables 6C-3, 6C-3(CA) and 6C-4.*

Option:

13 If operating speeds are 40 mph or less and the space approaching the work area does not permit moving traffic over one lane at a time, a single continuous taper may be used.

Standard:

14 **When a directional roadway is closed, inapplicable WRONG WAY signs and markings, and other existing traffic control devices at intersections within the temporary two-lane, two-way operations section shall be covered, removed, or obliterated.**

Option:

15 When half the road is closed on an undivided highway, both directions of vehicular traffic may be accommodated as shown in Figure ~~6H-32~~ 6H-32(CA). When both interior lanes are closed, temporary traffic controls may be used as provided in Figure 6H-30. When a roadway must be closed on a divided highway, a median crossover may be used (see Section 6G.16).

Support:

16 TTC for lane closures on five-lane roads is similar to other multi-lane undivided roads. Figure ~~6H-32~~ 6H-32(CA) can be adapted for use on five-lane roads. Figure 6H-35 can be used on a five-lane road for short duration and mobile operations.

Section 6G.13 Work Within the Traveled Way at an Intersection

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

02 The typical applications for intersections are classified according to the location of the work space with respect to the intersection area (as defined by the extension of the curb or edge lines). The three classifications are near side, far side, and in-the-intersection. Work spaces often extend into more than one portion of the intersection. For example, work in one quadrant often creates a near-side work space on one street and a far-side work space on the cross street. In such instances, an appropriate TTC plan is obtained by combining features shown in two or more of the intersection and pedestrian typical applications.

03 TTC zones in the vicinity of intersections might block movements and interfere with normal road user flows. Such conflicts frequently occur at more complex signalized intersections having such features as traffic signal heads over particular lanes, lanes allocated to specific movements, multiple signal phases, signal detectors for actuated control, and accessible pedestrian signals and detectors.

Guidance:

04 *The effect of the work upon signal operation should be considered, and temporary corrective actions should be taken, if necessary, such as revising signal phasing and/or timing to provide adequate capacity, maintaining or adjusting signal detectors, and relocating signal heads to provide adequate visibility as described in Part 4.*

Standard:

05 **When work will occur near an intersection where operational, capacity, or pedestrian accessibility problems are anticipated, the highway agency having jurisdiction shall be contacted.**

Guidance:

06 *For work at an intersection, advance warning signs, devices, and markings should be used on all cross streets, as appropriate. The typical applications depict urban intersections on arterial streets. Where the posted speed limit, the off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to the work starting, or the anticipated speed exceeds 40 mph, additional warning signs should be used in the advance warning area.*

07 *Pedestrian crossings near TTC sites should be separated from the worksite by appropriate barriers that maintain the accessibility and detectability for pedestrians with disabilities.*

Support:

08 Near-side work spaces, as depicted in Figure 6H-21, are simply handled as a midblock lane closure. A problem that might occur with near-side lane closure is a reduction in capacity, which during certain hours of operation could result in congestion and backups.

Option:

09 When near-side work spaces are used, an exclusive turn lane may be used for through vehicular traffic.

10 Where space is restricted in advance of near-side work spaces, as with short block spacings, two warning signs may be used in the advance warning area, and a third action-type warning or a regulatory sign (such as Keep Left) may be placed within the transition area.

Support:

11 Far-side work spaces, as depicted in Figures 6H-22 through 6H-25, involve additional treatment because road users typically enter the activity area by straight-through and left- or right-turning movements.

Guidance:

12 *When a lane through an intersection must be closed on the far side, it should also be closed on the near-side approach to preclude merging movements within the intersection.*

Option:

13 If there are a significant number of vehicles turning from a near-side lane that is closed on the far side, the near-side lane may be converted to an exclusive turn lane.

Support:

14 Figures 6H-26 and 6H-27 provide guidance on applicable procedures for work performed within the intersection.

Option:

15 If the work is within the intersection, any of the following strategies may be used:

A. A small work space so that road users can move around it, as shown in Figure 6H-26;

B. Flaggers or uniformed law enforcement officers to direct road users, as shown in Figure 6H-27;

C. Work in stages so the work space is kept to a minimum; and

D. Road closures or upstream diversions to reduce road user volumes.

Guidance:

16 *Depending on road user conditions, a flagger(s) and/or a uniformed law enforcement officer(s) should be used to control road users.*

Section 6G.14 Work Within the Traveled Way of a Freeway or Expressway

Support:

01 Problems of TTC might occur under the special conditions encountered where vehicular traffic must be moved through or around TTC zones on high-speed, high-volume roadways. Although the general principles outlined in the previous Sections of this Manual are applicable to all types of highways, high-speed, access-controlled highways need special attention in order to accommodate vehicular traffic while also protecting road users and workers. The road user volumes, road vehicle mix (buses, trucks, cars, and bicycles, if permitted), and speed of vehicles on these facilities require that careful TTC procedures be implemented, for example, to induce critical merging maneuvers well in advance of work spaces and in a manner that creates minimum turbulence and delay in the vehicular traffic stream. These situations often require more conspicuous devices than specified for normal rural highway or urban street use. However, the same important basic considerations of uniformity and standardization of general principles apply for all roadways.

02 Work under high-speed, high-volume vehicular traffic on a controlled access highway is complicated by the roadway design and operational features. The presence of a median that establishes separate roadways for directional vehicular traffic flow might prohibit the closing of one of the roadways or the diverting of vehicular traffic to the other roadway. Lack of access to and from adjacent roadways prohibits rerouting of vehicular traffic away from the work space in many cases. Other conditions exist where work must be limited to night hours, thereby necessitating increased use of warning lights, illumination of work spaces, and advance warning systems.

03 TTC for a typical lane closure on a divided highway is shown in Figure 6H-33. Temporary traffic controls for short duration and mobile operations on freeways are shown in Figure 6H-35. A typical application for shifting vehicular traffic lanes around a work space is shown in Figure ~~6H-36~~ 6H-36(CA). TTC for multiple ~~and interior~~ lane closures on a freeway is shown in Figures 6H-37 and ~~6H-38~~ Caltrans' Standard Plan T10, T10A. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

~~*Guidance:*~~

~~04 *The method for closing an interior lane when the open lanes have the capacity to carry vehicular traffic should be as shown in Figure 6H-37. When the capacity of the other lanes is needed, the method shown in Figure 6H-38 should be used.*~~

Support:

05 The temporary traffic controls for short duration and mobile operations on State highways are shown in Caltrans' Standard Plans T15, T16 and T17.

06 A typical layout of closing lanes to direct traffic around a workspace is shown in Caltrans' Standard Plans T10 through T14.

07 See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6G.15 Two-Lane, Two-Way Traffic on One Roadway of a Normally Divided Highway

Support:

01 Two-lane, two-way operation on one roadway of a normally divided highway is a typical procedure that requires special consideration in the planning, design, and work phases, because unique operational problems (for example, increasing the risk of head-on crashes) can arise with the two-lane, two-way operation.

Standard:

02 **When two-lane, two-way traffic control must be maintained on one roadway of a normally divided highway, opposing vehicular traffic shall be separated with either temporary traffic barriers (concrete safety-shape or approved alternate), channelizing devices, or a temporary raised island throughout the length of the two-way operation. The use of markings and complementary signing, by themselves, shall not be used.**

Support:

03 Figure 6H-39 shows the procedure for two-lane, two-way operation. Treatments for entrance and exit ramps within the two-way roadway segment of this type of work are shown in Figures 6H-40 and 6H-41.

Support:

04 A temporary traffic control zone in the entrance and exit ramps may be handled as shown in Caltrans' Standard Plans T10 and T14. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6G.16 Crossovers

Guidance:

01 *The following are considered good guiding principles for the design of crossovers:*

A. Tapers for lane drops should be separated from the crossovers, as shown in Figure 6H-39.

B. Crossovers should be designed for speeds no lower than 10 mph below the posted speed, the off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to the work starting, or the anticipated operating speed of the roadway, unless unusual site conditions require that a lower design speed be used.

C. A good array of channelizing devices, delineators, and full-length, properly placed pavement markings should be used to provide drivers with a clearly defined travel path.

D. The design of the crossover should accommodate all vehicular traffic, including trucks and buses.

Support:

02 Temporary traffic barriers and the excessive use of TTC devices cannot compensate for poor geometric and roadway cross-section design of crossovers.

Section 6G.17 Interchanges

Guidance:

01 *Access to interchange ramps on limited-access highways should be maintained even if the work space is in the lane adjacent to the ramps. Access to exit ramps should be clearly marked and delineated with channelizing devices. For long-term projects, conflicting pavement markings should be removed and new ones placed. Early coordination with officials having jurisdiction over the affected cross streets and providing emergency services should occur before ramp closings.*

Option:

02 If access is not possible, ramps may be closed by using signs and Type 3 Barricades. As the work space changes, the access area may be changed, as shown in Figure 6H-42. A TTC zone in the exit ramp may be handled as shown in Figure 6H-43.

03 When a work space interferes with an entrance ramp, a lane may need to be closed on the freeway (see Figure 6H-44). A TTC zone in the entrance ramp may require shifting ramp vehicular traffic (see Figure 6H-44).

Option:

04 A temporary traffic control zone in the entrance and exit ramps may be handled as shown in Caltrans' Standard Plans T10 and T14. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Section 6G.18 Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing

Standard:

01 **When grade crossings exist either within or in the vicinity of a TTC zone, lane restrictions, flagging, or other operations shall not create conditions where vehicles can be queued across the tracks. If the queuing of vehicles across the tracks cannot be avoided, a uniformed law enforcement officer or flagger shall be provided at the crossing to prevent vehicles from stopping on the tracks, even if automatic warning devices are in place.**

Support:

02 Figure 6H-46 shows work in the vicinity of a grade crossing.

03 Section 8A.08 contains additional information regarding temporary traffic control zones in the vicinity of grade crossings.

Guidance:

04 *Early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should occur before work starts.*

Section 6G.19 Temporary Traffic Control During Nighttime Hours

Support:

01 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

02 Conducting highway construction and maintenance activities during night hours could provide an advantage when traditional daytime traffic control strategies cannot achieve an acceptable balance between worker and public safety, traffic and community impact, and constructability. The two basic advantages of working at night are reduced traffic congestion and less involvement with business activities. However, the two basic conditions that must normally be met for night work to offer any advantage are reduced traffic volumes and easy set up and removal of the traffic control patterns on a nightly basis.

03 Shifting work activities to night hours, when traffic volumes are lower and normal business is less active, might offer an advantage in some cases, as long as the necessary work can be completed and the worksite restored to essentially normal operating conditions to carry the higher traffic volume during non-construction hours.

04 Although working at night might offer advantages, it also includes safety issues. Reduced visibility inherent in night work impacts the performance of both drivers and workers. Because traffic volumes are lower and congestion is minimized, speeds are often higher at night necessitating greater visibility at a time when visibility is reduced. Finally, the incidence of impaired (alcohol or drugs), fatigued, or drowsy drivers might be higher at night.

05 Working at night also involves other factors, including construction productivity and quality, social impacts, economics, and environmental issues. A decision to perform construction or maintenance activities at night normally involves some consideration of the advantages to be gained compared to the safety and other issues that might be impacted.

Guidance:

06 *Considering the safety issues inherent to night work, consideration should be given to enhancing traffic controls (see Section 6G.04) to provide added visibility and driver guidance, and increased protection for workers.*

07 *In addition to the enhancements listed in Section 6G.04, consideration should be given to providing additional lights and retroreflective markings to workers, work vehicles, and equipment.*

Option:

08 Where reduced traffic volumes at night make it feasible, the entire roadway may be closed by detouring traffic to alternate facilities, thus removing the traffic risk from the activity area.

Guidance:

09 *Consideration should be given to stationing uniformed law enforcement officers and lighted patrol cars at night work locations where there is a concern that high speeds or impaired drivers might result in undue risks for workers or other drivers.*

Standard:

10 **Except in emergencies, temporary lighting shall be provided at all flagger stations.**

Support:

10a Refer to Construction Safety Order in the California Code of Regulations (Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 11, Section 1599 - Flaggers). See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Support:

11 Desired illumination levels vary depending upon the nature of the task involved. ~~An average horizontal luminance of 5 foot candles can be adequate for general activities.~~ An average horizontal luminance of 10 foot candles can be adequate for general activities and activities around equipment. Tasks requiring high levels of precision and extreme care can require an average horizontal luminance of 20 foot candles.

Standard:

12 Highway construction work lighting shall be as per Construction Safety Order 1523 (California Code of Regulations Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 4, Article 3, Section 1523 - Illumination). See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

CHAPTER 6H. TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Section 6H.01 Typical Applications

Support:

01 Chapter 6G contains discussions of typical TTC activities. This Chapter presents typical applications for a variety of situations commonly encountered. While not every situation is addressed, the information illustrated can generally be adapted to a broad range of conditions. In many instances, an appropriate TTC plan is achieved by combining features from various typical applications. For example, work at an intersection might present a near-side work zone for one street and a far-side work zone for the other street. These treatments are found in two different typical applications, while a third typical application shows how to handle pedestrian crosswalk closures. For convenience in using the typical application diagrams, Tables 6C-1 and 6C-4 are reproduced in this Chapter as Tables 6H-3 and 6H-4, respectively.

02 Procedures for establishing TTC zones vary with such conditions as road configuration, location of the work, work activity, duration of work, road user volumes, road vehicle mix (buses, trucks, cars, motorcycles, and bicycles), and road user speeds.

03 In general, the procedures illustrated represent minimum solutions for the situations depicted. Except for the notes (which are clearly classified using headings as being Standard, Guidance, Option, or Support), the information presented in the typical applications can generally be regarded as Guidance.

Option:

04 Other devices may be added to supplement the devices and device spacing may be adjusted to provide additional reaction time or delineation. Fewer devices may be used based on field conditions.

Support:

05 Figures and tables found throughout Part 6 provide information for the development of TTC plans. Also, Table 6H-3 is used for the determination of sign spacing and other dimensions for various area and roadway types.

06 Table 6H-1 is an index of the 46 typical applications. Typical applications are shown on the right-hand page with notes on the facing page to the left. The legend for the symbols used in the typical applications is provided in Table 6H-2. In many of the typical applications, sign spacings and other dimensions are indicated by letters using the criteria provided in Table 6H-3. The formulas for determining taper lengths are provided in Table 6H-4.

07 Most of the typical applications show TTC devices for only one direction.

Guidance:

08 *The spacing of channelizing devices should not exceed the maximum distances shown in Table 6F-101(CA).*

Table 6H-1. Index to Typical Applications

Typical Application Description	Typical Application Number
Work Outside of the Shoulder (see Section 6G.06)	
Work Beyond the Shoulder	TA-1
Blasting Zone	TA-2
Work on the Shoulder (see Sections 6G.07 and 6G.08)	
Work on the Shoulders	TA-3
Short Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder	TA-4
Shoulder Closure on a Freeway	TA-5
Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment	TA-6
Work Within the Traveled Way of a Two-Lane Highway (see Section 6G.10)	
Road Closed with a Diversion	TA-7
Roads Closed with an Off-Site Detour	TA-8
Overlapping Routes with a Detour	TA-9
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers	TA-10
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes	TA-11
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals	TA-12
Temporary Road Closure	TA-13
Haul Road Crossing	TA-14
Work in the Center of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes	TA-15
Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes	TA-16
Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road	TA-17
Work Within the Traveled Way of an Urban Street (see Section 6G.11)	
Lane Closure on a Minor Street	TA-18
Detour for One Travel Direction	TA-19
Detour for a Closed Street	TA-20
Work Within the Traveled Way at an Intersection and on Sidewalks (see Section 6G.13)	
Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection	TA-21
Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection	TA-22
Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection	TA-23
Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection	TA-24
Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection	TA-25
Closure in the Center of an Intersection	TA-26
Closure at the Side of an Intersection	TA-27
Sidewalk Detour or Diversion	TA-28
Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours	TA-29
Work Within the Traveled Way of a Multi-Lane, Non-Access Controlled Highway (see Section 6G.12)	
Interior Lane Closure on a Multi-Lane Street	TA-30
Lane Closure on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes	TA-31
Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway	TA-32
Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway	TA-33
Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier	TA-34
Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road	TA-35
Work Within the Traveled Way of a Freeway or Expressway (see Section 6G.14)	
Lane Shift on a Freeway	TA-36
Double Lane Closure on a Freeway	TA-37
Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway	TA-38
Median Crossover on a Freeway	TA-39
Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp	TA-40
Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp	TA-41
Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp	TA-42
Partial Exit Ramp Closure	TA-43
Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp	TA-44
Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers	TA-45
Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing (see Section 6G.18)	
Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing	TA-46

Table 6H-1(CA). Index to Typical Applications

Typical Application Description	Typical Application Number
Work affecting Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities (see Section 6G.05)	
Shoulder Closure on Urban (Low Speed) Locations to Accommodate Bicyclists	TA-101(CA)
Lane Closure on Freeway, Expressway, Rural and Urban (High Speed) Locations to Accommodate Bicyclists	TA-102(CA)
Detour for Bike Lane on Roads with Closure of One Travel Direction	TA-103(CA)
Right Lane and Bike Lane Closure on Far Side of Intersection	TA-104(CA)
Work Within the Traveled Way of a Two-Lane Highway (see Section 6G.10)	
Lane Shift on Road with Low Traffic Volumes	TA-105(CA)

Table 6H-2. Meaning of Symbols on Typical Application Diagrams

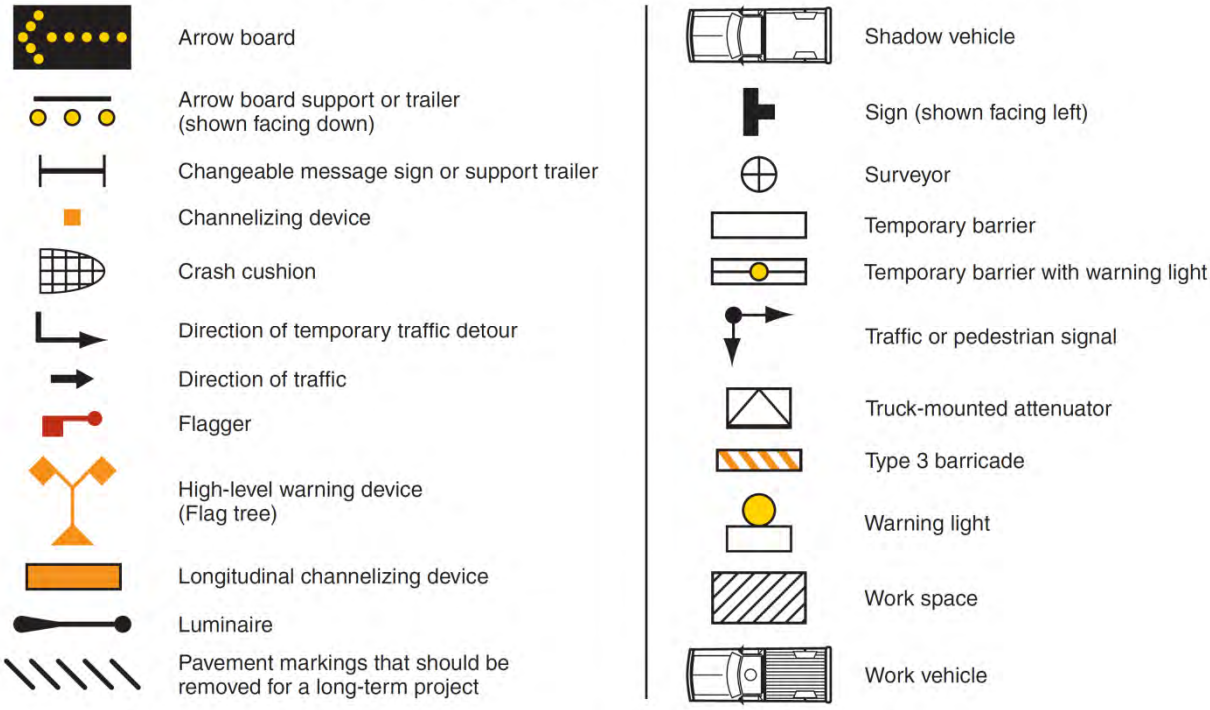


Table 6H-3. Recommended Advance Warning Sign ~~Minimum~~ Spacing

Road Type	Distance Between Signs**		
	A	B	C
Urban ~~(low speed)~~ - 25 mph or less***	100 feet	100 feet	100 feet
Urban - more than 25 mph to 40 mph***	250 feet	250 feet	250 feet
Urban ~~(high speed)~~ - more than 40 mph***	350 feet	350 feet	350 feet
Rural	500 feet	500 feet	500 feet
Expressway / Freeway	1,000 feet	1,500 feet	2,640 feet

* ~~Speed category to be determined by the highway agency.~~

** The column headings A, B, and C are the dimensions shown in Figures 6H-1 through 6H-46. The A dimension is the distance from the transition or point of restriction to the first sign. The B dimension is the distance between the first and second signs. The C dimension is the distance between the second and third signs. (The "first sign" is the sign in a three-sign series that is closest to the TTC zone. The "third sign" is the sign that is furthest upstream from the TTC zone.)

*** Posted speed limit, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or other anticipated operating speed in mph.

Table 6H-4. Formulas for Determining Taper Length

Speed (S)	Taper Length (L) in feet
40 mph or less	$L = \frac{WS^2}{60}$
45 mph or more	$L = WS$

Where: L = taper length in feet
W = width of offset in feet
S = posted speed limit, or off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph

Table 6H-4(CA). Taper Length Criteria for Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(for 12 feet Offset Width)

Speed* S (mph)	Minimum Taper Length** for Width of Offset 12 feet (W)			
	Merging L (feet)	Shifting L/2 (feet)	Shoulder L/3 (feet)	Down Stream (feet)***
20	80	40	27	50
25	125	63	42	50
30	180	90	60	50
35	245	123	82	50
40	320	160	107	50
45	540	270	180	50
50	600	300	200	50
55	660	330	220	50
60	720	360	240	50
65	780	390	260	50
70	840	420	280	50
75	900	450	300	50

* - Posted speed limit, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph.

** - For other offsets use the following merging taper length formula for L:

For speeds of 40 mph or less, $L=WS^2/60$

For speeds of 45 mph or more, $L=WS$

Where: L = taper length in feet
W = width of offset in feet
S = posted speed limit, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph

*** - Maximum downstream taper length is 100 feet. See Section 6C.08.

Notes for Figure 6H-1 —Typical Application 1
Work Beyond the Shoulder

Guidance:

1. *If the work space is in the median of a divided highway, an advance warning sign should also be placed on the left side of the directional roadway.*

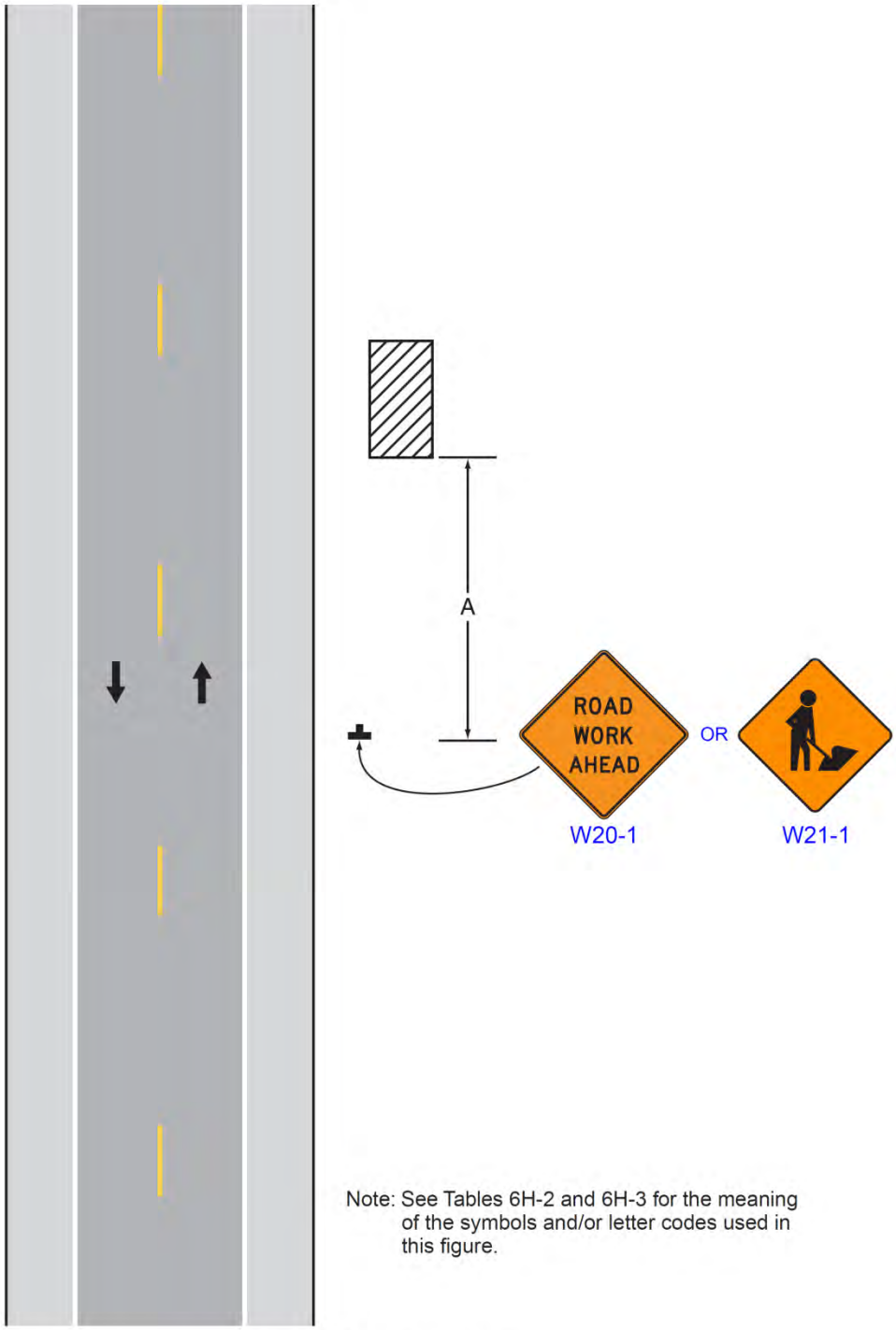
Option:

2. The ROAD WORK AHEAD sign or Workers (W21-1a) sign may be replaced with other appropriate signs such as the SHOULDER WORK sign. The SHOULDER WORK sign may be used for work adjacent to the shoulder.
3. The ROAD WORK AHEAD sign or Workers (W21-1a) sign may be omitted where the work space is behind a barrier, more than 24 inches behind the curb, or 15 feet or more from the edge of any roadway.
4. For short-term, short duration or mobile operation, all signs and channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle with activated high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is used.
5. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

6. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Figure 6H-1. Work Beyond the Shoulder (TA-1)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 1

Notes for Figure 6H-2—Typical Application 2
Blasting Zone

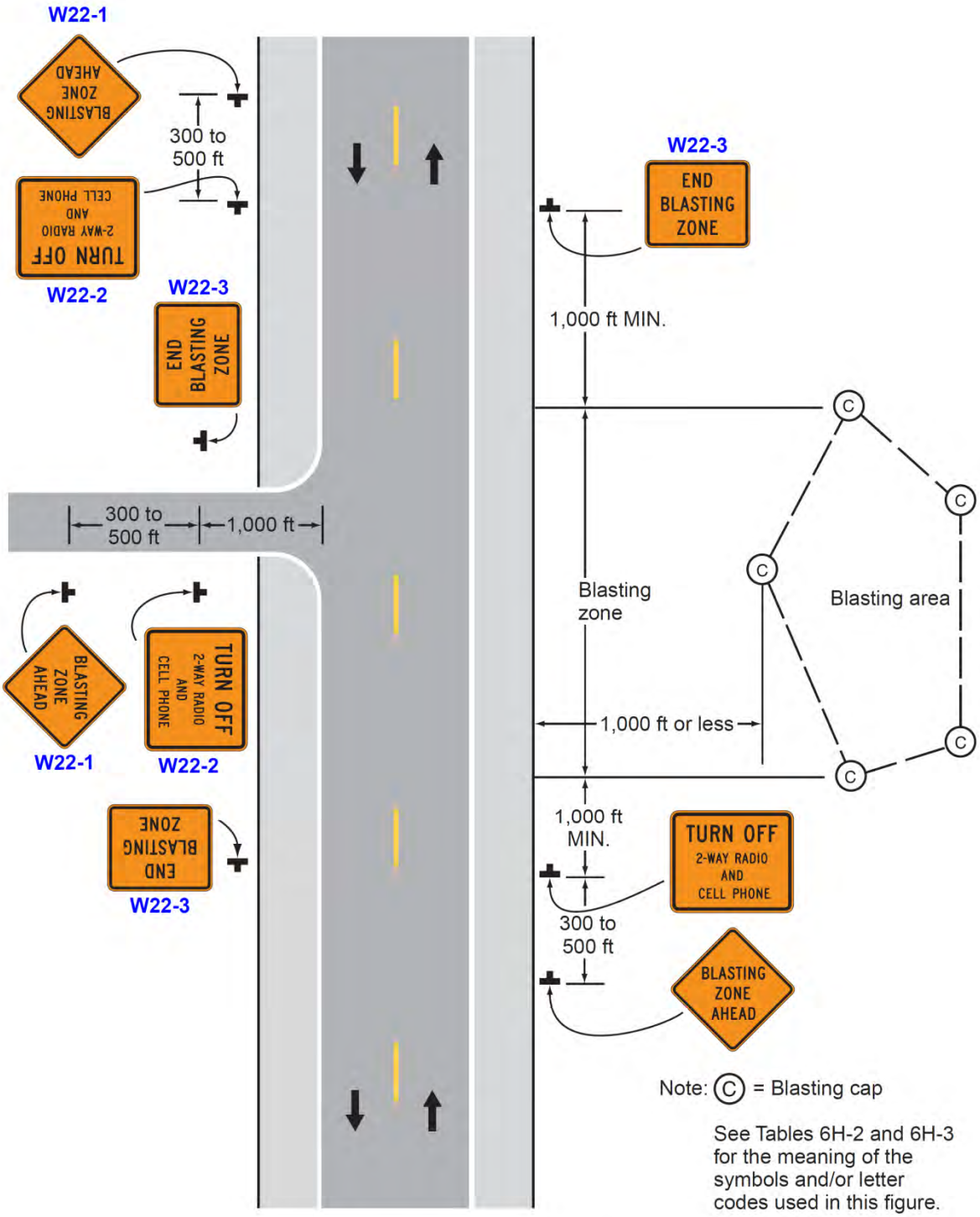
Standard:

1. **Whenever blasting caps are used within 1,000 feet of a roadway, the signing shown shall be used.**
2. **The signs shall be covered or removed when there are no explosives in the area or the area is otherwise secure.**
3. **Whenever a side road intersects the roadway between the BLASTING ZONE AHEAD sign and the END BLASTING ZONE sign, or a side road is within 1,000 feet of any blasting cap, similar signing, as on the mainline, shall be installed on the side road.**
4. **Prior to blasting, the blaster in charge shall determine whether road users in the blasting zone will be endangered by the blasting operation. If there is danger, road users shall not be permitted to pass through the blasting zone during blasting operations.**

Guidance:

5. *On a divided highway, the signs should be mounted on both sides of the directional roadways.*

Figure 6H-2. Blasting Zone (TA-2)



Typical Application 2

Notes for Figure 6H-3—Typical Application 3
Work on the Shoulders

Guidance:

1. *A SHOULDER WORK sign should be placed on the left side of the roadway for a divided or one-way street only if the left shoulder is affected.*

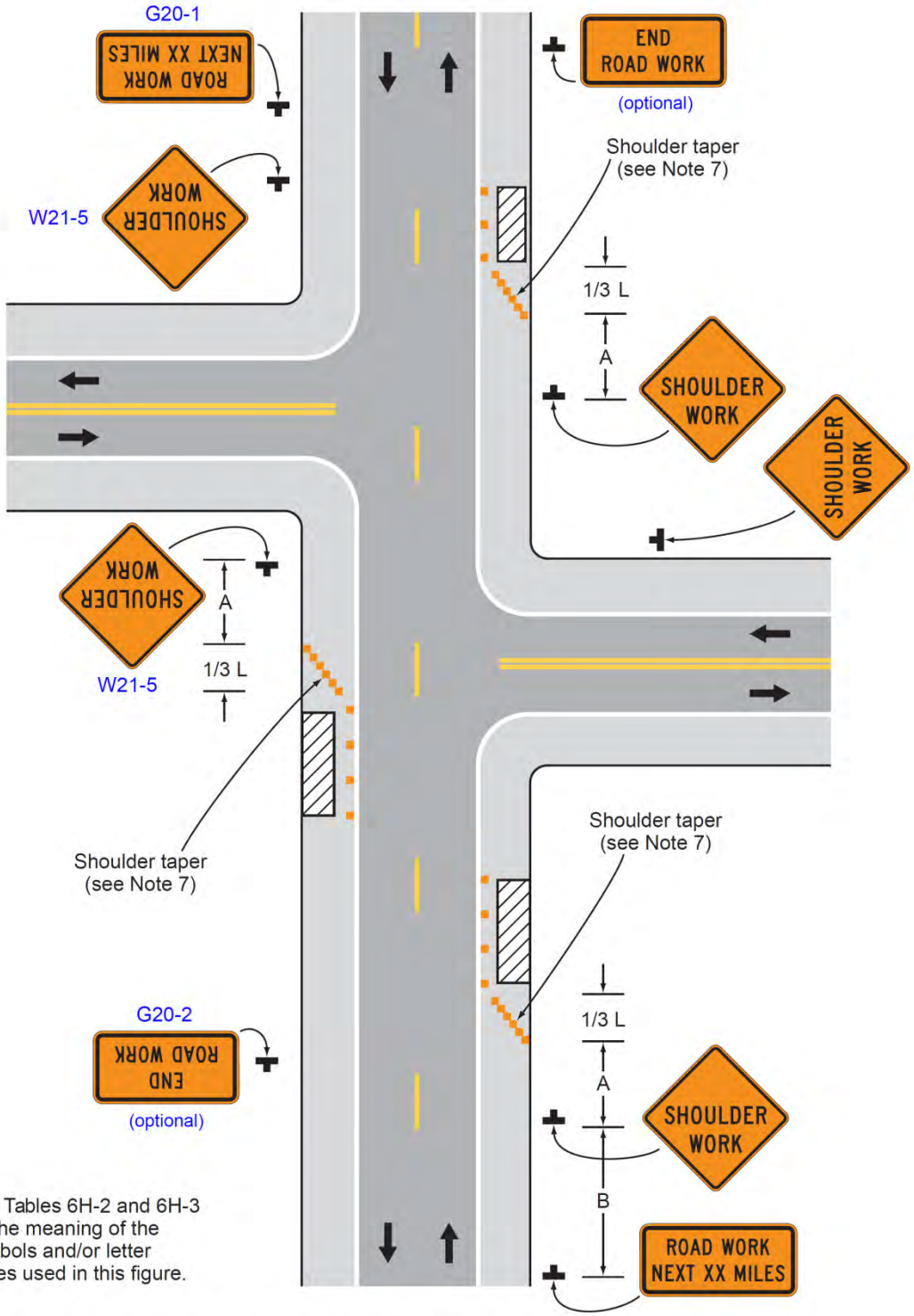
Option:

2. The Workers symbol signs may be used instead of SHOULDER WORK signs.
3. The SHOULDER WORK AHEAD sign on an intersecting roadway may be omitted where road users emerging from that roadway will encounter another advance warning sign prior to this activity area.
4. For short duration operations of 60 minutes or less, all signs and channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle with activated high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is used.
5. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

6. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
7. **When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, at least one advance warning sign shall be used. In addition, channelizing devices shall be used to close the shoulder in advance to delineate the beginning of the work space and direct vehicular traffic to remain within the traveled way.**

Figure 6H-3. Work on the Shoulders (TA-3)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 3

Notes for Figure 6H-4 —Typical Application 4
Short Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder

Guidance:

1. *In those situations where multiple work locations within a limited distance make it practical to place stationary signs, the distance between the advance warning sign and the work should not exceed 5 miles.*
2. *In those situations where the distance between the advance signs and the work is 2 miles to 5 miles, a Supplemental Distance plaque should be used with the ROAD WORK AHEAD sign or SHOULDER WORK AHEAD (C24(CA)) sign.*

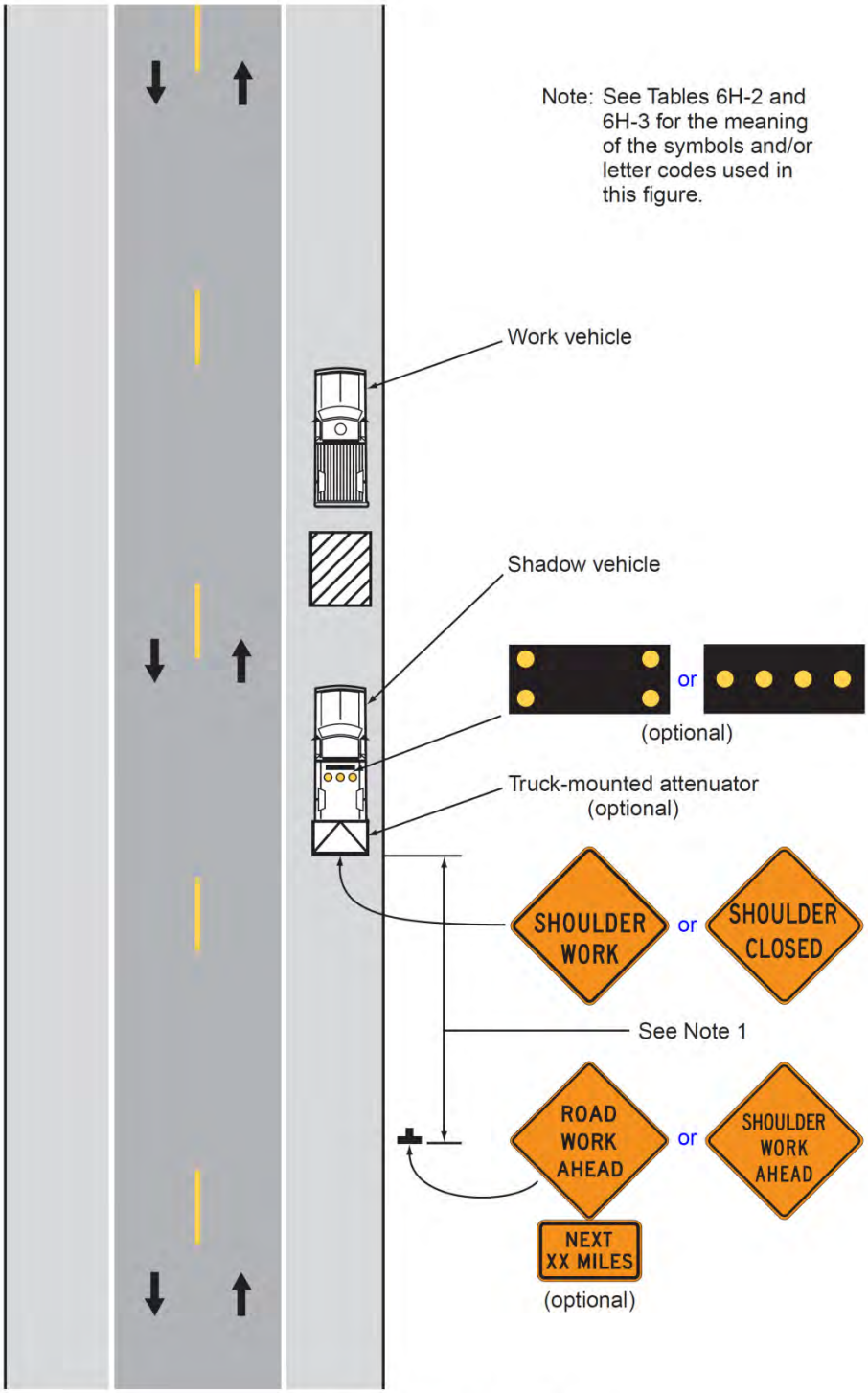
Option:

3. The ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES sign may be used instead of the ROAD WORK AHEAD sign or SHOULDER WORK AHEAD *(C24(CA))* sign if the work locations occur over a distance of more than 2 miles.
4. Stationary warning signs may be omitted for short duration or mobile operations if the work vehicle displays high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.
5. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

6. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
7. **If an arrow board is used for an operation on the shoulder, the caution mode shall be used.**
8. **Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.**

Figure 6H-4. Short-Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder (TA-4)



Typical Application 4

Notes for Figure ~~6H-5~~ 6H-5(CA) —Typical Application 5 Shoulder Closure on a Freeway

Guidance:

1. *SHOULDER CLOSED signs should be used on limited-access highways where there is no opportunity for disabled vehicles to pull off the roadway.*
2. *If drivers cannot see a pull-off area beyond the closed shoulder, information regarding the length of the shoulder closure should be provided in feet or miles, as appropriate.*
3. *The use of a temporary traffic barrier should be based on engineering judgment.*

Standard:

4. **Temporary traffic barriers, if used, shall comply with the provisions of Section 6F.85.**

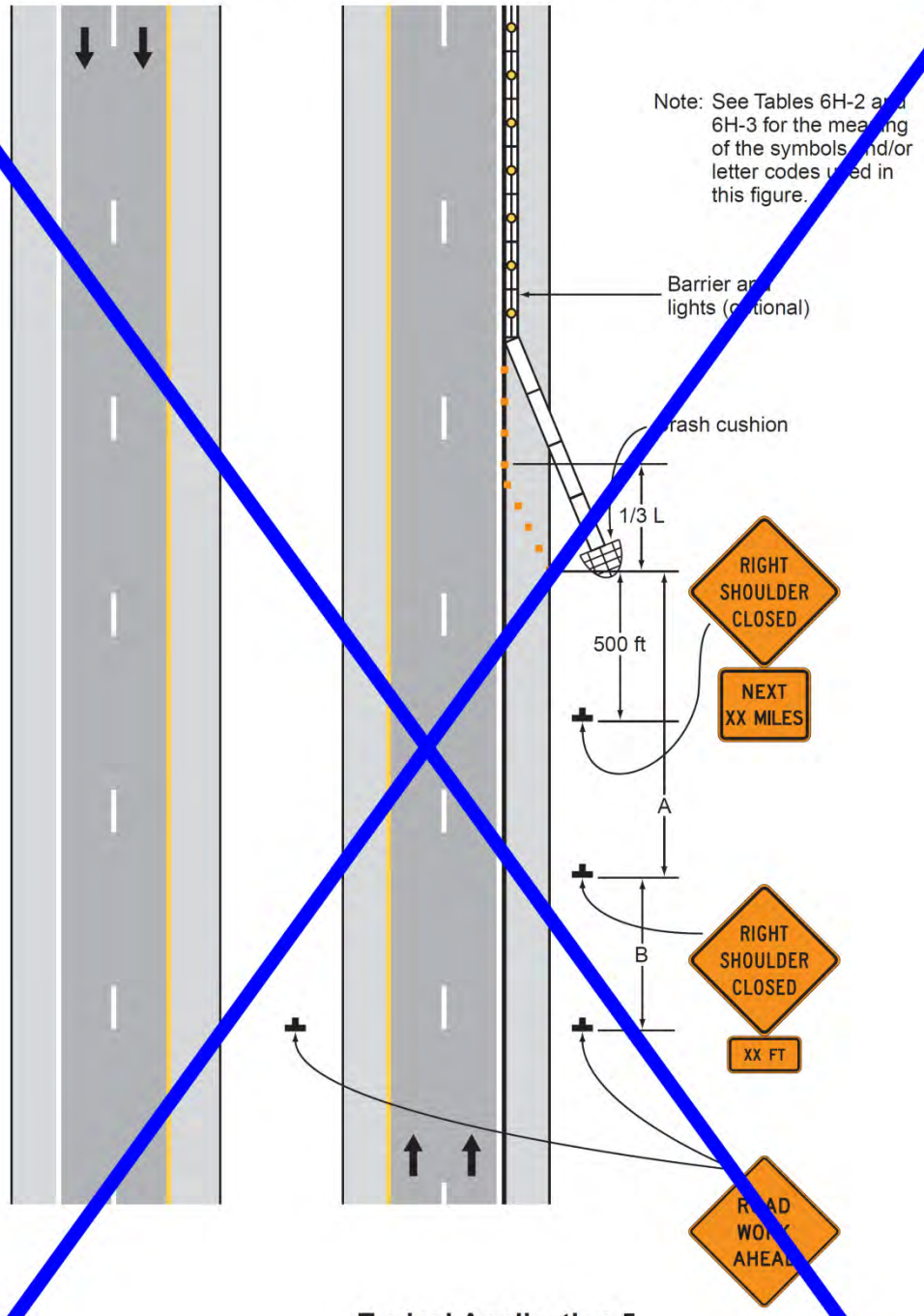
Option:

5. The barrier shown in this typical application is an example of one method that may be used to close a shoulder of a long-term project.
6. The warning lights shown on the barrier may be used.

Standard:

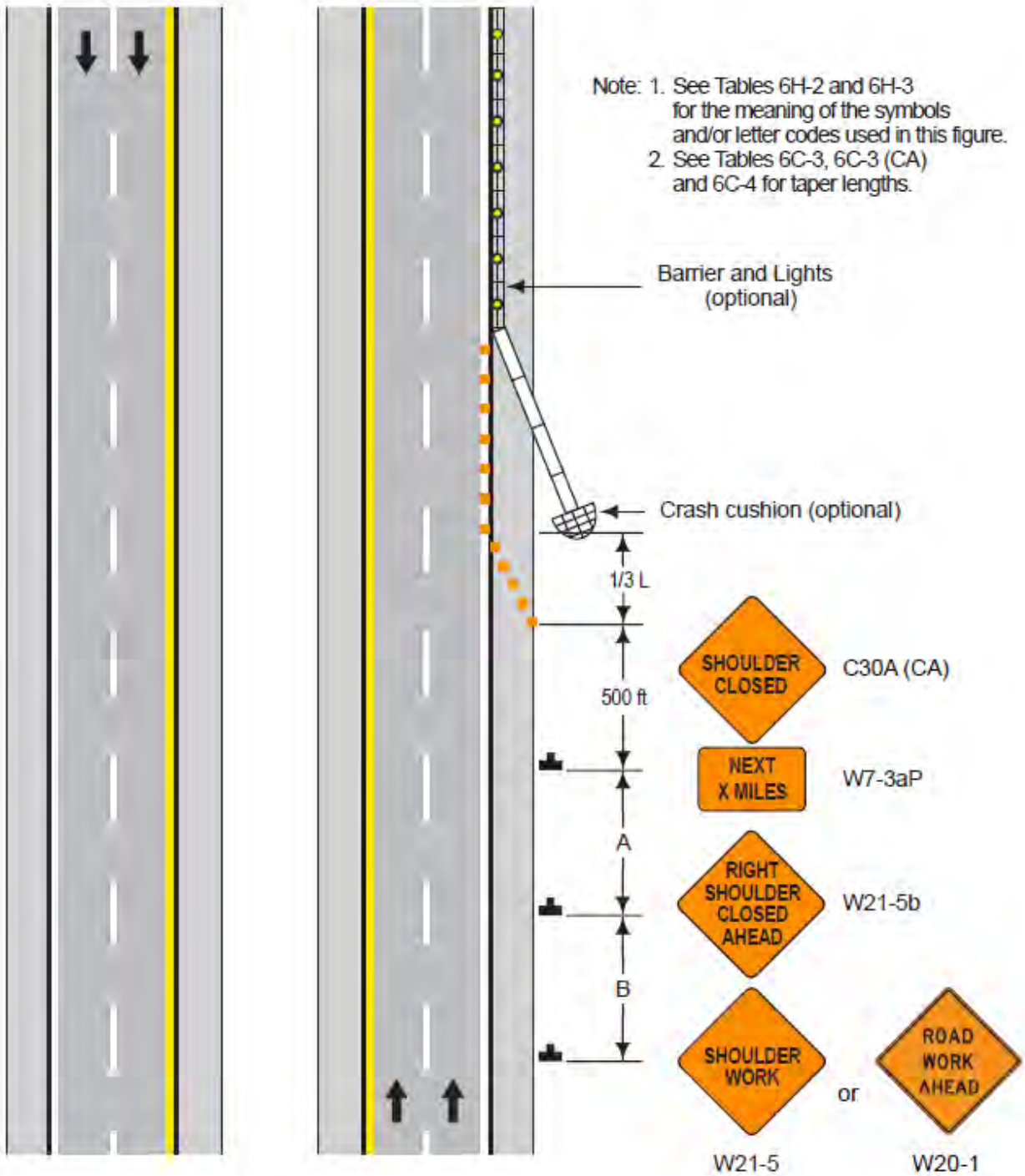
7. Temporary traffic barriers, including their end treatments, shall be crashworthy. In order to mitigate the effect of striking the upstream end of a temporary traffic barrier, the end shall be installed in accordance with AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11) by flaring until the end is outside the acceptable clear zone or by providing crashworthy end treatments. See Section 6F.85 for more details.

Figure 6H-5. Shoulder Closure on a Freeway (TA-5)



Typical Application 5

Figure 6H-5 (CA). Shoulder Closure on Freeway (TA-5)



Typical Application 5

Notes for Figure 6H-6—Typical Application 6
Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment

Guidance:

1. *All lanes should be a minimum of 10 feet in width as measured to the near face of the channelizing devices.*
2. *The treatment shown should be used on a minor road having low speeds. For higher-speed traffic conditions, a lane closure should be used.*

Option:

3. For short-term use on low-volume, low-speed roadways with vehicular traffic that does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles, a minimum lane width of 9 feet may be used.
4. Where the opposite shoulder is suitable for carrying vehicular traffic and of adequate width, lanes may be shifted by use of closely-spaced channelizing devices, provided that the minimum lane width of 10 feet is maintained.
5. Additional advance warning may be appropriate, such as a ROAD NARROWS sign.
6. Temporary traffic barriers may be used along the work space.
7. The shadow vehicle may be omitted if a taper and channelizing devices are used.
8. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the shadow vehicle.
9. For short-duration work, the taper and channelizing devices may be omitted if a shadow vehicle with activated high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is used.
10. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

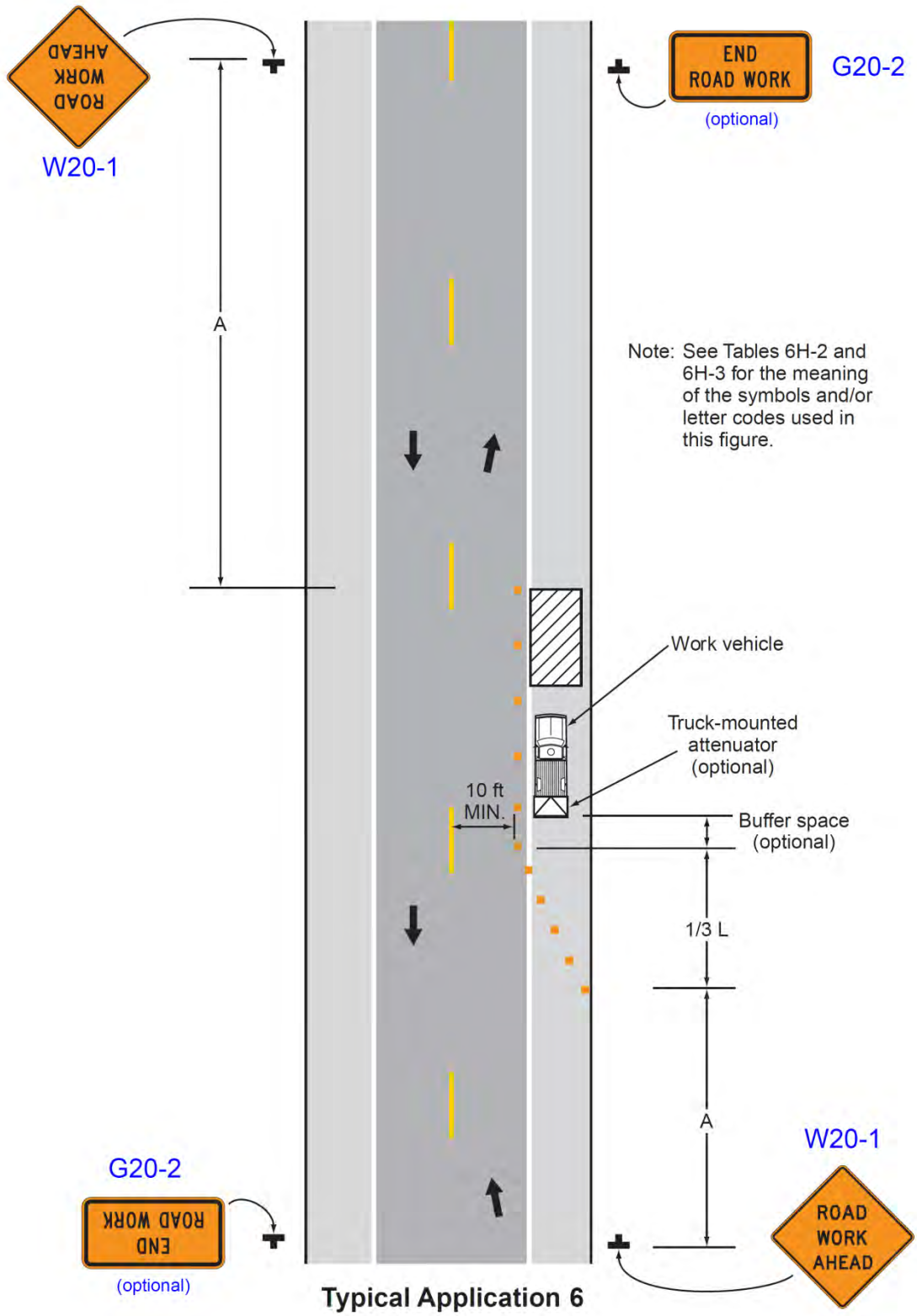
Standard:

11. **Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.**
12. **Shadow and work vehicles shall display high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
13. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Guidance:

14. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.*
15. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02) and the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, the Bicycle Warning (W11-1) sign and the SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be used to advise motorists of the presence of bicyclists in the travel way lanes.*
16. *Except for short durations and mobile operations, when a highway shoulder is occupied and bicyclists would be sharing a lane with vehicular traffic, as a result of the TTC zone, speed reduction countermeasures should be used to reduce traffic speeds in the TTC zone. Refer to Sections 6C.01 and 6D.03.*
17. *Except for short durations and mobile operations, when a highway shoulder is occupied and bicyclists would be sharing a lane with vehicular traffic, as a result of the TTC zone, before narrowing the outside lane other measures such as widening the outside shoulder to allow bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side through the TTC zone should be considered.*
18. *If traffic volumes make it feasible, the two left lanes should be merged into one lane to avoid using the shoulder as a traveled way lane and allowing continued use for emergency purposes and bicycle travel.*
19. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02) and the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, a separate path should be considered for bicyclists.*

Figure 6H-6. Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment (TA-6)



Typical Application 6

Notes for Figure 6H-7 —Typical Application 7
Road Closure with a Diversion

Support:

1. Signs and object markers are shown for one direction of travel only.

Standard:

2. Devices similar to those depicted shall be placed for the opposite direction of travel.

3. Pavement markings no longer applicable to the traffic pattern of the roadway shall be removed or obliterated before any new traffic patterns are open to traffic.

4. Temporary barriers and end treatments shall be crashworthy.

Guidance:

5. If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is more than 600 feet, a Reverse Curve sign, left first, should be used instead of the Double Reverse Curve sign, and a second Reverse Curve sign, right first, should be placed in advance of the second reverse curve back to the original alignment.

6. When the tangent section of the diversion is more than 600 feet, and the diversion has sharp curves with recommended speeds of 30 mph or less, Reverse Turn signs should be used.

7. Where the temporary pavement and old pavement are different colors, the temporary pavement should start on the tangent of the existing pavement and end on the tangent of the existing pavement.

Option:

8. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the warning signs.

9. On sharp curves, large arrow signs may be used in addition to other advance warning signs.

10. Delineators or channelizing devices may be used along the diversion.

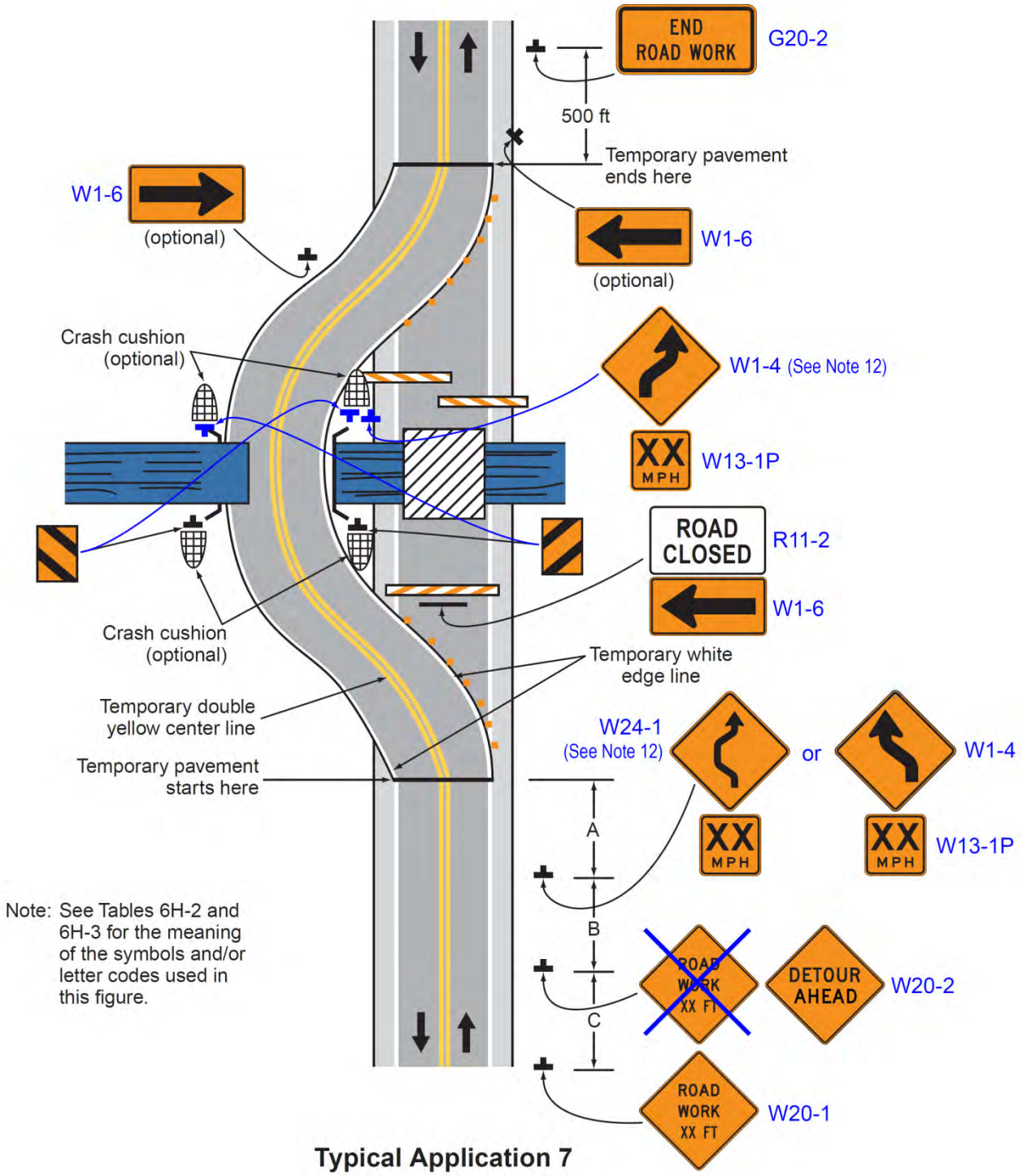
11. If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is less than 600 feet, additional One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) and Chevron Alignment (W1-8) signs may be used.

12. When recommended speeds are the same for each curve, one Double Reverse Curve (W24-1) sign may be used, instead of two Reverse Curve (W1-4) signs, in advance of the first curve.

Support:

13. Use crash cushions, wherever applicable.

Figure 6H-7. Road Closure with a Diversion (TA-7)



Typical Application 7

Notes for Figure 6H-8—Typical Application 8
Road Closure with an Off-Site Detour

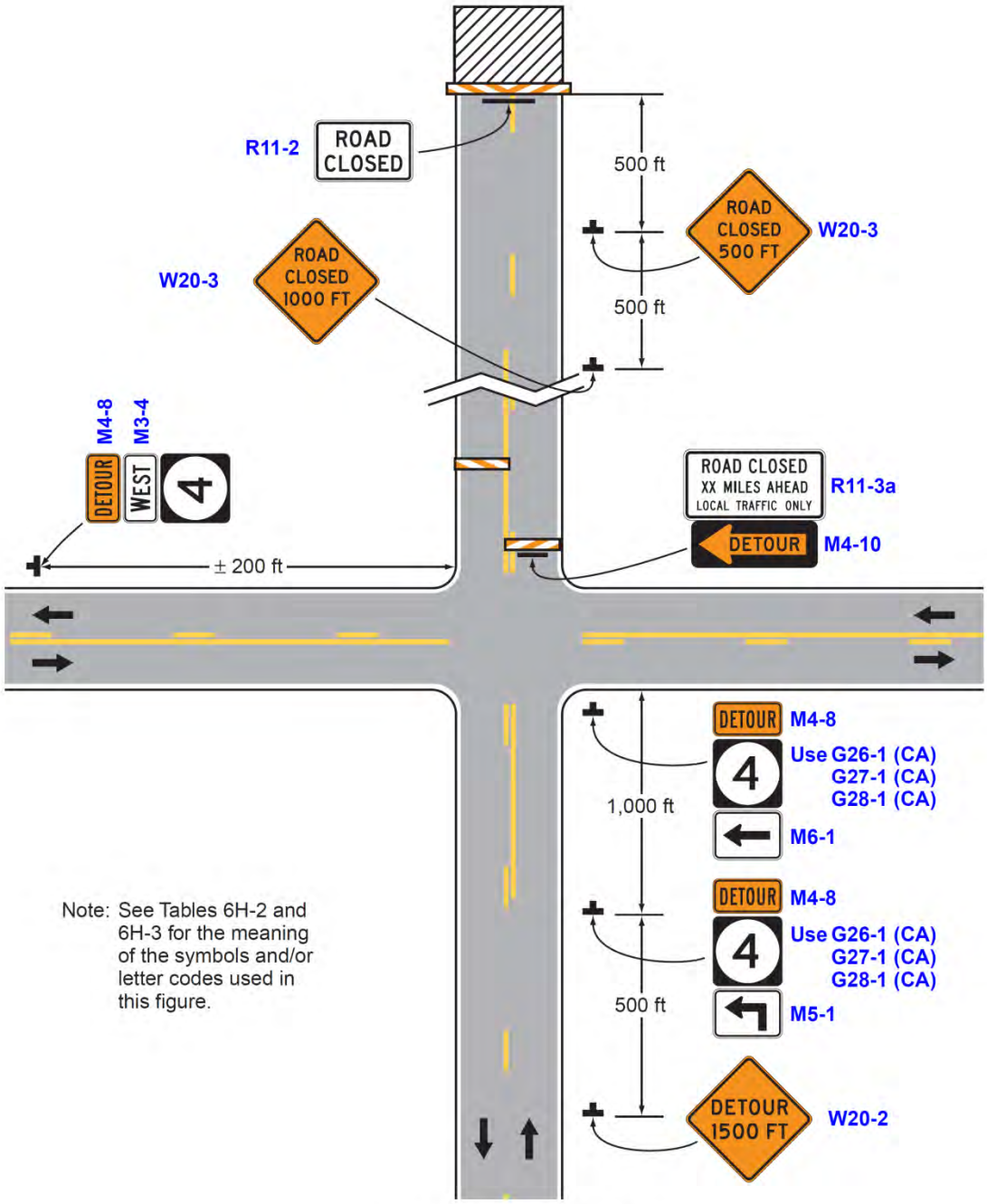
Guidance:

1. Regulatory traffic control devices should be modified as needed for the duration of the detour.

Option:

2. If the road is opened for some distance beyond the intersection and/or there are significant origin/ destination points beyond the intersection, the ROAD CLOSED and DETOUR signs on Type 3 Barricades may be located at the edge of the traveled way.
3. A Route Sign Directional assembly may be placed on the far left corner of the intersection to augment or replace the one shown on the near right corner.
4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. Cardinal direction plaques may be used with route signs.

Figure 6H-8. Road Closure with an Off-Site Detour (TA-8)



Typical Application 8

Notes for Figure 6H-9—Typical Application 9
Overlapping Routes with a Detour

Support:

1. TTC devices are shown for one direction of travel only.

Standard:

2. Devices similar to those depicted shall be placed for the opposite direction of travel.

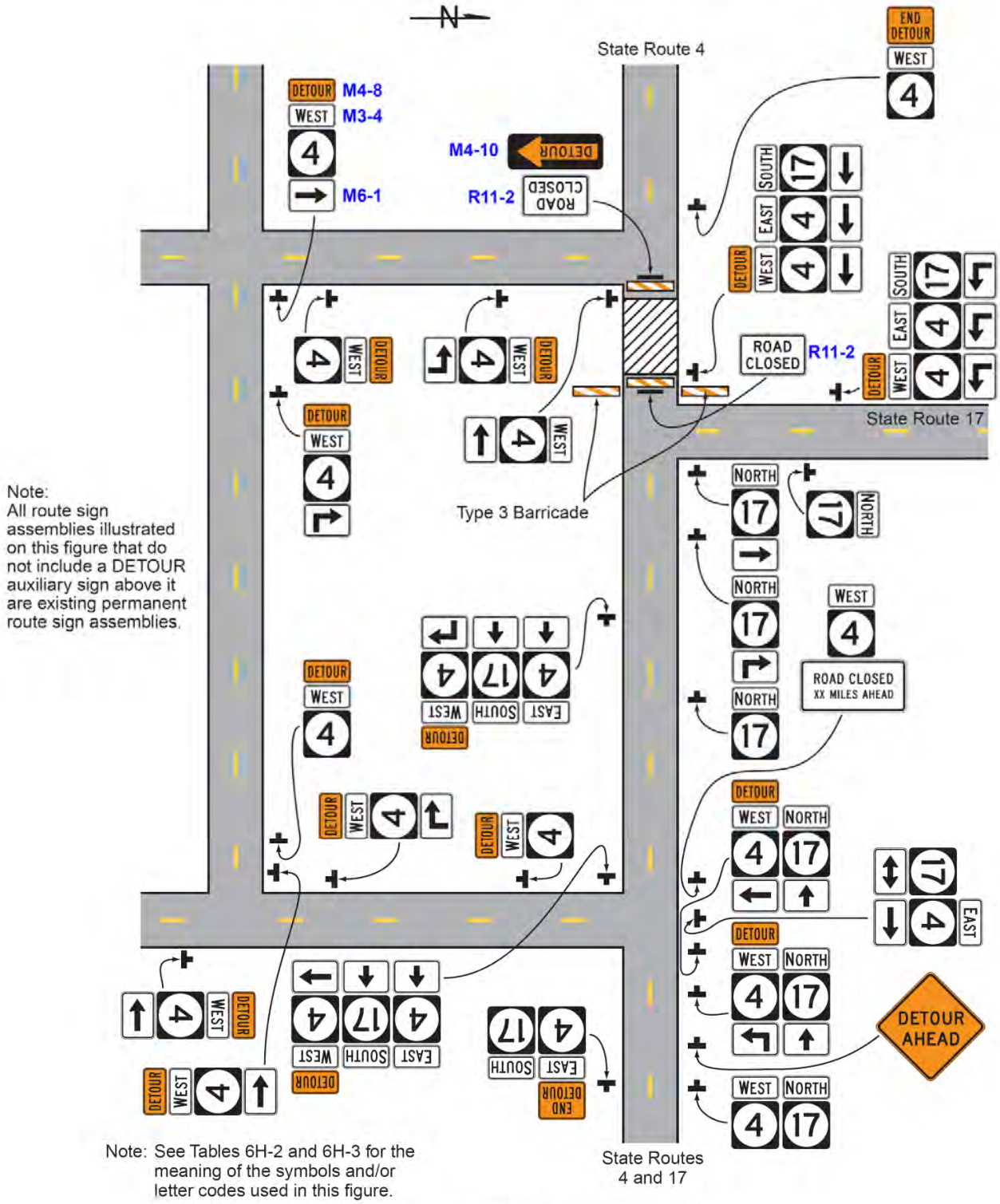
Guidance:

3. STOP or YIELD signs displayed to side roads should be installed as needed along the temporary route.

Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. Flashing warning lights may be used on the Type 3 Barricades.
6. Cardinal direction plaques may be used with route signs.

Figure 6H-9. Overlapping Routes with a Detour (TA-9)



Typical Application 9

Notes for Figure ~~6H-10~~ 6H-10(CA) and 6H-10A(CA) —Typical Application 10 Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers

Option:

1. For low-volume (Refer to Part 5, Section 5A.01) situations with short work zones on straight roadways where the flagger is visible to road users approaching from both directions, a single flagger, positioned to be visible to road users approaching from both directions, may be used (see Chapter 6E).
2. The ROAD WORK AHEAD and the END ROAD WORK signs may be omitted for short-duration operations.
3. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.

A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

4. *The buffer space should be extended so that the two-way traffic taper is placed before a horizontal (or crest vertical) curve to provide adequate sight distance for the flagger and a queue of stopped vehicles.*

Standard:

5. **At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.**

Guidance:

6. *When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located ~~between~~ after the Flagger sign and the ONE LANE ROAD sign.*
7. *When a grade crossing exists within or upstream of the transition area and it is anticipated that queues resulting from the lane closure might extend through the grade crossing, the TTC zone should be extended so that the transition area precedes the grade crossing.*
8. *When a grade crossing equipped with active warning devices exists within the activity area, provisions should be made for keeping flaggers informed as to the activation status of these warning devices.*
9. *When a grade crossing exists within the activity area, drivers operating on the left-hand side of the normal center line should be provided with comparable warning devices as for drivers operating on the right-hand side of the normal center line.*
10. *Early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should occur before work starts.*

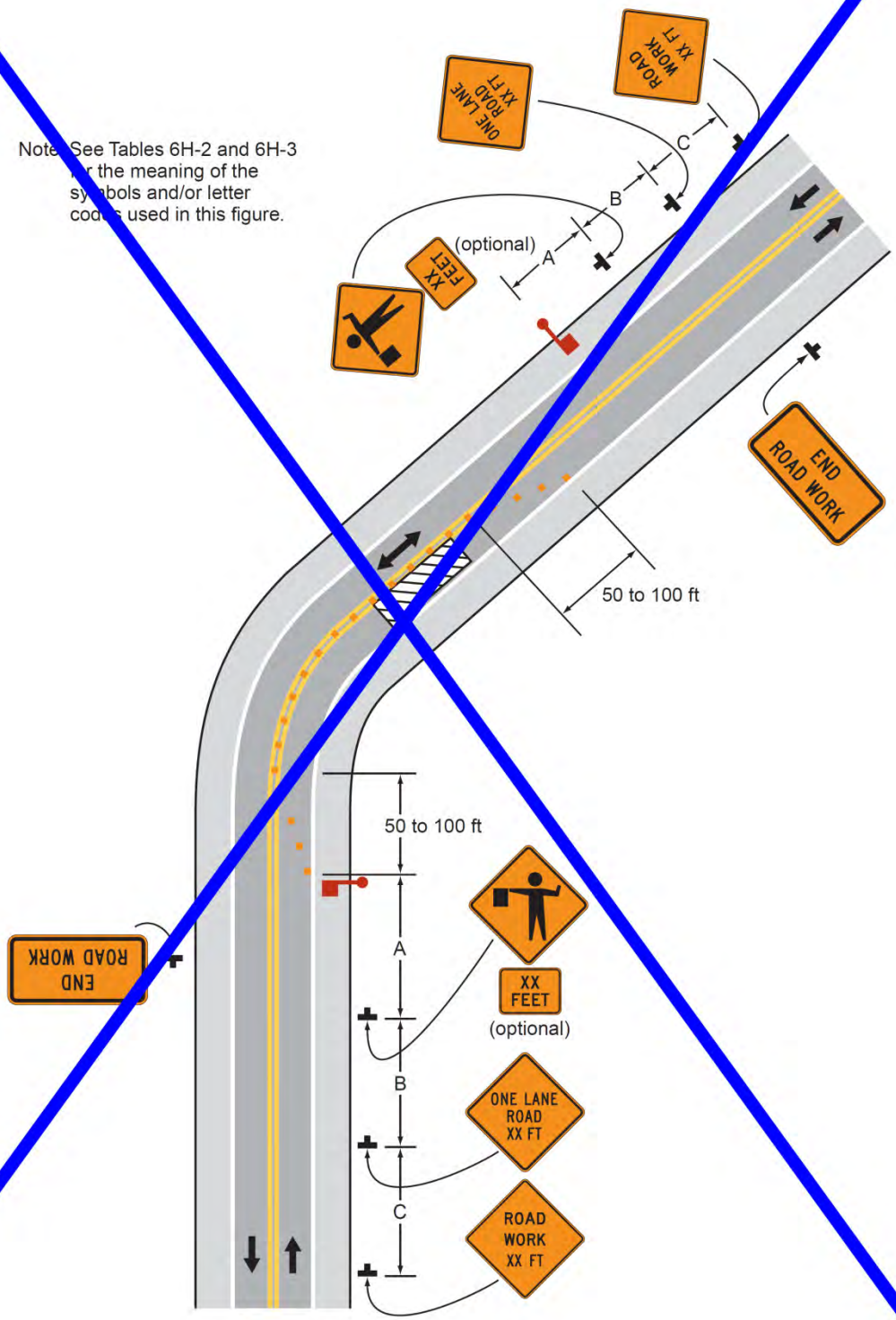
Option:

11. A flagger or a uniformed law enforcement officer may be used at the grade crossing to minimize the probability that vehicles are stopped within 15 feet of the grade crossing, measured from both sides of the outside rails.

Support:

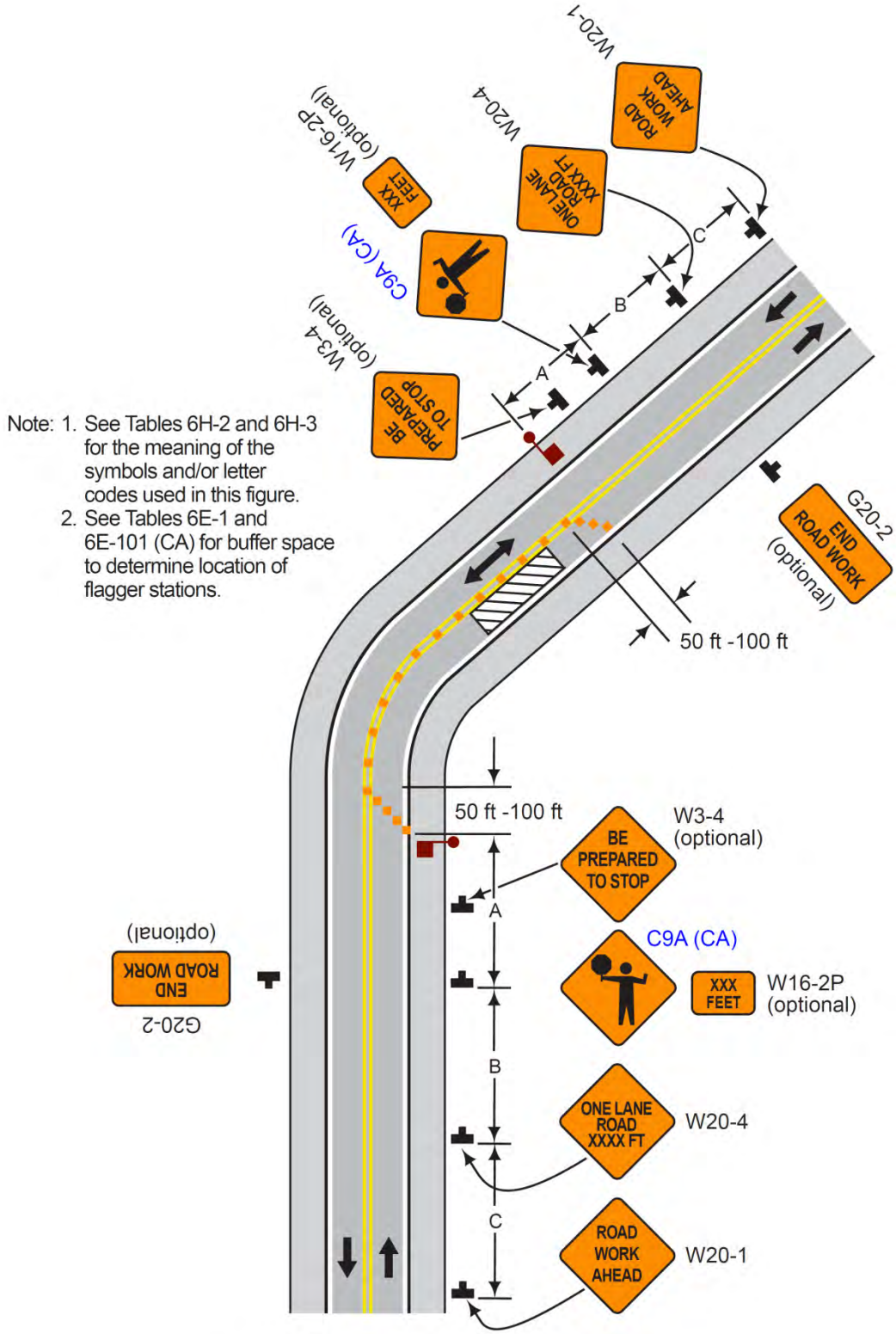
12. For State highways, see Caltrans' Standard Plan T13. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.
13. If portable transverse rumble strips are used for flagging operations, refer to Section 6F.87.

Figure 6H-10. Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers (TA-10)



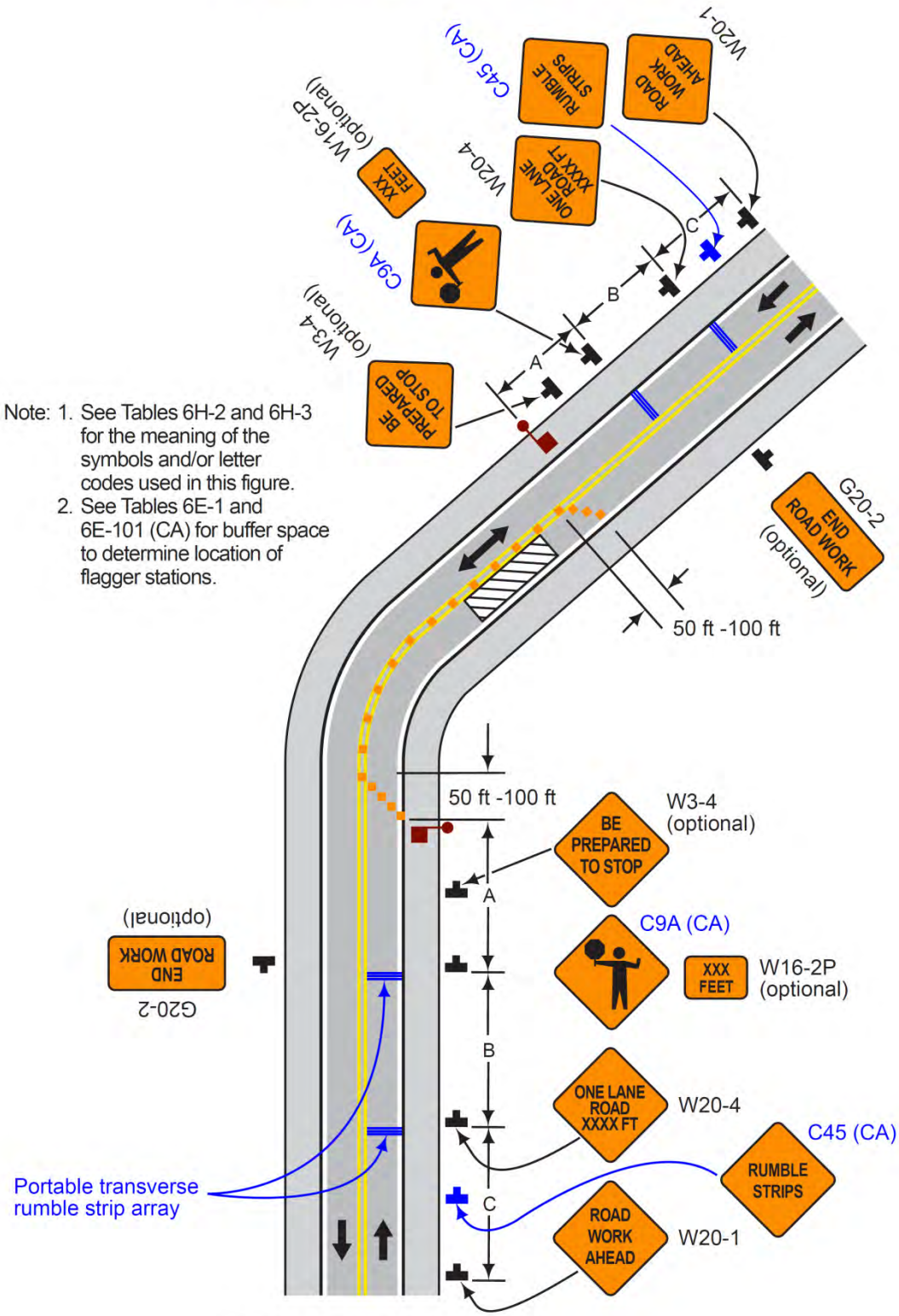
Typical Application 10

Figure 6H-10 (CA). Lane Closure on Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers (TA-10)



Typical Application 10

Figure 6H-10A (CA). Lane Closure on Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers (TA-10A) Using Portable Transverse Rumble Strips



Typical Application 10A

Notes for Figure 6H-11—Typical Application 11
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes

Option:

1. This TTC zone application may be used as an alternate to the TTC application shown in Figure ~~6H-10~~ 6H-10(CA) (using flaggers) when the following conditions exist:
   a. Vehicular traffic volume is such that sufficient gaps exist for vehicular traffic that must yield.
   b. Road users from both directions are able to see approaching vehicular traffic through and beyond the worksite and have sufficient visibility of approaching vehicles.
2. The Type B flashing warning lights may be placed on the ROAD WORK AHEAD and the ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD signs whenever a night lane closure is necessary.

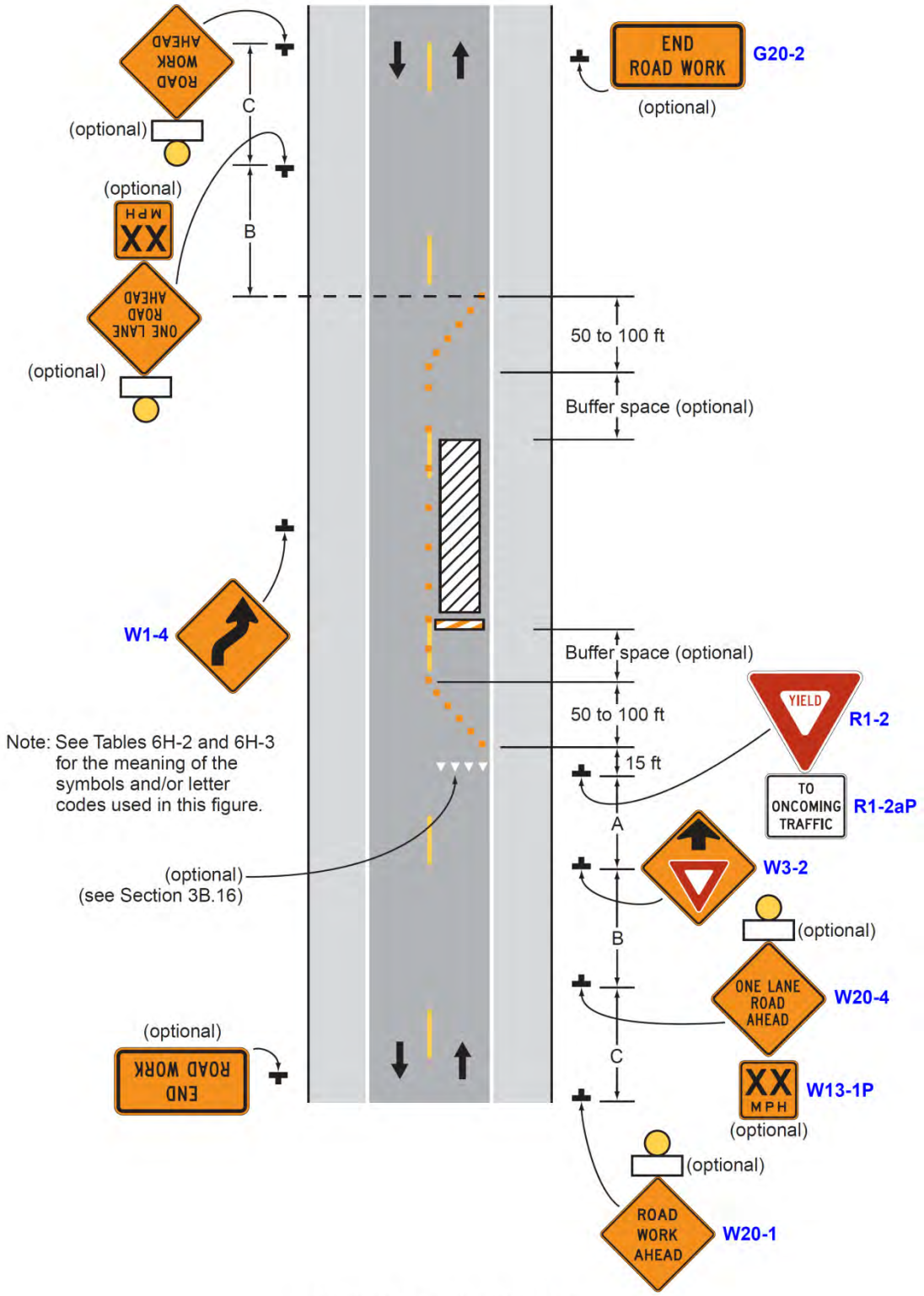
Standard:

3. The approach to the side that is not closed shall be visible (for a distance equal to the safe passing sight distance for that approach) to the road user who must yield or stop.

Support:

See Section 3B.02 and 6C.15.

Figure 6H-11. Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-11)



Typical Application 11

Notes for Figure 6H-12 —Typical Application 12
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals

Standard:

1. **Temporary traffic control signals shall be installed and operated in accordance with the provisions of Part 4. Temporary traffic control signals shall meet the physical display and operational requirements of conventional traffic control signals.**
2. **Temporary traffic control signal timing shall be established by authorized officials. Durations of red clearance intervals shall be adequate to clear the one-lane section of conflicting vehicles.**
3. **When the temporary traffic control signal is changed to the flashing mode, either manually or automatically, red signal indications shall be flashed to both approaches.**
4. **Stop lines shall be installed with temporary traffic control signals for intermediate and long-term closures. Existing conflicting pavement markings and raised pavement marker reflectors between the activity area and the stop line shall be removed. After the temporary traffic control signal is removed, the stop lines and other temporary pavement markings shall be removed and the permanent pavement markings restored.**
5. **Safeguards shall be incorporated to avoid the possibility of conflicting signal indications at each end of the TTC zone.**

Guidance:

6. *Where no-passing lines are not already in place, they should be added.*
7. *Adjustments in the location of the advance warning signs should be made as needed to accommodate the horizontal or vertical alignment of the roadway, recognizing that the distances shown for sign spacings are minimums. Adjustments in the height of the signal heads should be made as needed to conform to the vertical alignment.*

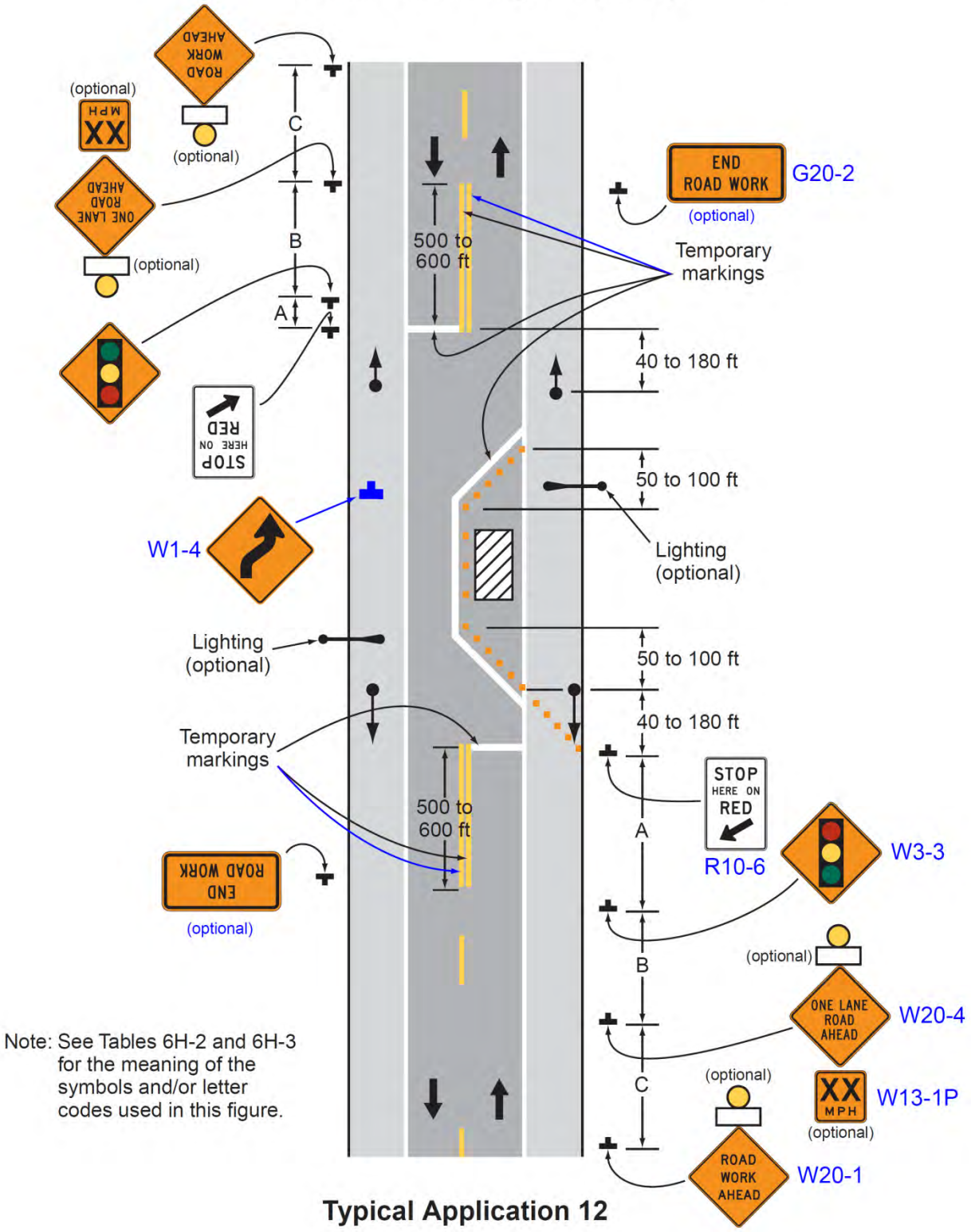
Option:

8. Flashing warning lights shown on the ROAD WORK AHEAD and the ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD signs may be used.
9. Removable pavement markings may be used.

Support:

10. Temporary traffic control signals are preferable to flaggers for long-term projects and other activities that would require flagging at night.
11. The maximum length of activity area for one-way operation under temporary traffic control signal control is determined by the capacity required to handle the peak demand.

Figure 6H-12. Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals (TA-12)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 12

Notes for Figure 6H-13 —Typical Application 13
Temporary Road Closure

Support:

1. Conditions represented are a planned closure not exceeding 20 minutes during the daytime.

Standard:

2. A flagger or uniformed law enforcement officer shall be used for this application. The flagger, if used for this application, shall follow the procedures provided in Sections 6E.07 and 6E.08.

Guidance:

3. The uniformed law enforcement officer, if used for this application, should follow the procedures provided in Sections 6E.07 and 6E.08.

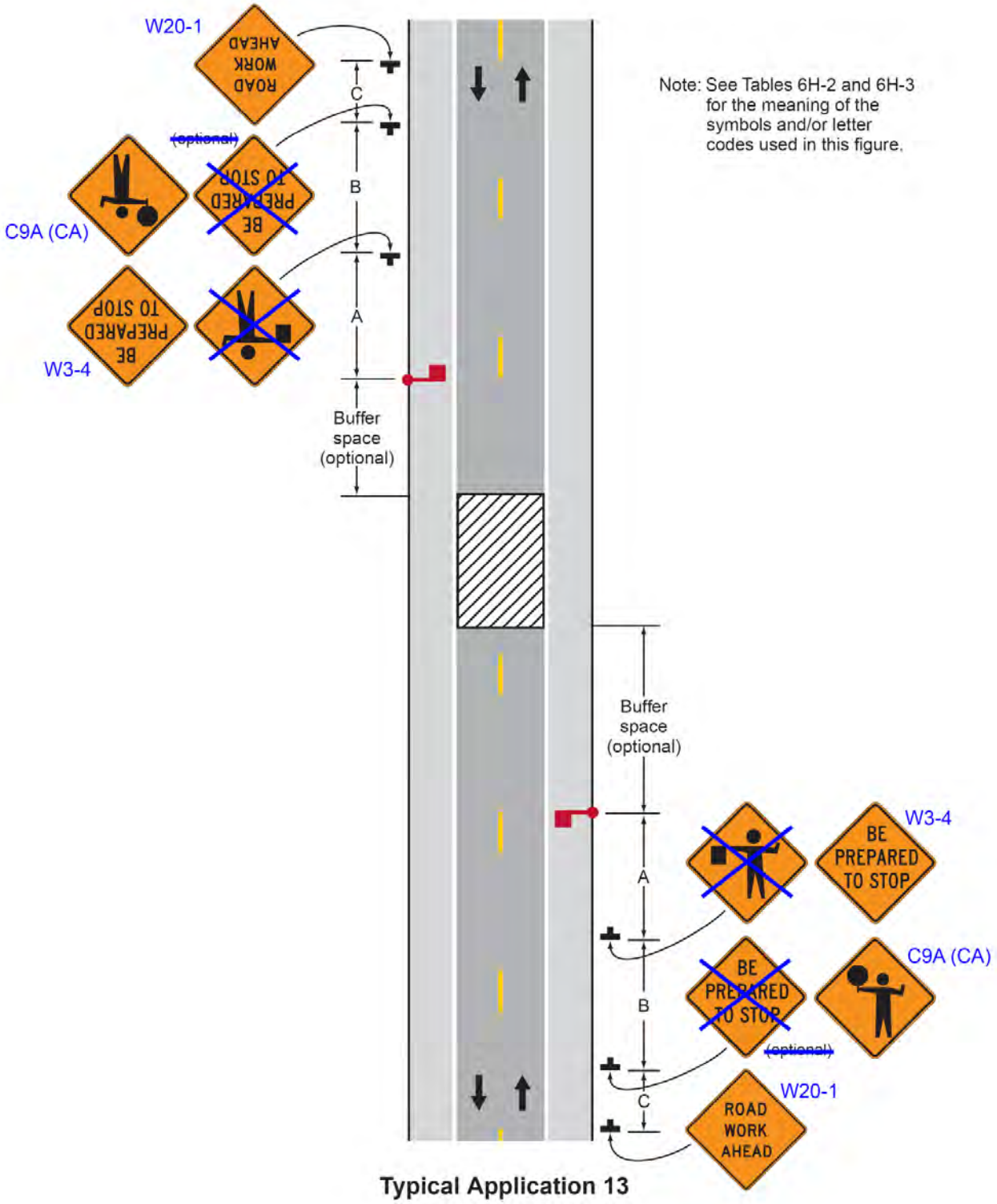
Option:

4. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

5. When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located ~~before~~ after the Flagger symbol sign.

Figure 6H-13. Temporary Road Closure (TA-13)



Typical Application 13

Notes for Figure ~~6H-14~~ 6H-14(CA) —Typical Application 14
Haul Road Crossing

Guidance:

1. Floodlights should be used to illuminate haul road crossings where existing light is inadequate.

2. Where no-passing lines are not already in place, they should be added.

Standard:

3. The traffic control method selected shall be used in both directions.

Flagging Method

4. When a road used exclusively as a haul road is not in use, the haul road shall be closed with Type 3 Barricades and the Flagger symbol signs covered.

5. The flagger shall follow the procedures provided in Sections 6E.07 and 6E.08.

6. At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.

Signalized Method

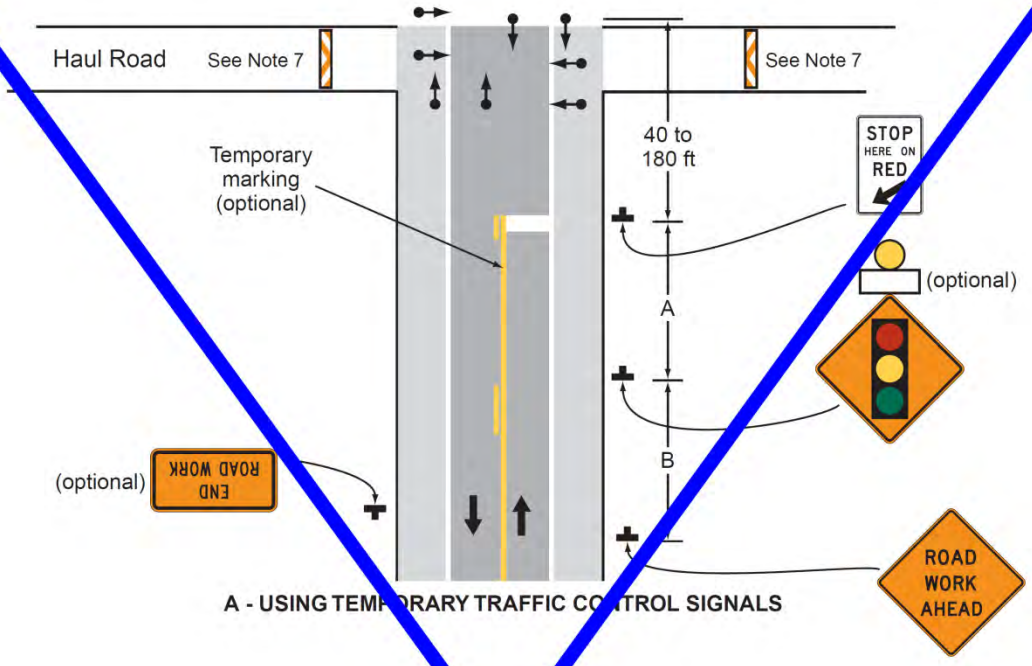
7. When a road used exclusively as a haul road is not in use, the haul road shall be closed with Type 3 Barricades. The signals shall either flash yellow on the main road or be covered, and the Signal Ahead and STOP HERE ON RED signs shall be covered or hidden from view.

8. The temporary traffic control signals shall control both the highway and the haul road and shall meet the physical display and operational requirements of conventional traffic control signals as described in Part 4. Traffic control signal timing shall be established by authorized officials.

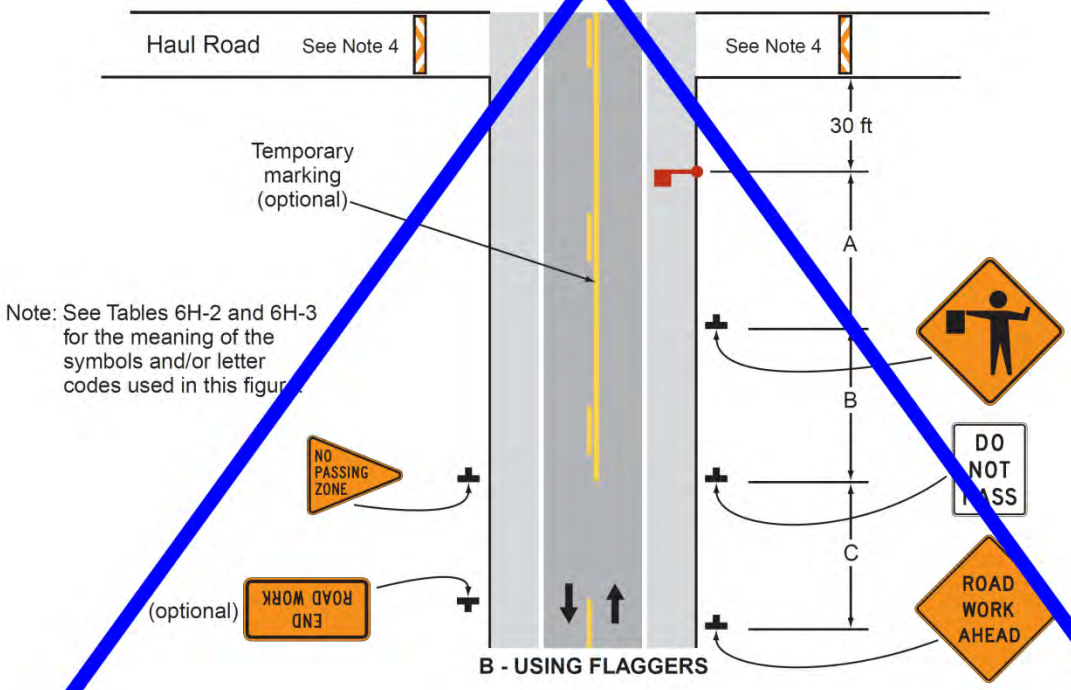
9. Stop lines shall be used on existing highway with temporary traffic control signals.

10. Existing conflicting pavements markings between the stop lines shall be removed. After the temporary traffic control signal is removed, the stop lines and other temporary pavement markings shall be removed and the permanent pavement markings restored.

Figure 6H-14. Haul Road Crossing (TA-14)



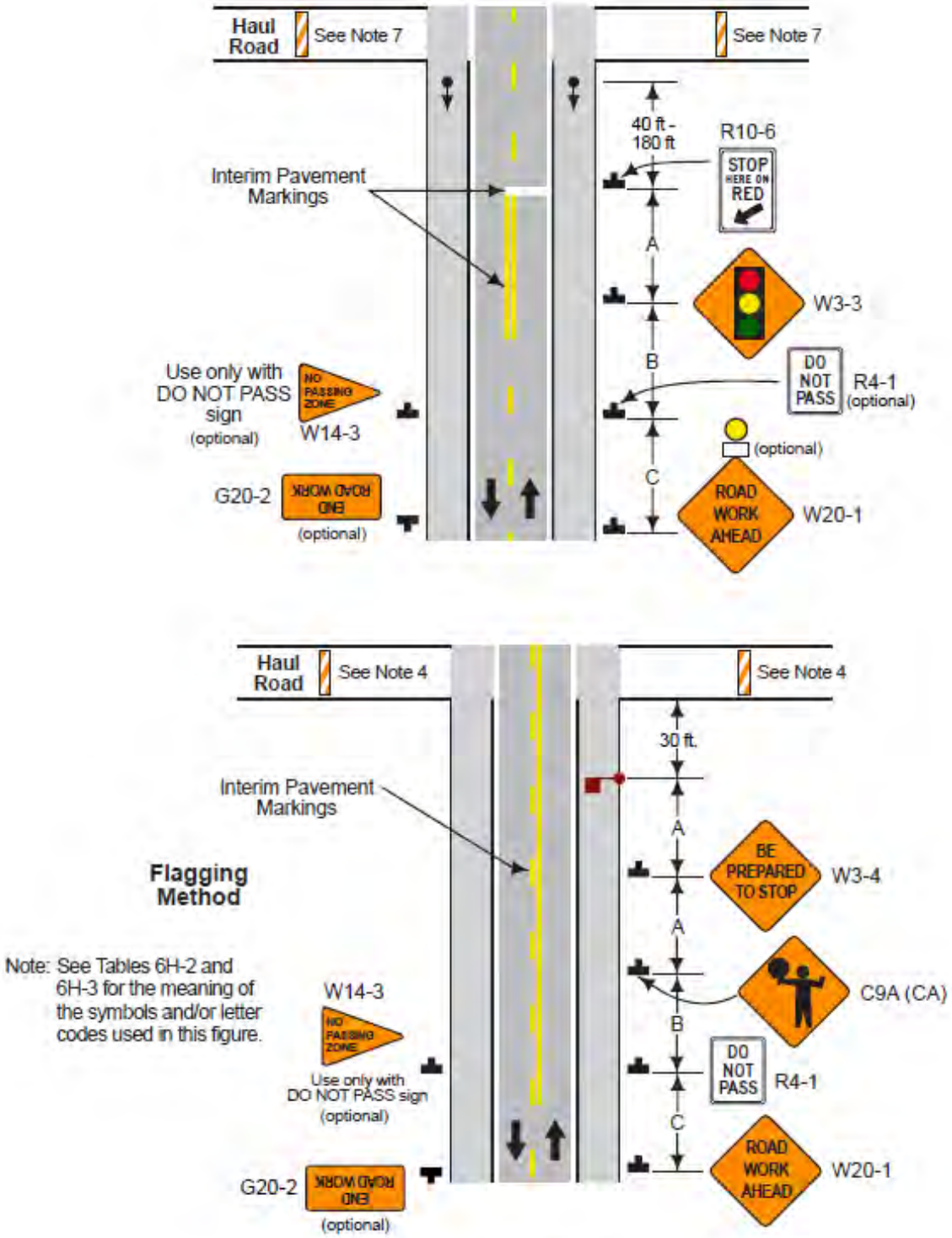
A - USING TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS



B - USING FLAGGERS

Typical Application 14

Figure 6H-14 (CA). Haul Road Crossing (TA-14)



Typical Application 14

Notes for Figure 6H-15—Typical Application 15
Work in the Center of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes
(Refer to Part 5, Section 5A.01)

Guidance:

1. *The lanes on either side of the center work space should have a minimum width of 10 feet as measured from the near edge of the channelizing devices to the edge of the pavement or the outside edge of the paved shoulder.*

Option:

2. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
3. If the closure continues overnight, warning lights may be used on the channelizing devices.
4. A lane width of 9 feet may be used for short-term stationary work on low-volume, low-speed roadways when motor vehicle traffic does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles.
5. A work vehicle displaying high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights may be used instead of the channelizing devices forming the tapers or the high-level warning devices.
6. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

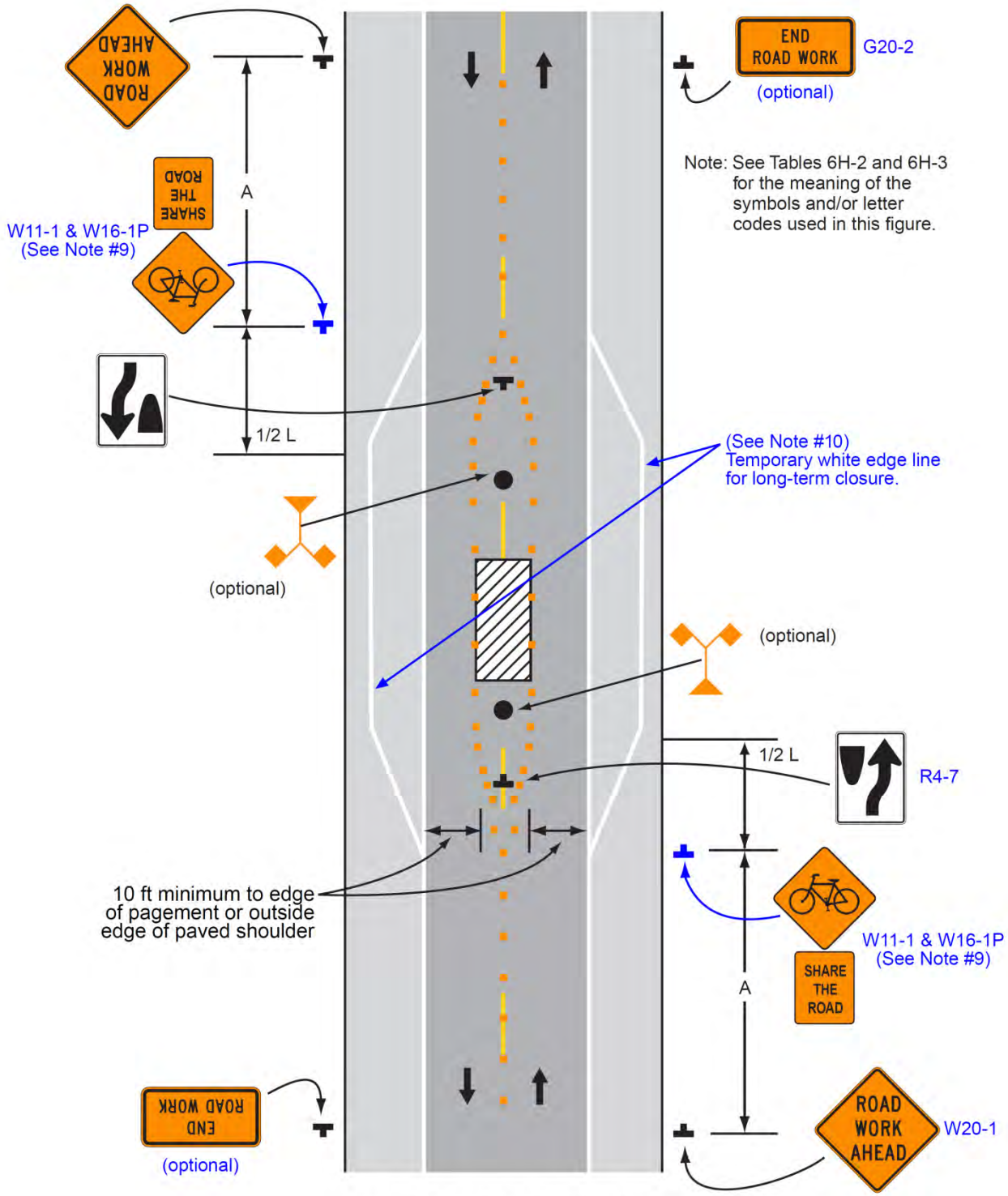
Standard:

7. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Guidance:

8. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked while maintaining visibility for road users.*
9. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02) and the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, the Bicycle Crossing (W11-1) sign and the SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be used to advise motorists of the presence of bicyclists in the travel way lanes.*
10. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02), the temporary white edge line should be used on the shoulder to indicate the use of a portion of the shoulder as a traveled way lane.*

Figure 6H-15. Work in Center of Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-15)



Typical Application 15

Notes for Figure 6H-16—Typical Application 16
Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes
(Refer to Part 5, Section 5A.01)

Guidance:

1. *The lanes on either side of the center work space should have a minimum width of 10 feet as measured from the near edge of the channelizing devices to the edge of the pavement or the outside edge of the paved shoulder.*
2. *Cones should be placed 6 to 12 inches on either side of the center line.*
3. *A flagger should be used to warn workers who cannot watch road users.*

Standard:

4. **For surveying on the center line of a high-volume road, one lane shall be closed using the information illustrated in Figure ~~6H-10~~ 6H-10(CA).**

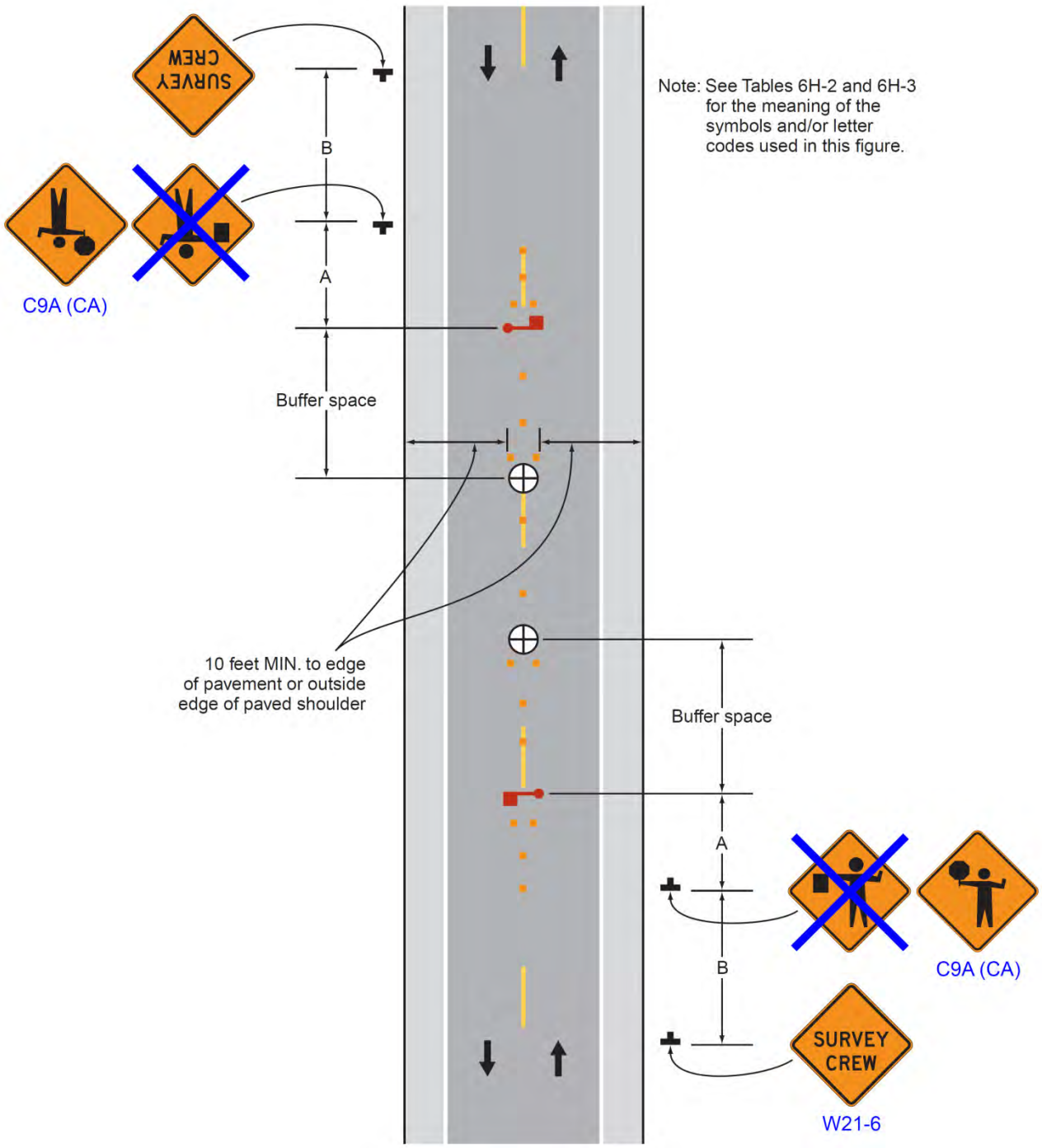
Option:

5. A high-level warning device may be used to protect a surveying device, such as a target on a tripod.
6. Cones may be omitted for a cross-section survey.
7. ROAD WORK AHEAD signs may be used in place of the SURVEY CREW AHEAD signs.
8. Flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
9. If the work is along the shoulder, the flagger may be omitted.
10. For a survey along the edge of the road or along the shoulder, cones may be placed along the edge line.
11. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

12. *When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located ~~before~~ after the Flagger symbol sign.*

Figure 6H-16. Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-16)



Typical Application 16

Notes for Figure 6H-17—Typical Application 17
Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road

Standard:

1. Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.

2. Shadow and work vehicles shall display high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

3. If an arrow board is used, it shall be used in the caution mode.

Guidance:

4. Where practical and when needed, the work and shadow vehicles should pull over periodically to allow vehicular traffic to pass.

5. Whenever adequate stopping sight distance exists to the rear, the shadow vehicle should maintain the minimum distance from the work vehicle and proceed at the same speed. The shadow vehicle should slow down in advance of vertical or horizontal curves that restrict sight distance.

6. The shadow vehicles should also be equipped with two high-intensity flashing lights mounted on the rear, adjacent to the sign.

Option:

7. The distance between the work and shadow vehicles may vary according to terrain, paint drying time, and other factors.

8. Additional shadow vehicles to warn and reduce the speed of oncoming or opposing vehicular traffic may be used. Law enforcement vehicles may be used for this purpose.

9. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the shadow vehicle or on the work vehicle.

10. If the work and shadow vehicles cannot pull over to allow vehicular traffic to pass frequently, a DO NOT PASS sign may be placed on the rear of the vehicle blocking the lane.

Support:

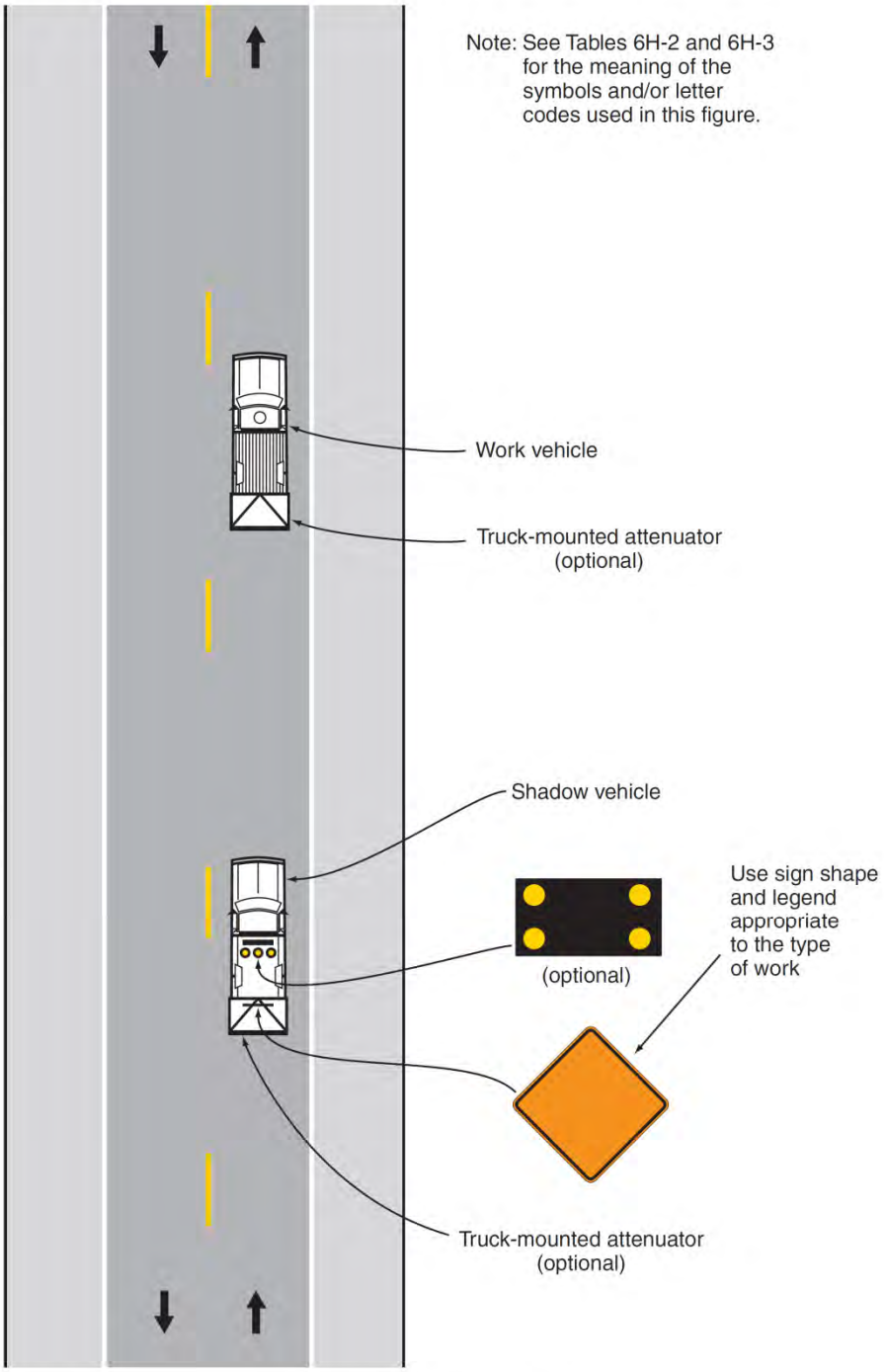
11. Shadow vehicles are used to warn motor vehicle traffic of the operation ahead.

Standard:

12. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

13. This typical application shall not be used on State highways, Caltrans' Standard Plan T17 for moving lane closure shall be used instead. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Figure 6H-17. Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road (TA-17)



Typical Application 17

Notes for Figure 6H-18—Typical Application 18
Lane Closure on a Minor Street

Standard:

1. This TTC shall be used only for low-speed facilities having low traffic volumes (Refer to Part 5, Section 5A.01).

Option:

2. Where the work space is short, where road users can see the roadway beyond, and where volume is low, vehicular traffic may be self-regulating.

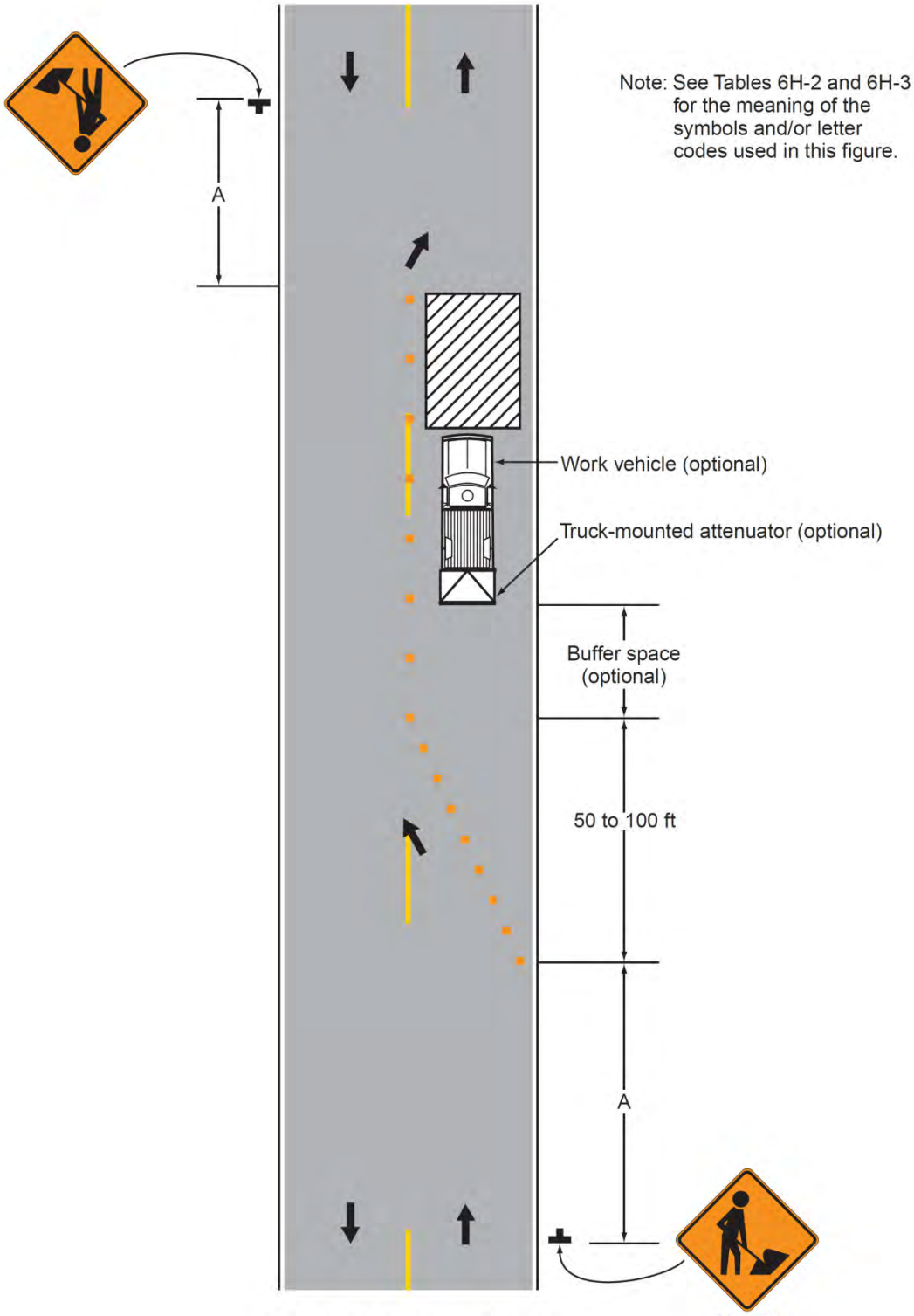
Standard:

3. Where vehicular traffic cannot effectively self-regulate, one or two flaggers shall be used as illustrated in Figure ~~6H-10~~ 6H-10(CA).

Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the work vehicle and the shadow vehicle.

Figure 6H-18. Lane Closure on a Minor Street (TA-18)



Typical Application 18

Notes for Figure 6H-19—Typical Application 19
Detour for One Travel Direction

Guidance:

1. This plan should be used for streets without posted route numbers.

2. On multi-lane streets, Detour signs with an Advance Turn Arrow should be used in advance of a turn.

Option:

3. The STREET CLOSED legend may be used in place of ROAD CLOSED.
4. Additional DO NOT ENTER signs may be used at intersections with intervening streets.
5. Warning lights may be used on Type 3 Barricades.
6. Detour signs may be located on the far side of intersections.
7. A Street Name sign may be mounted with the Detour sign. The Street Name sign may be either white on green or black on orange.

Standard:

8. When used, the Street Name sign shall be placed above the Detour sign.

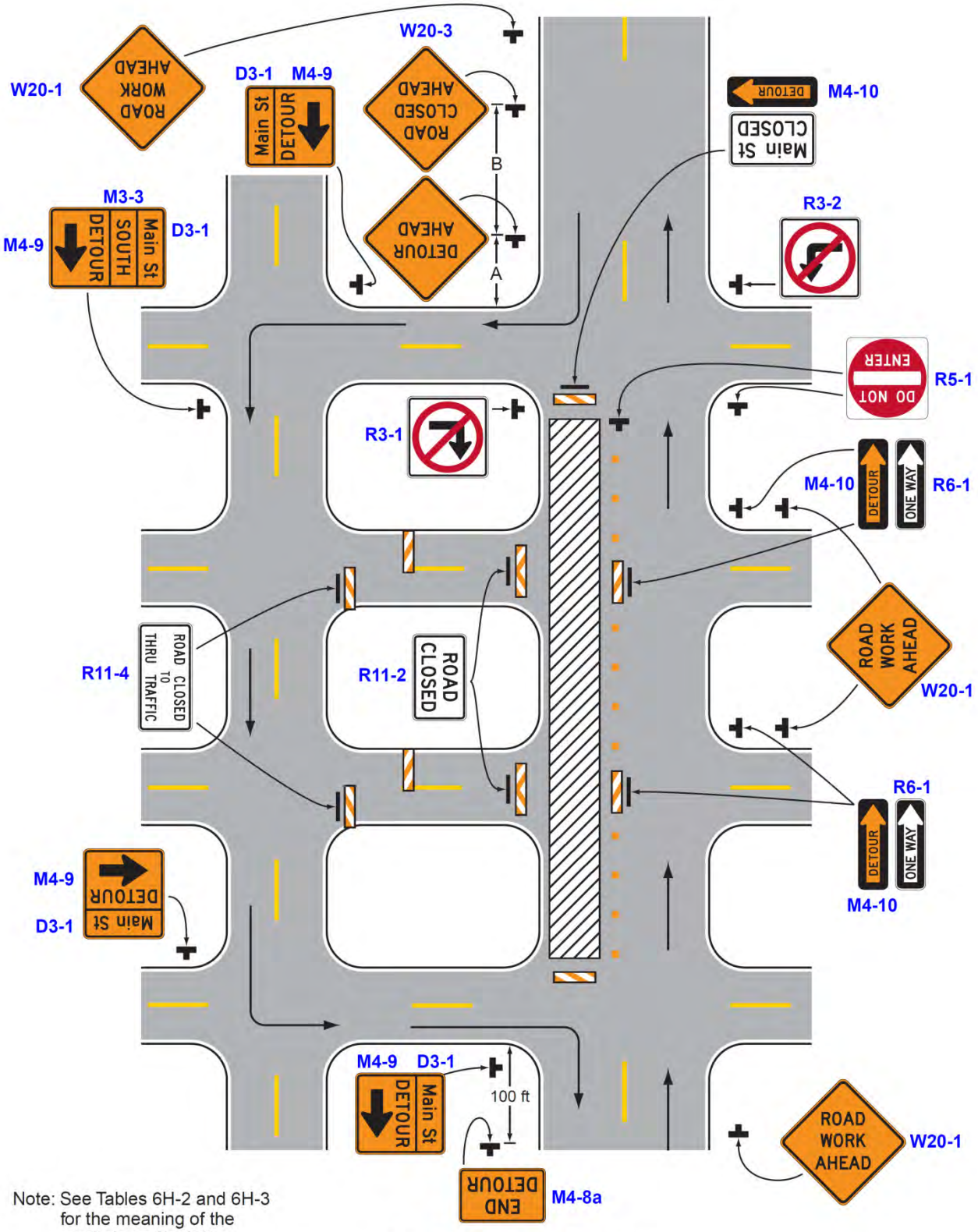
Guidance:

9. The DETOUR (M4-8) sign should be placed on tangent sections at intervals not to exceed 1300 feet and at major intersections.

Option:

10. In urban areas, the M4-8 signs may be placed at every intersection.

Figure 6H-19. Detour for One Travel Direction (TA-19)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 19

Notes for Figure 6H-20—Typical Application 20
Detour for a Closed Street

Guidance:

1. This plan should be used for streets without posted route numbers.

2. On multi-lane streets, Detour signs with an Advance Turn Arrow should be used in advance of a turn.

Option:

3. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
4. Flashing warning lights may be used on Type 3 Barricades.
5. Detour signs may be located on the far side of intersections. A Detour sign with an advance arrow may be used in advance of a turn.
6. A Street Name sign may be mounted with the Detour sign. The Street Name sign may be either white on green or black on orange.

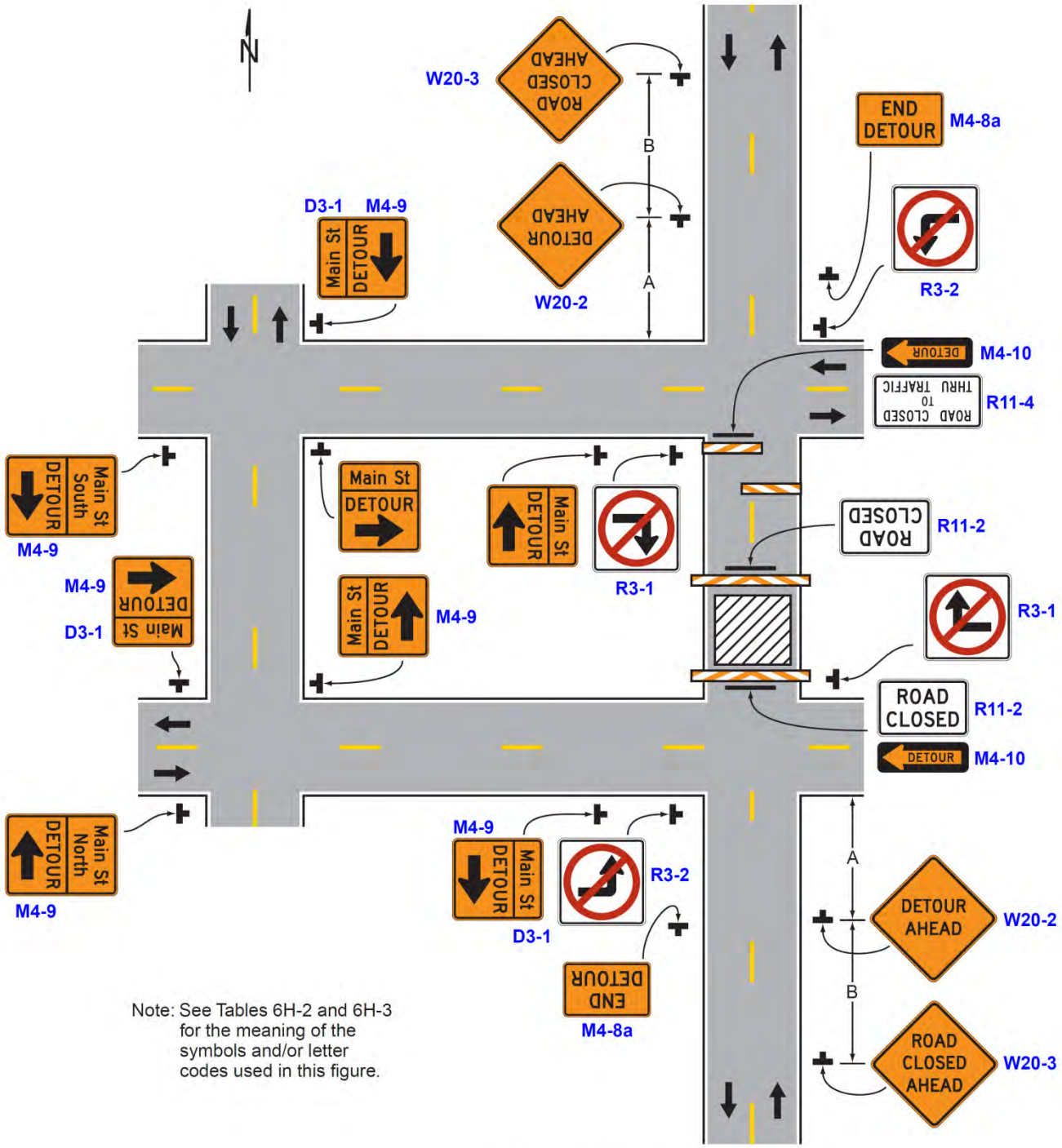
Standard:

7. When used, the Street Name sign shall be placed above the Detour sign.

Support:

8. See Figure 6H-9 for the information for detouring a numbered highway.

Figure 6H-20. Detour for a Closed Street (TA-20)



Typical Application 20

Notes for Figure 6H-21—Typical Application 21
Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection

Standard:

1. The merging taper shall direct vehicular traffic into either the right-hand or left-hand lane, but not both.

Guidance:

2. In this typical application, a left taper should be used so that right-turn movements will not impede through motor vehicle traffic. However, the reverse should be true for left-turn movements.

3. If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.

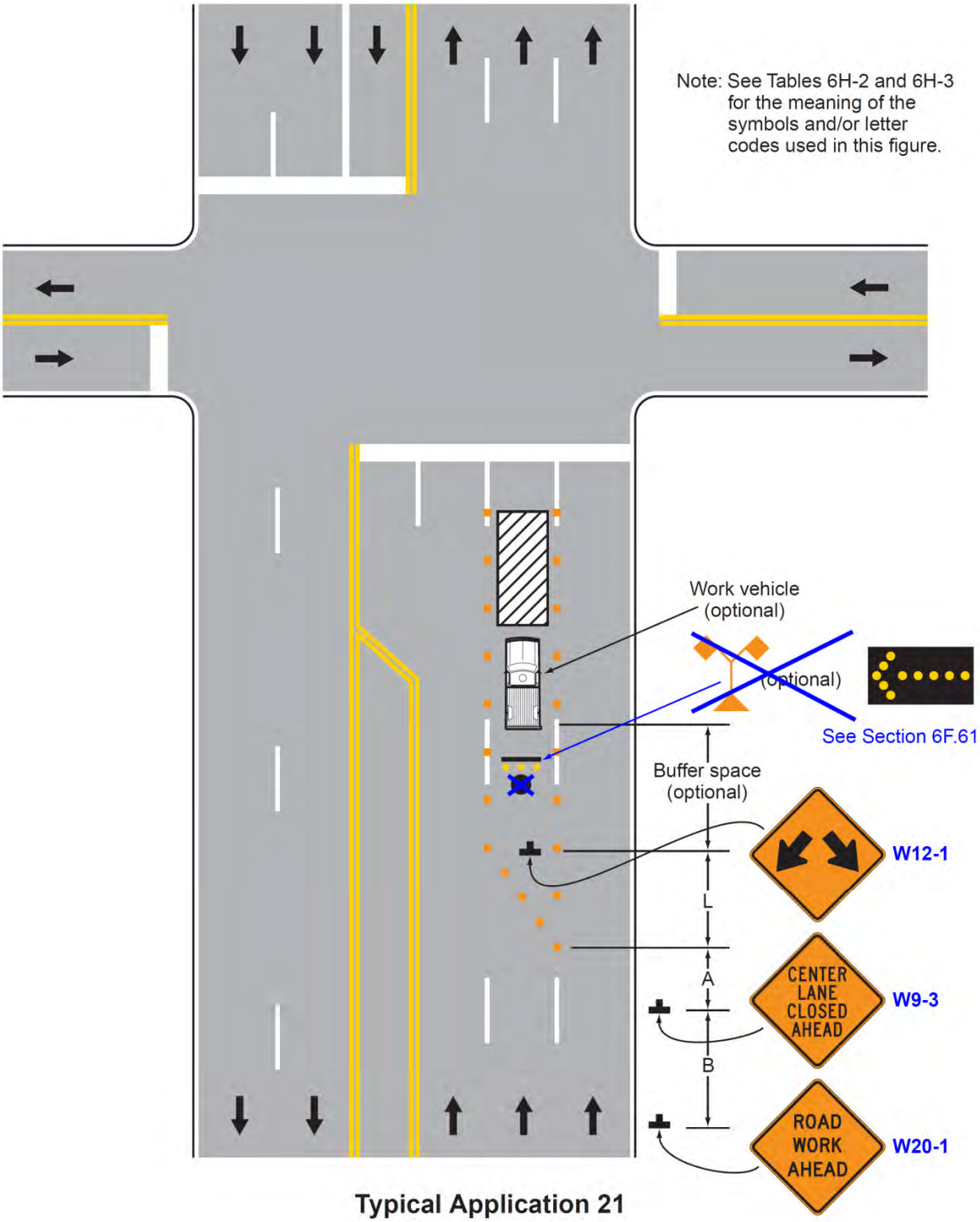
Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. A shadow vehicle with a truck-mounted attenuator may be used.
6. A work vehicle with high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights may be used with the ~~high-level warning device~~ arrow board.
7. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

8. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Figure 6H-21. Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection (TA-21)



Typical Application 21

Notes for Figure 6H-22, 6H-22A(CA) and 6H-22B(CA) —Typical Application 22 Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*

Option:

2. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection. However, when this results in the closure of a right-hand lane having significant right turning movements, then the right-hand lane may be restricted to right turns only, as shown. This procedure increases the through capacity by eliminating right turns from the open through lane.
3. For intersection approaches reduced to a single lane, left-turning movements may be prohibited to maintain capacity for through vehicular traffic.
4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. Where the turning radius is large, it may be possible to create a right-turn island using channelizing devices or pavement markings.
6. See Figure 3B-14(CA) Page 3 of 3 for lane reduction markings. See Section 2C.40 for merge signs.

Support:

7. Figure 6H-22 is appropriate for short-term and intermediate-term duration where it is not appropriate to install temporary markings.
8. Figure 6H-22A(CA) is appropriate for long-term duration.
9. Figure 6H-22B(CA) is appropriate to avoid through movements from the right lane by first closing the right lane and then reopening it as a turn bay.

Figure 6H-22. Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-22)

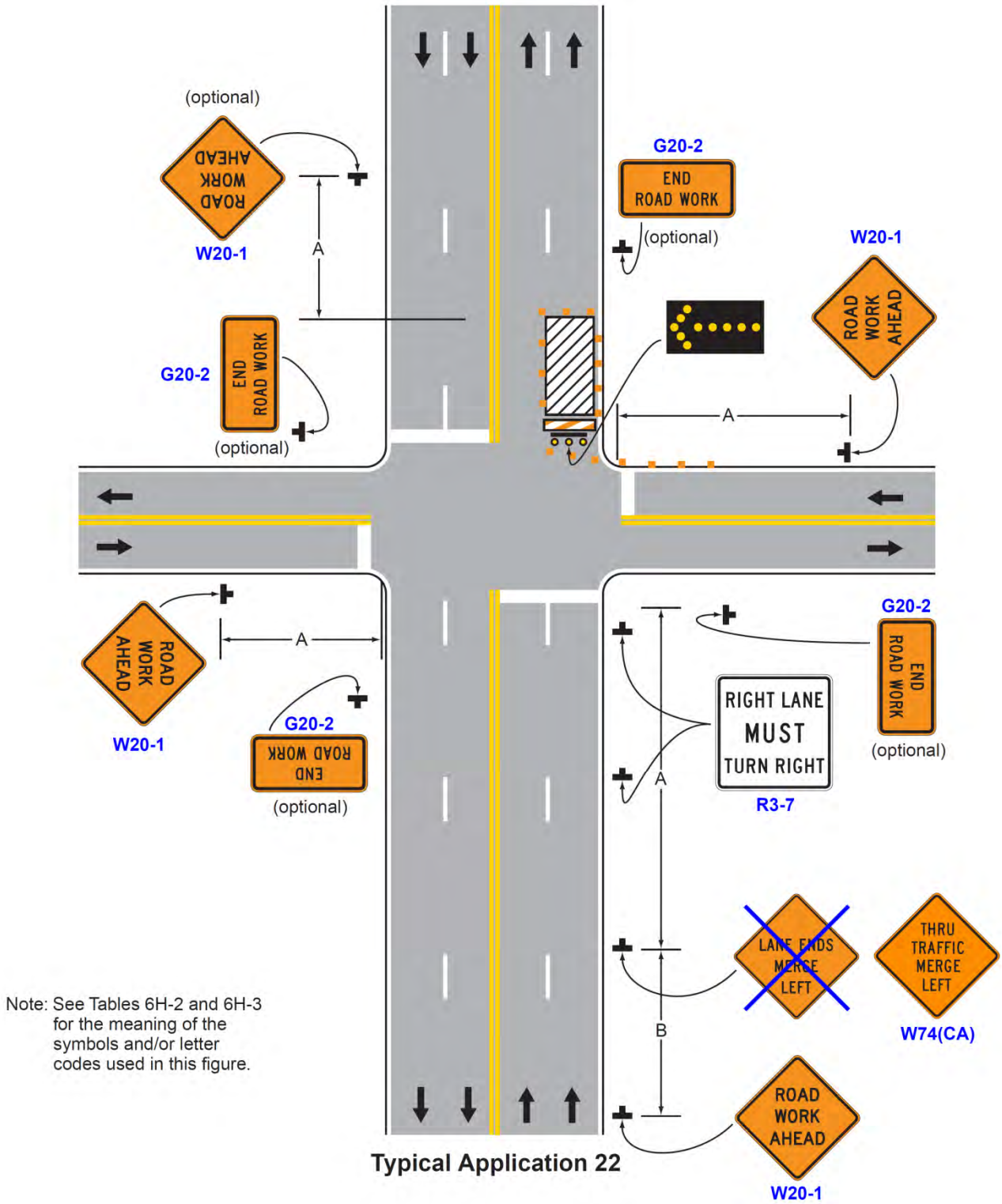
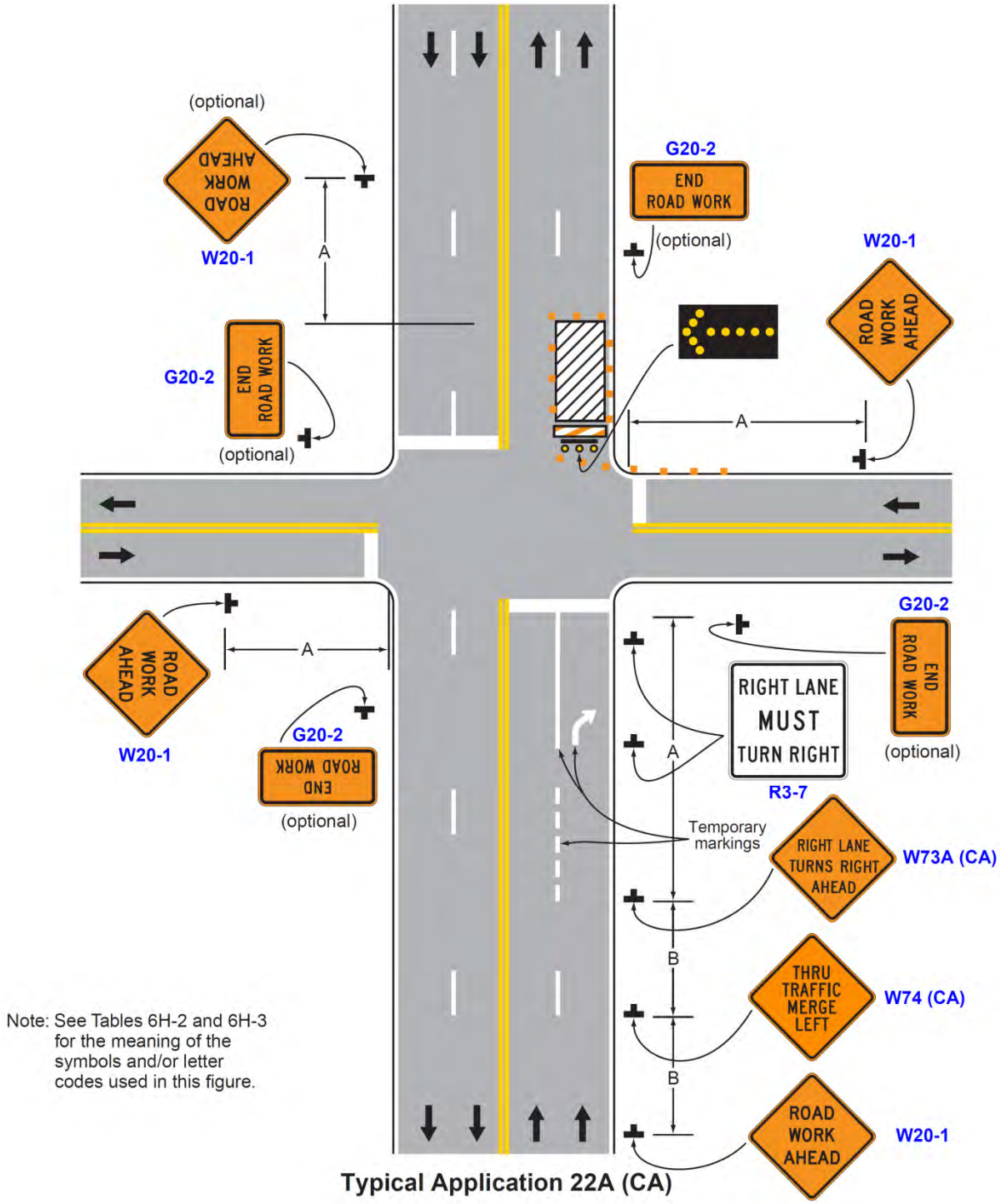
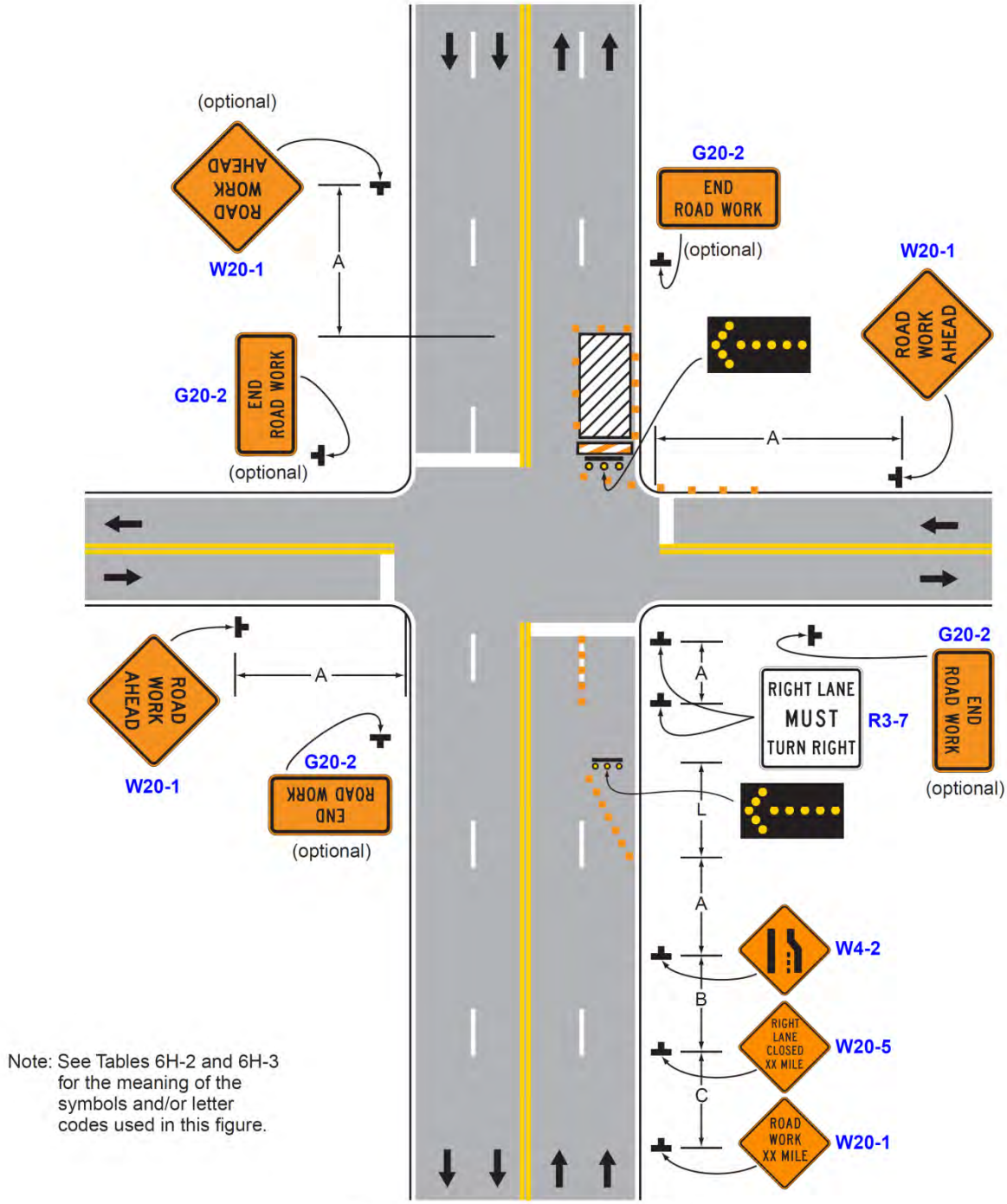


Figure 6H-22A(CA). Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-22A (CA))



Typical Application 22A (CA)

Figure 6H-22B(CA). Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-22B (CA))



Typical Application 22B (CA)

Notes for Figure 6H-23—Typical Application 23
Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*

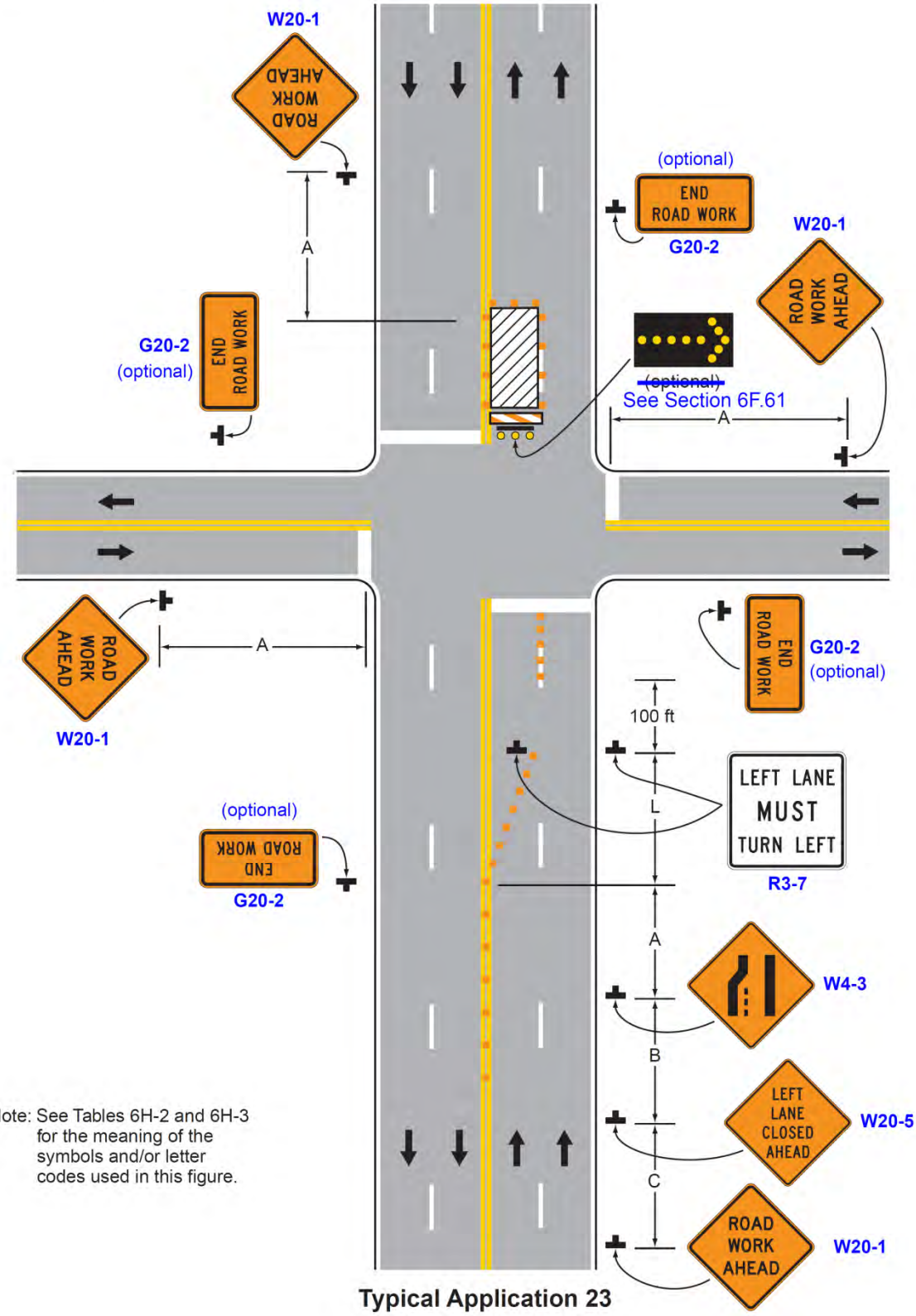
Option:

2. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
3. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection. However, when this results in the closure of a left lane having significant left-turning movements, then the left lane may be reopened as a turn bay for left turns only, as shown.

Support:

4. By first closing off the left lane and then reopening it as a turn bay, the left-turn bay allows storage of turning vehicles so that the movement of through traffic is not impeded. A left-turn bay that is long enough to accommodate all turning vehicles during a traffic signal cycle will provide the maximum benefit for through traffic. Also, an island is created with channelizing devices that allows the LEFT LANE MUST TURN LEFT sign to be repeated on the left adjacent to the lane that it controls.

Figure 6H-23. Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-23)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 23

Notes for Figure 6H-24 and 6H-24A(CA) —Typical Application 24
Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*
2. *When turn prohibitions are implemented, two turn prohibition signs should be used, one on the near side and, space permitting, one on the far side of the intersection.*

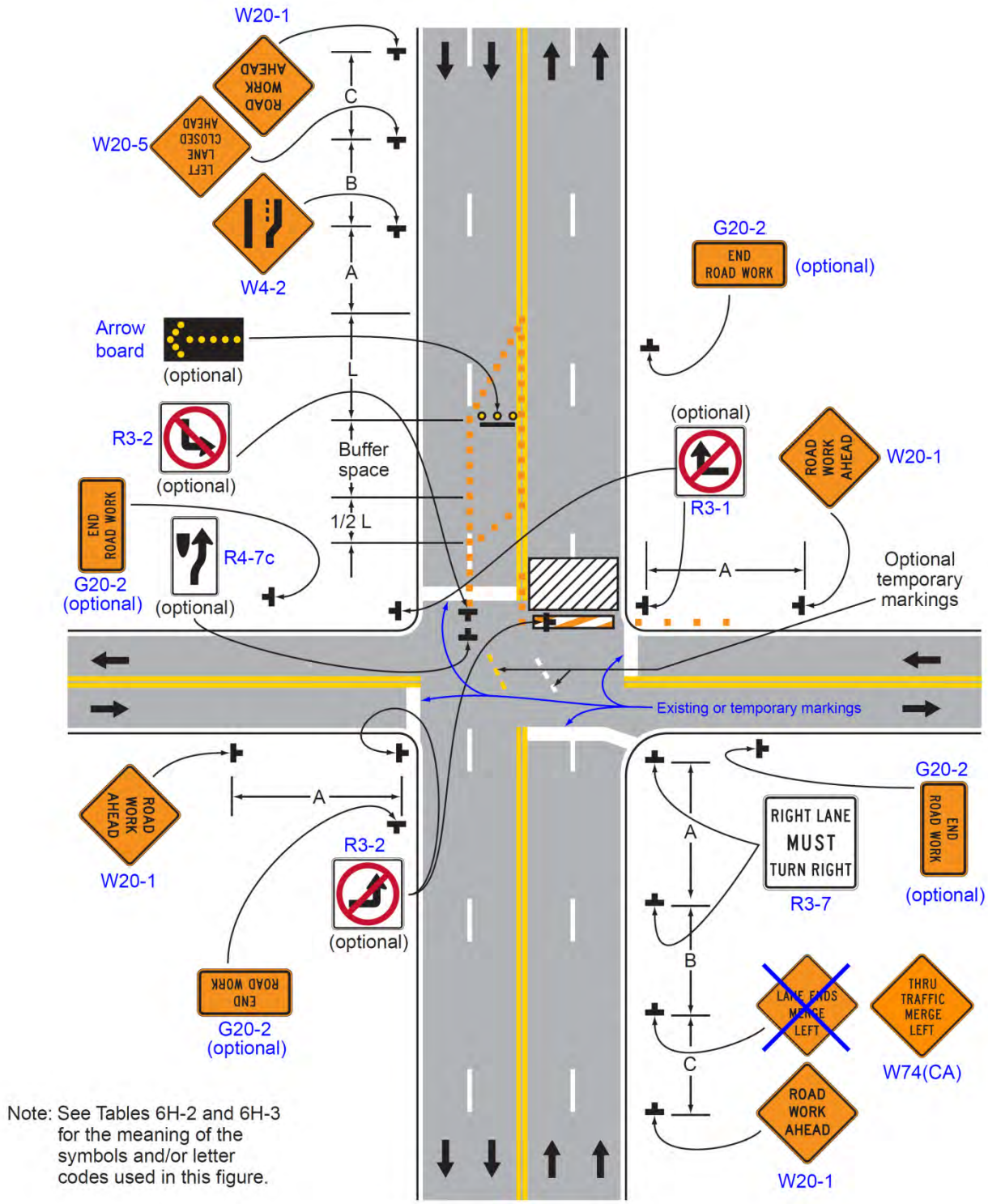
Option:

3. A buffer space may be used between opposing directions of vehicular traffic as shown in this application.
4. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection. However, if there is a significant right-turning movement, then the right-hand lane may be restricted to right turns only, as shown.
5. Where the turning radius is large, a right-turn island using channelizing devices or pavement markings may be used.
6. There may be insufficient space to place the back-to-back Keep Right sign and No Left Turn symbol signs at the end of the row of channelizing devices separating opposing vehicular traffic flows. In this situation, the No Left Turn symbol sign may be placed on the right and the Keep Right sign may be omitted.
7. For intersection approaches reduced to a single lane, left-turning movements may be prohibited to maintain capacity for through vehicular traffic.
8. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to advance warning signs.
9. Temporary pavement markings may be used to delineate the travel path through the intersection.

Support:

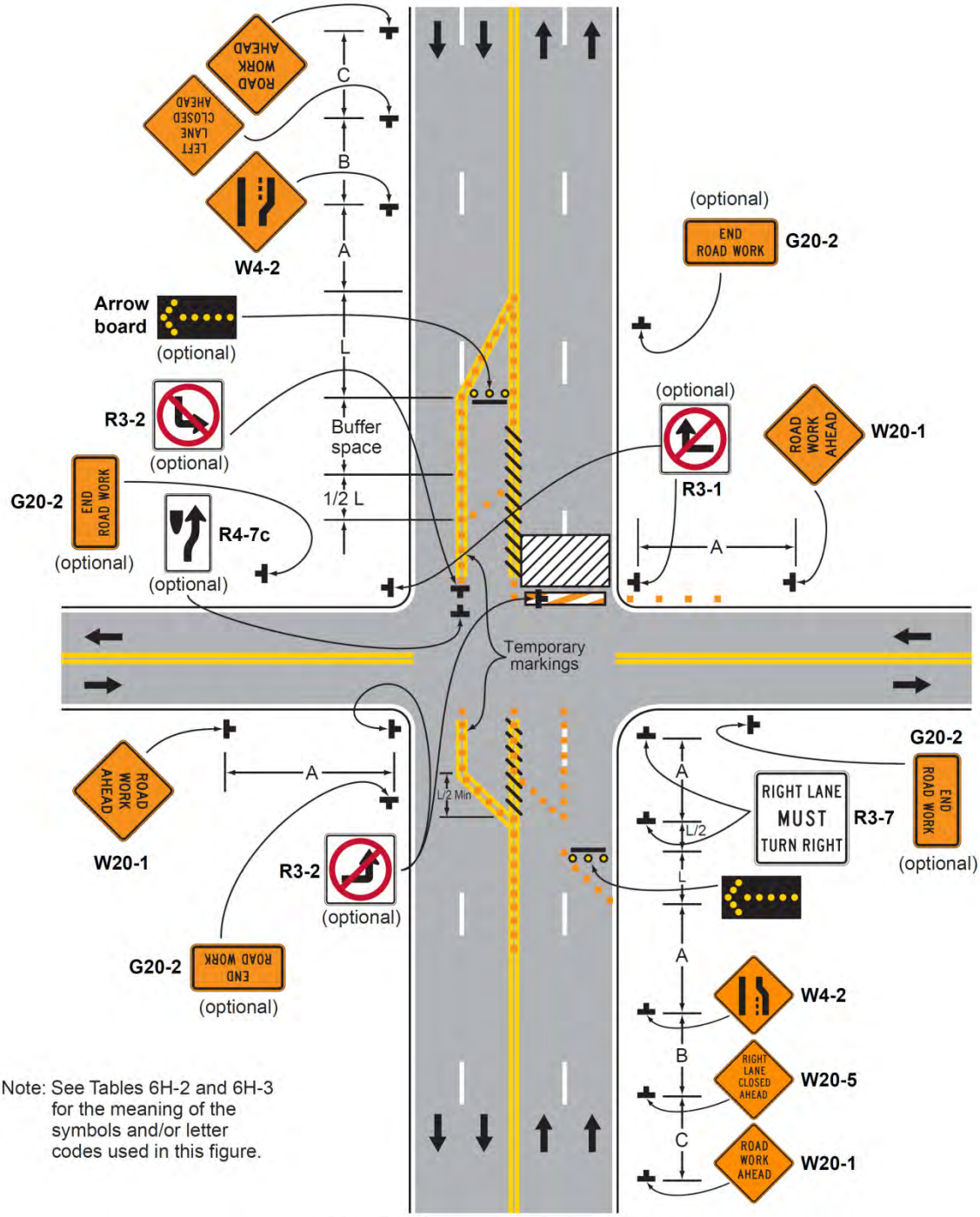
10. Keeping the right-hand lane open increases the through capacity by eliminating right turns from the open through lane.
11. A temporary turn island reinforces the nature of the temporary exclusive right-turn lane and enables a second RIGHT LANE MUST TURN RIGHT sign to be placed in the island.
12. Figure 6H-24 is appropriate for situations where the approach is stop-controlled (Stop sign and/or red flashing beacons) due to the abrupt transition through the intersection.
13. Figure 6H-24A(CA) is appropriate for situations where the approach is uncontrolled or controlled by traffic signals.

Figure 6H-24. Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-24)



Typical Application 24

Figure 6H-24A (CA). Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-24A(CA))



Typical Application 24A (CA)

Notes for Figure 6H-25 and 6H-25A(CA) —Typical Application 25 Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*
2. *If the left through lane is closed on the near-side approach, the LEFT LANE MUST TURN LEFT sign should be placed in the median to discourage through vehicular traffic from entering the left-turn bay.*

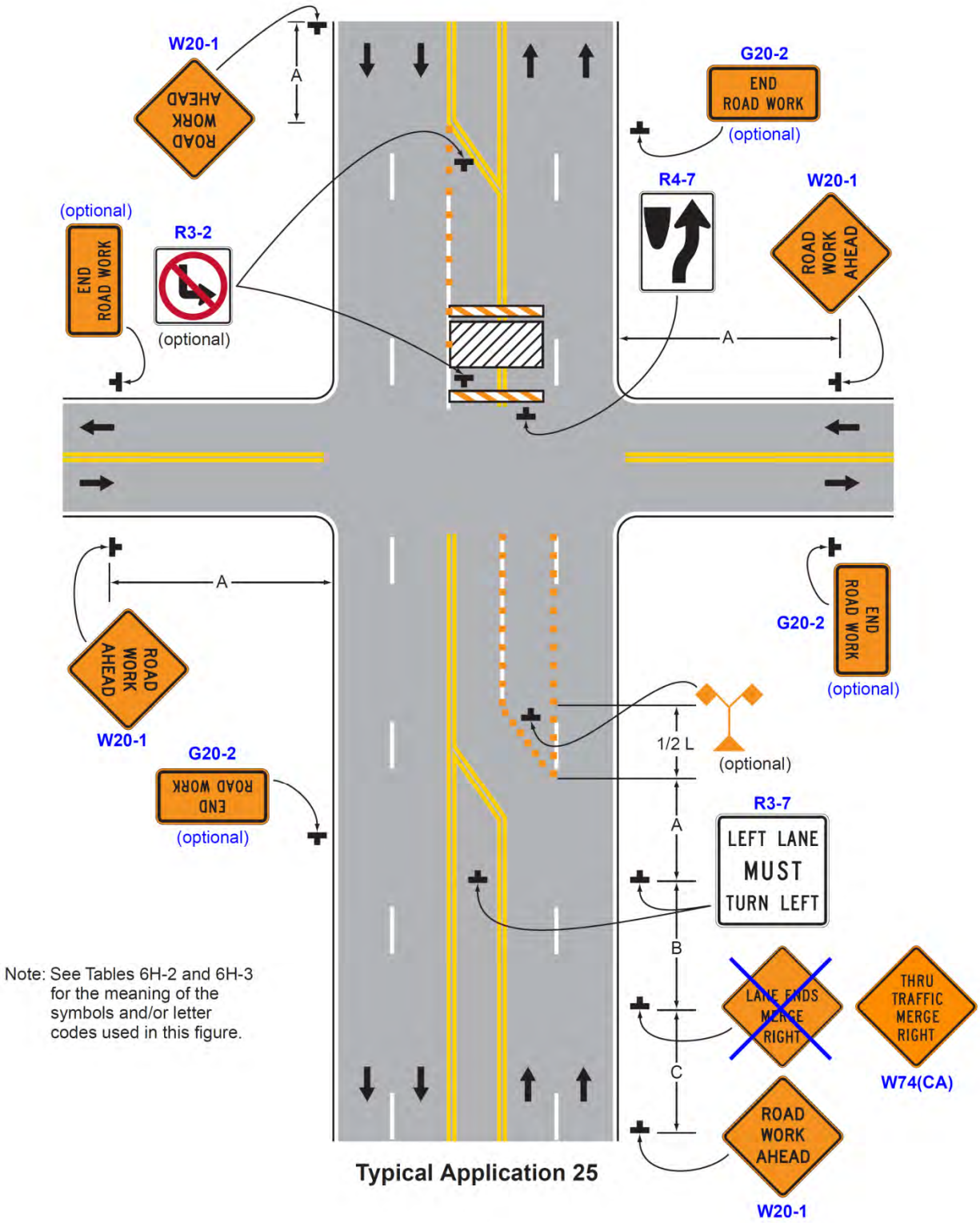
Support:

3. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection (see Figure 6H-25A(CA)).

Option:

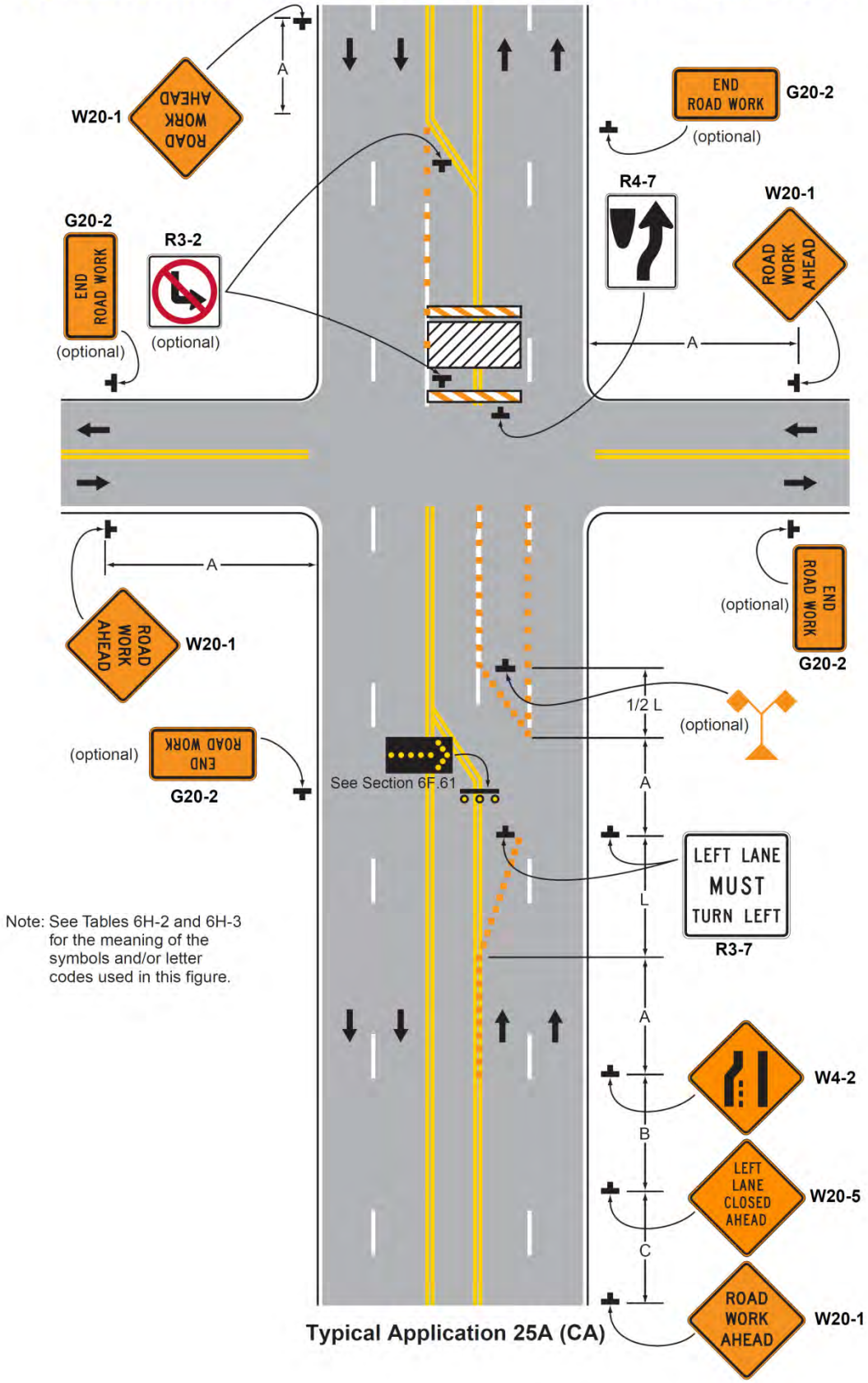
4. If the left-turning movement that normally uses the closed turn bay is small and/or the gaps in opposing vehicular traffic are frequent, left turns may be permitted on that approach.
5. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.

Figure 6H-25. Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection (TA-25)



Typical Application 25

Figure 6H-25A (CA). Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection (TA-25A(CA))



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Notes for Figure 6H-26—Typical Application 26
Closure in the Center of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. All lanes should be a minimum of 10 feet in width as measured to the near face of the channelizing devices.

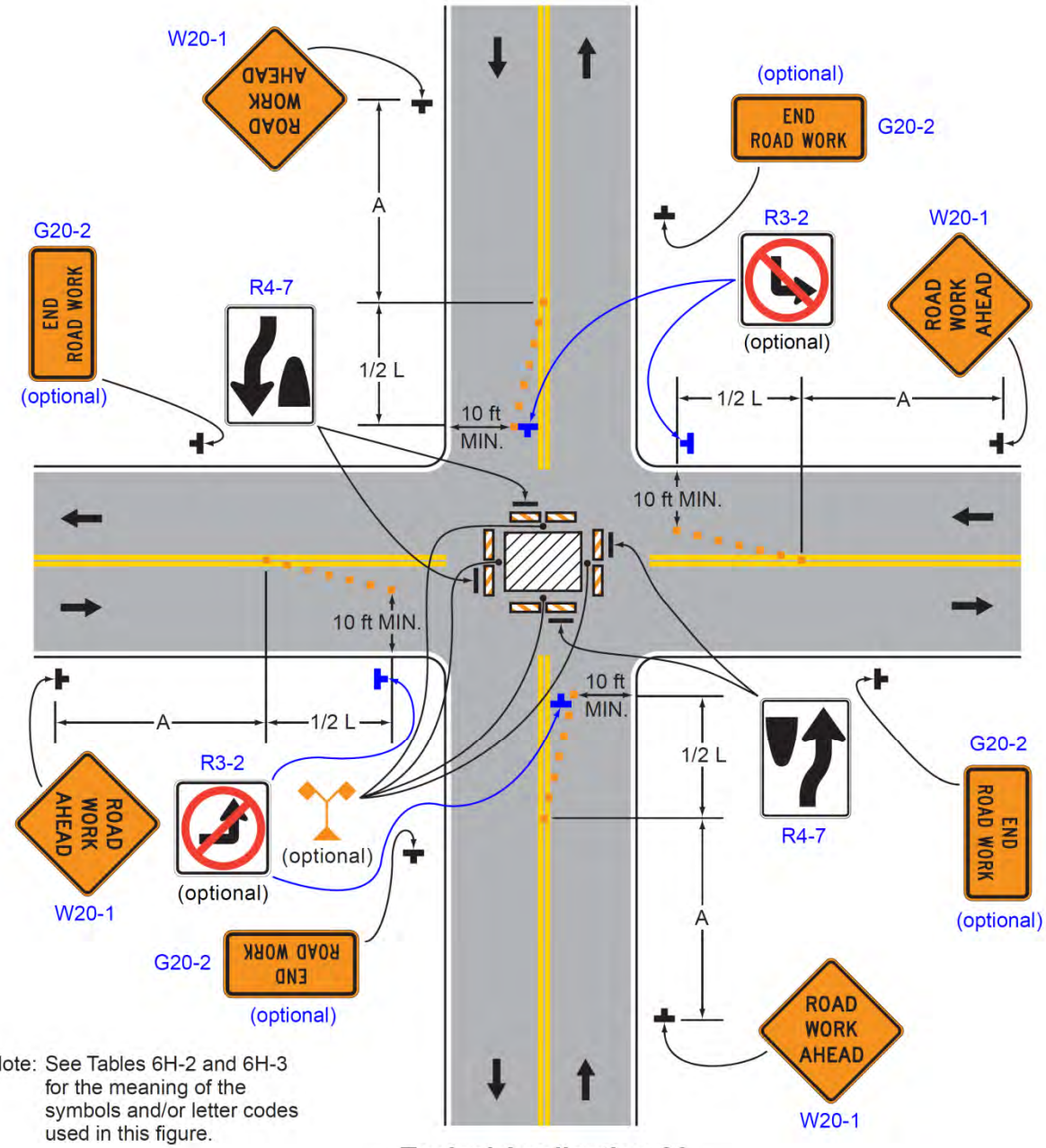
Option:

2. A high-level warning device may be placed in the work space, if there is sufficient room.
3. For short-term use on low-volume, low-speed roadways with vehicular traffic that does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles, a minimum lane width of 9 feet may be used.
4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to advance warning signs.
5. Unless the streets are wide, it may be physically impossible to turn left, especially for large vehicles. Left turns may be prohibited as required by geometric conditions. If used, No Left Turn (R3-2) signs may be placed on left side of approaching traffic. If space is limited, the R3-2 signs may be placed on right side of approaching traffic.
6. For short-duration work operations, the channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle displaying high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is positioned in the work space.
7. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

8. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Figure 6H-26. Closure in the Center of an Intersection (TA-26)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 26

Notes for Figure 6H-27—Typical Application 27
Closure at the Side of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. The situation depicted can be simplified by closing one or more of the intersection approaches. If this cannot be done, and/or when capacity is a problem, through vehicular traffic should be directed to other roads or streets.

2. Depending on road user conditions, flagger(s) or uniformed law enforcement officer(s) should be used to direct road users within the intersection.

Standard:

3. At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.

Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.

5. For short-duration work operations, the channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle displaying high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is positioned in the work space.

6. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

7. When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located ~~before~~ after the Flagger symbol sign.

8. ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD signs should also be used to provide adequate advance warning.

Support:

9. Turns can be prohibited as required by vehicular traffic conditions. Unless the streets are wide, it might be physically impossible to make certain turns, especially for large vehicles.

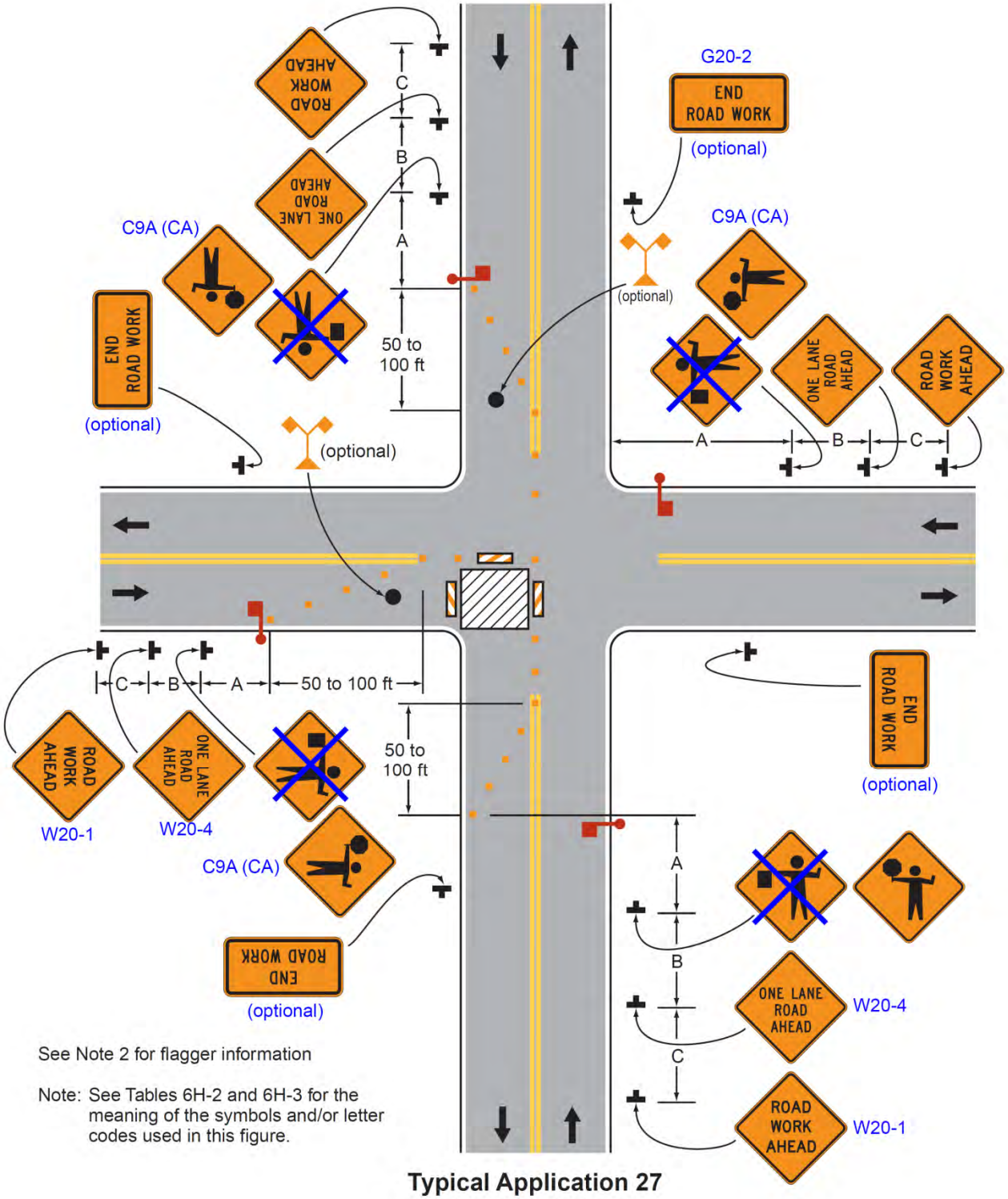
Option:

10. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

11. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Figure 6H-27. Closure at the Side of an Intersection (TA-27)



See Note 2 for flagger information

Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 27

Notes for Figure 6H-28—Typical Application 28
Sidewalk Detour or Diversion

Standard:

1. **When crosswalks or other pedestrian facilities are closed or relocated, temporary facilities shall be detectable and shall include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility.**

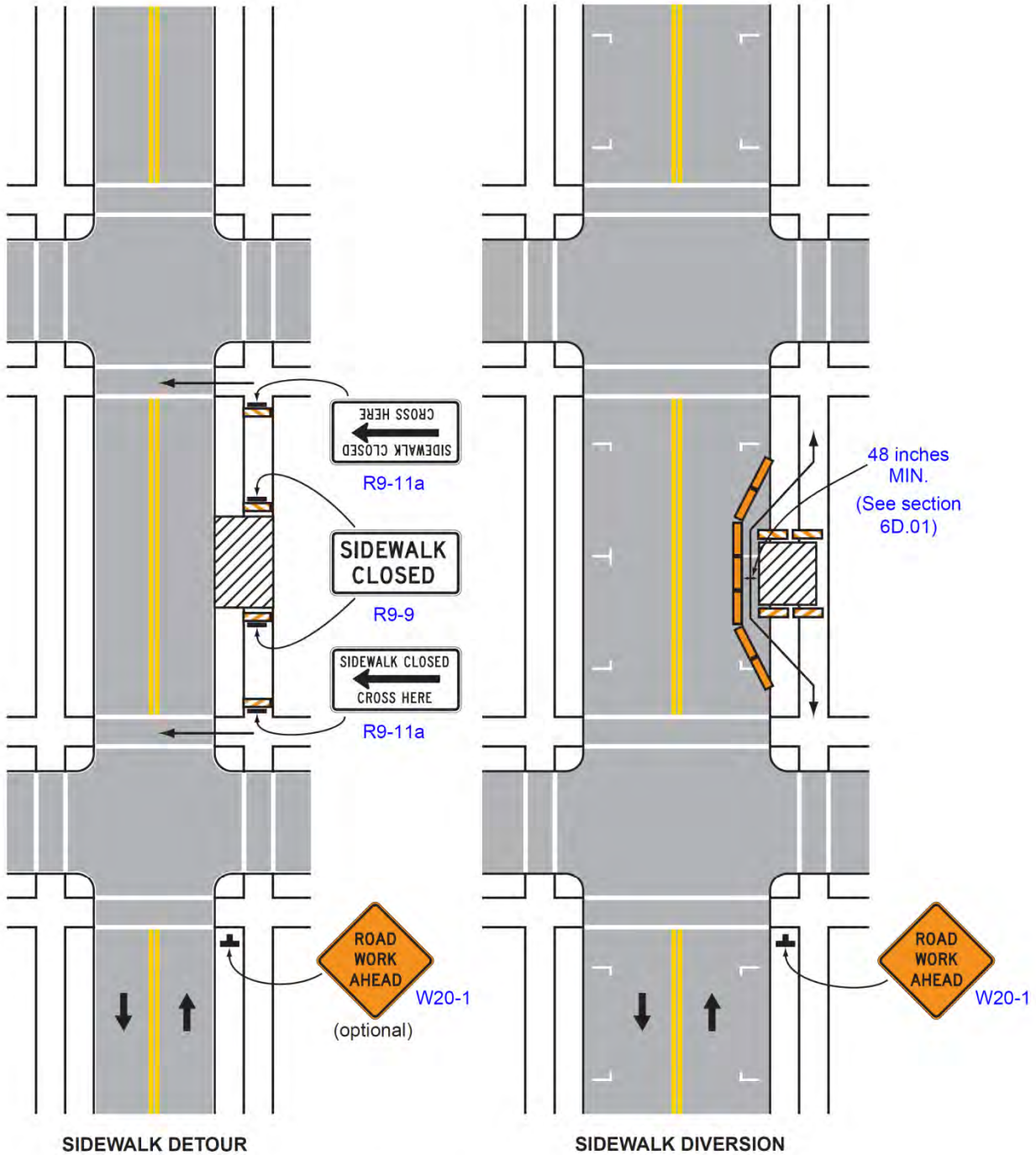
Guidance:

2. *Where high speeds are anticipated, a temporary traffic barrier and, if necessary, a crash cushion should be used to separate the temporary sidewalks from vehicular traffic.*
3. *Audible information devices should be considered where midblock closings and changed crosswalk areas cause inadequate communication to be provided to pedestrians who have visual disabilities.*

Option:

4. Street lighting may be considered.
5. Only the TTC devices related to pedestrians are shown. Other devices, such as lane closure signing or ROAD NARROWS signs, may be used to control vehicular traffic.
6. For nighttime closures, Type A Flashing warning lights may be used on barricades that support signs and close sidewalks.
7. Type C Steady-Burn or Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights may be used on channelizing devices separating the temporary sidewalks from vehicular traffic flow.
8. Signs, such as KEEP RIGHT (LEFT), may be placed along a temporary sidewalk to guide or direct pedestrians.

Figure 6H-28. Sidewalk Detour or Diversion (TA-28)



Typical Application 28

Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Notes for Figure 6H-29—Typical Application 29
Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours

Standard:

1. When crosswalks or other pedestrian facilities are closed or relocated, temporary facilities shall be detectable and shall include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility.

~~2. Curb parking shall be prohibited for at least 50 feet in advance of the midblock crosswalk.~~

Guidance:

2. Parking should be prohibited in advance of mid-block crosswalks. Mid-block crosswalks should be avoided, when possible. See Section 3B.18.

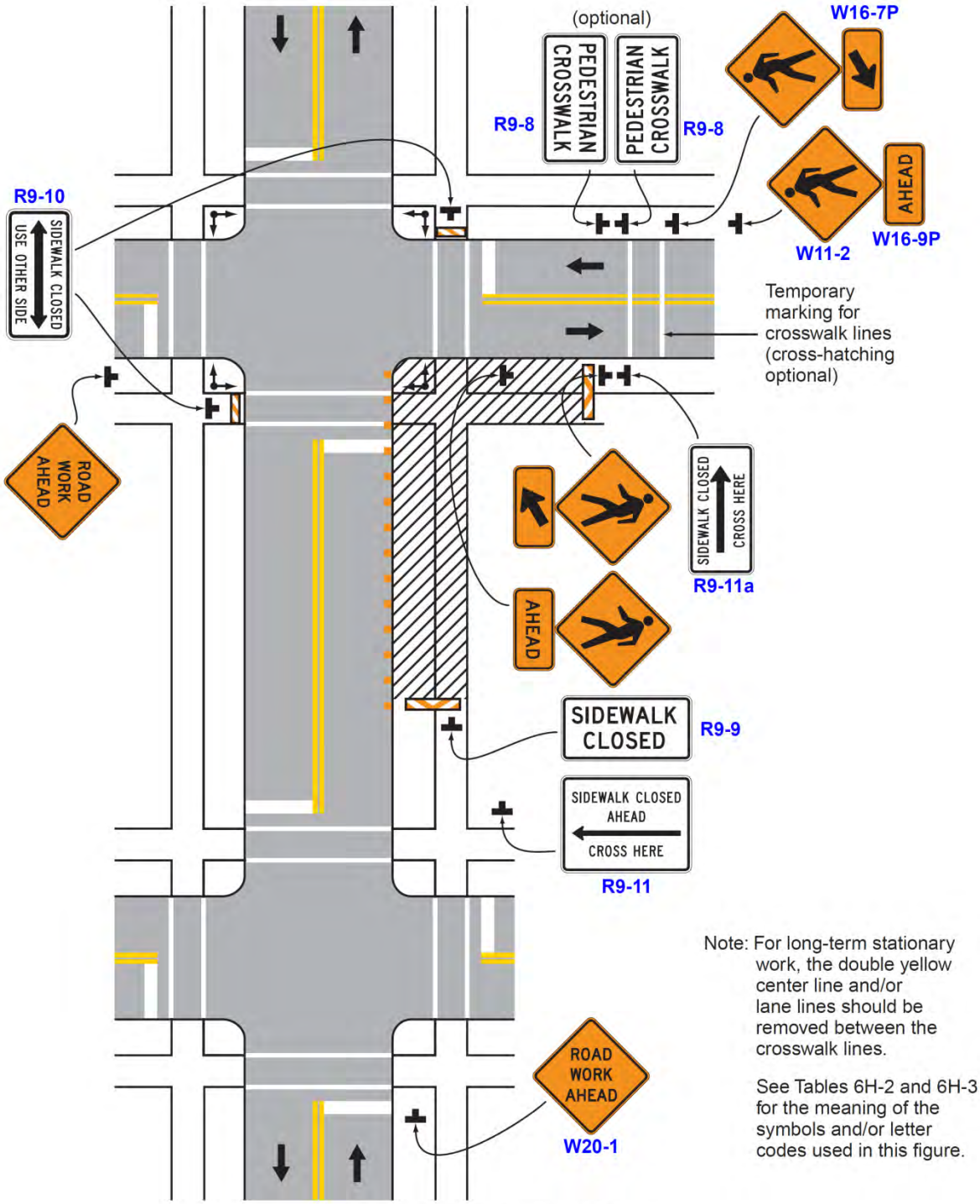
3. Audible information devices should be considered where midblock closings and changed crosswalk areas cause inadequate communication to be provided to pedestrians who have visual disabilities.

4. Pedestrian traffic signal displays controlling closed crosswalks should be covered or deactivated.

Option:

5. Street lighting may be considered.
6. Only the TTC devices related to pedestrians are shown. Other devices, such as lane closure signing or ROAD NARROWS signs, may be used to control vehicular traffic.
7. For nighttime closures, Type A Flashing warning lights may be used on barricades supporting signs and closing sidewalks.
8. Type C Steady-Burn or Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights may be used on channelizing devices separating the work space from vehicular traffic.
9. In order to maintain the systematic use of the fluorescent yellow-green background for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs in a jurisdiction, the fluorescent yellow-green background for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs may be used in TTC zones.

Figure 6H-29. Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours (TA-29)



Typical Application 29

Notes for Figure 6H-30—Typical Application 30
Interior Lane Closure on a Multi-Lane Street

Guidance:

1. *This information applies to low-speed, low-volume urban streets. Where speed or volume is higher, additional signing such as LEFT LANE CLOSED XX FT should be used between the signs shown.*

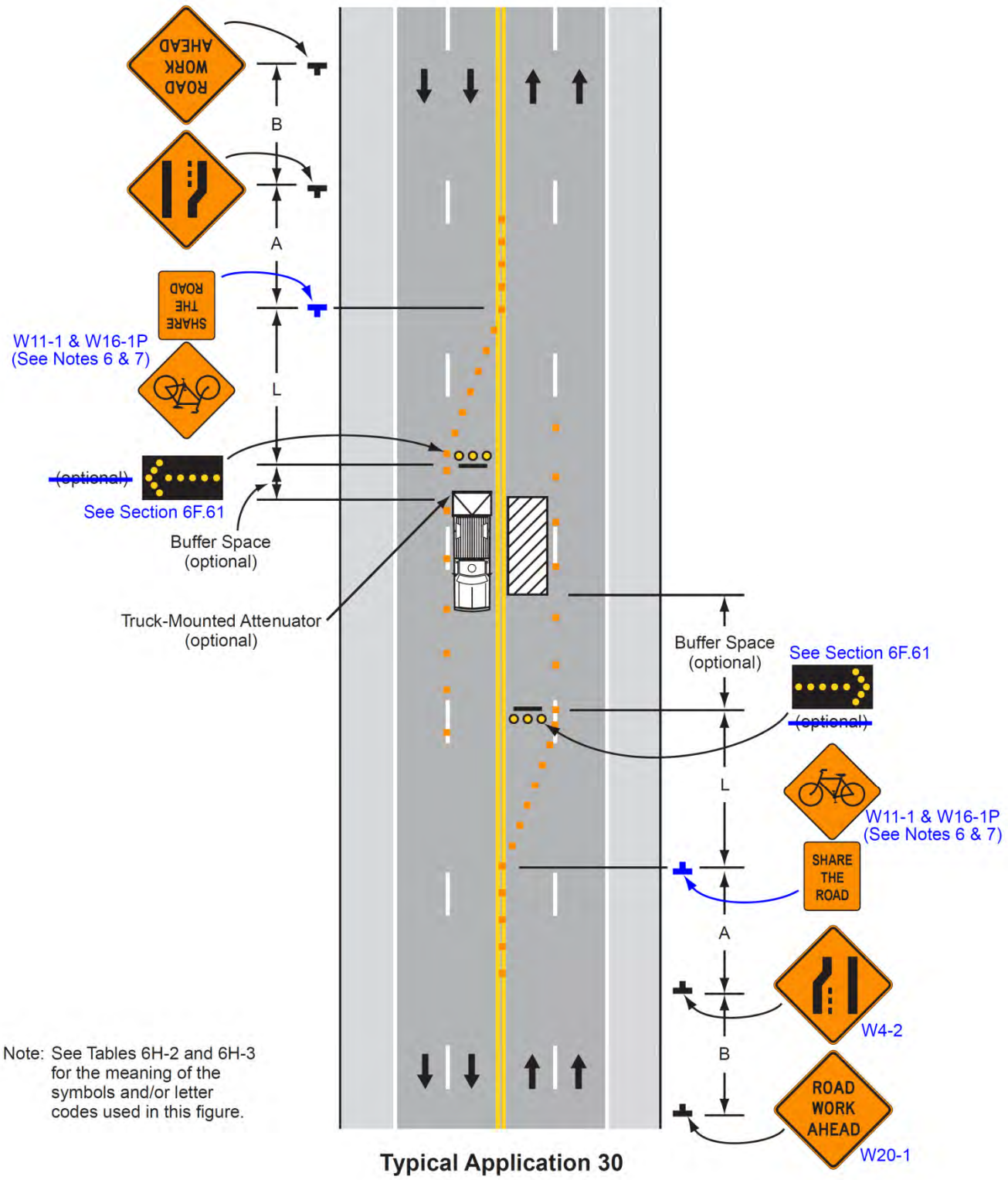
Option:

2. The closure of the adjacent interior lane in the opposing direction may not be necessary, depending upon the activity being performed and the work space needed for the operation.
3. Shadow vehicles with a truck-mounted attenuator may be used.
4. The RIGHT (LEFT) LANE(S) CLOSED (W20-5 or C20(CA)) sign may be used instead of the Lane Reduction (W4-2) sign.

Guidance:

5. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.*
6. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02) and the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, the Bicycle Crossing (W11-1) sign and the SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be used to advise motorists of the presence of bicyclists in the travel way lanes.*
7. *If bicyclists are able to use the shoulder throughout the TTC zone, the Bicycle Crossing (W11-1) sign and the SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be omitted.*

Figure 6H-30. Interior Lane Closure on Multi-lane Street (TA-30)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 30

Notes for Figure 6H-31 —Typical Application 31
Lane Closure on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes

Standard:

1. **The illustrated information shall be used only when the vehicular traffic volume indicates that two lanes of vehicular traffic shall be maintained in the direction of travel for which one lane is closed.**

Option:

2. The procedure may be used during a peak period of vehicular traffic and then changed to provide two lanes in the other direction for the other peak.

Guidance:

3. *For high speeds, a LEFT LANE CLOSED XX FT sign should be added for vehicular traffic approaching the lane closure, as shown in Figure ~~6H-32~~ 6H-32(CA).*
4. *Conflicting pavement markings should be removed for long-term projects. For short-term and intermediate-term projects where this is not practical, the channelizing devices in the area where the pavement markings conflict should be placed at a maximum spacing of 1/2 S feet where S is the speed in mph. Temporary markings should be installed where needed. The spacing of channelizing devices should not exceed the maximum distances shown in Table 6F-101(CA). Refer to Section 6F.63 for spacing of channelizing devices.*
5. *If the lane shift has curves with recommended speeds of 30 mph or less, Reverse Turn signs should be used.*
6. *Where the shifted section is long, a Reverse Curve sign should be used to show the initial shift and a second sign should be used to show the return to the normal alignment.*
7. *If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is less than 600 feet, the Double Reverse Curve sign should be used at the location of the first Two Lane Reverse Curve sign. The second Two Lane Reverse Curve sign should be omitted. Use the Reverse Curve (W1-4) signs for both locations instead of the Double Reverse Curve or Two Lane Reverse Curve signs.*

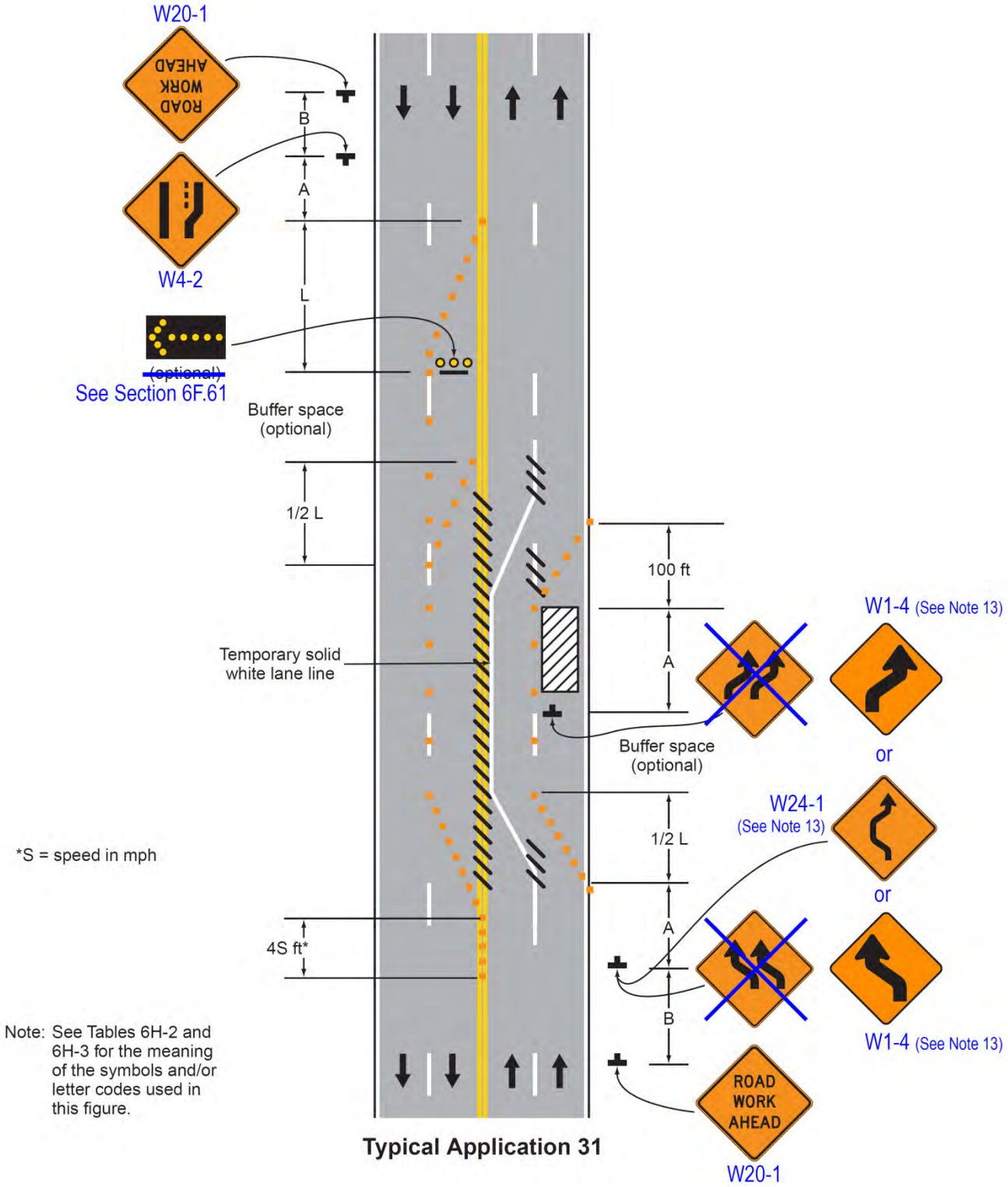
Standard:

8. **~~The number of lanes illustrated on the Reverse Curve or Double Reverse Curve signs shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users, and the direction of the reverse curves shall be appropriately illustrated.~~** Curve warning signs with multiple arrows shall not be used in California. Only W1-3, W1-4 and W24-1 signs shall be used.

Option:

9. A longitudinal buffer space may be used in the activity area to separate opposing vehicular traffic.
10. Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W1-4 (or W1-3) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes.
11. Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.
12. A work vehicle or a shadow vehicle may be equipped with a truck-mounted attenuator.
13. When recommended speeds are the same for each curve, one Double Reverse Curve (W24-1) sign may be used, instead of two Reverse Curve (W1-4) signs, in advance of the first curve.

Figure 6H-31. Lane Closures on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes (TA-31)



Notes for Figure ~~6H-32~~ 6H-32(CA) —Typical Application 32
Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway

Standard:

1. **Pavement markings no longer applicable shall be removed or obliterated as soon as practical. Except for intermediate-term and short-term situations, temporary markings shall be provided to clearly delineate the temporary travel path. For short-term and intermediate-term situations where it is not feasible to remove and restore pavement markings, channelization shall be made dominant by using a very close device spacing.**

Guidance:

2. *When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, channelizing devices should be used to close the shoulder in advance of the merging taper to direct vehicular traffic to remain within the traveled way.*
3. *Where channelizing devices are used instead of pavement markings, the maximum spacing should be 1/2 S feet where S is the speed in mph. The spacing of channelizing devices should not exceed the maximum distances shown in Table 6F-101(CA). Refer to Section 6F.63 for spacing of channelizing devices.*
4. *If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is less than 600 feet, a Double Reverse Curve sign should be used instead of the first Reverse Curve sign, and the second Reverse Curve sign should be omitted.*

Option:

5. Warning lights may be used to supplement channelizing devices at night.
6. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the work vehicle and/or the shadow vehicle.

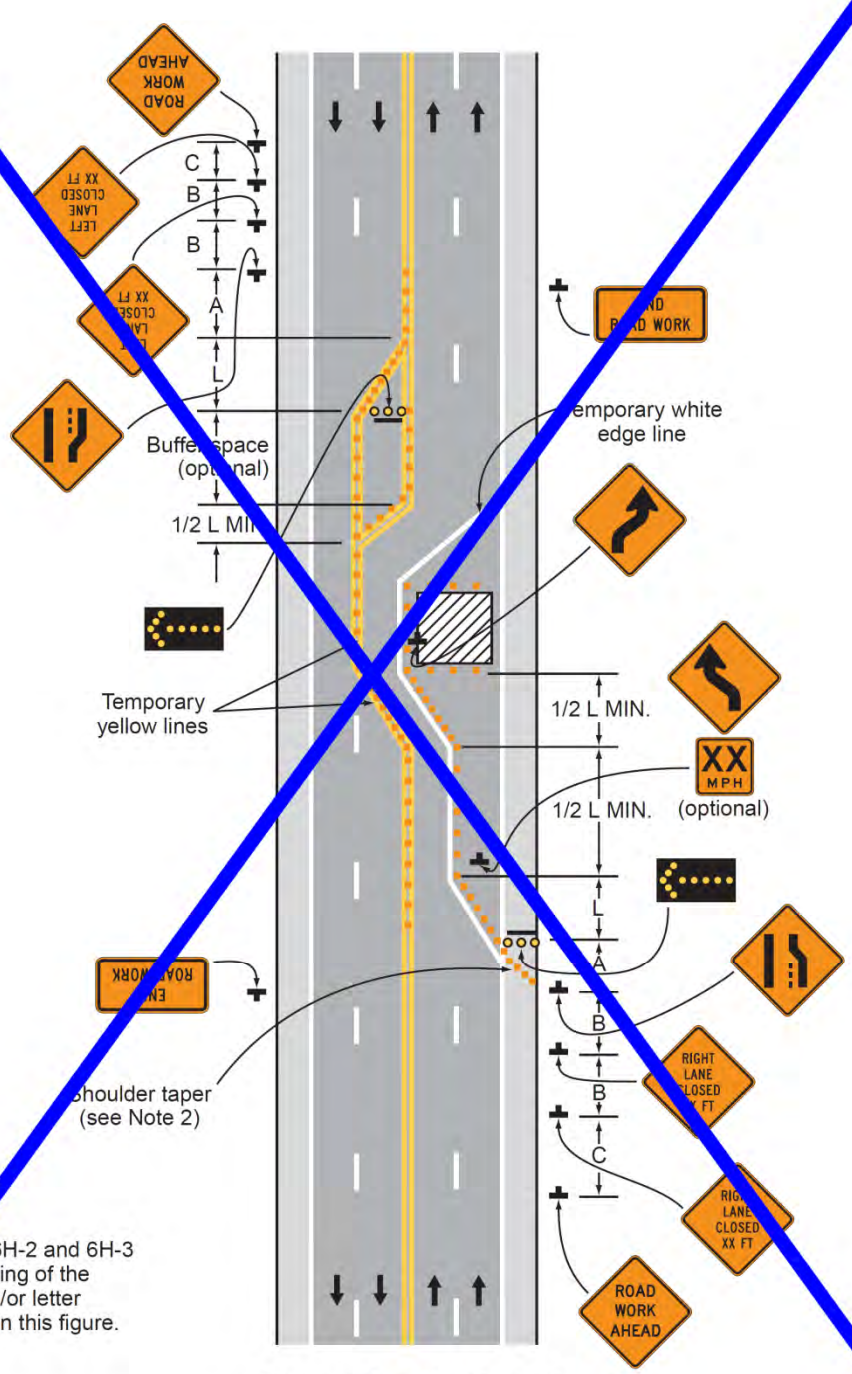
Support:

7. See Section 6F.106(CA) for use of the Slow For The Cone Zone (SC19(CA) and SC20(CA)) Signs.

Guidance:

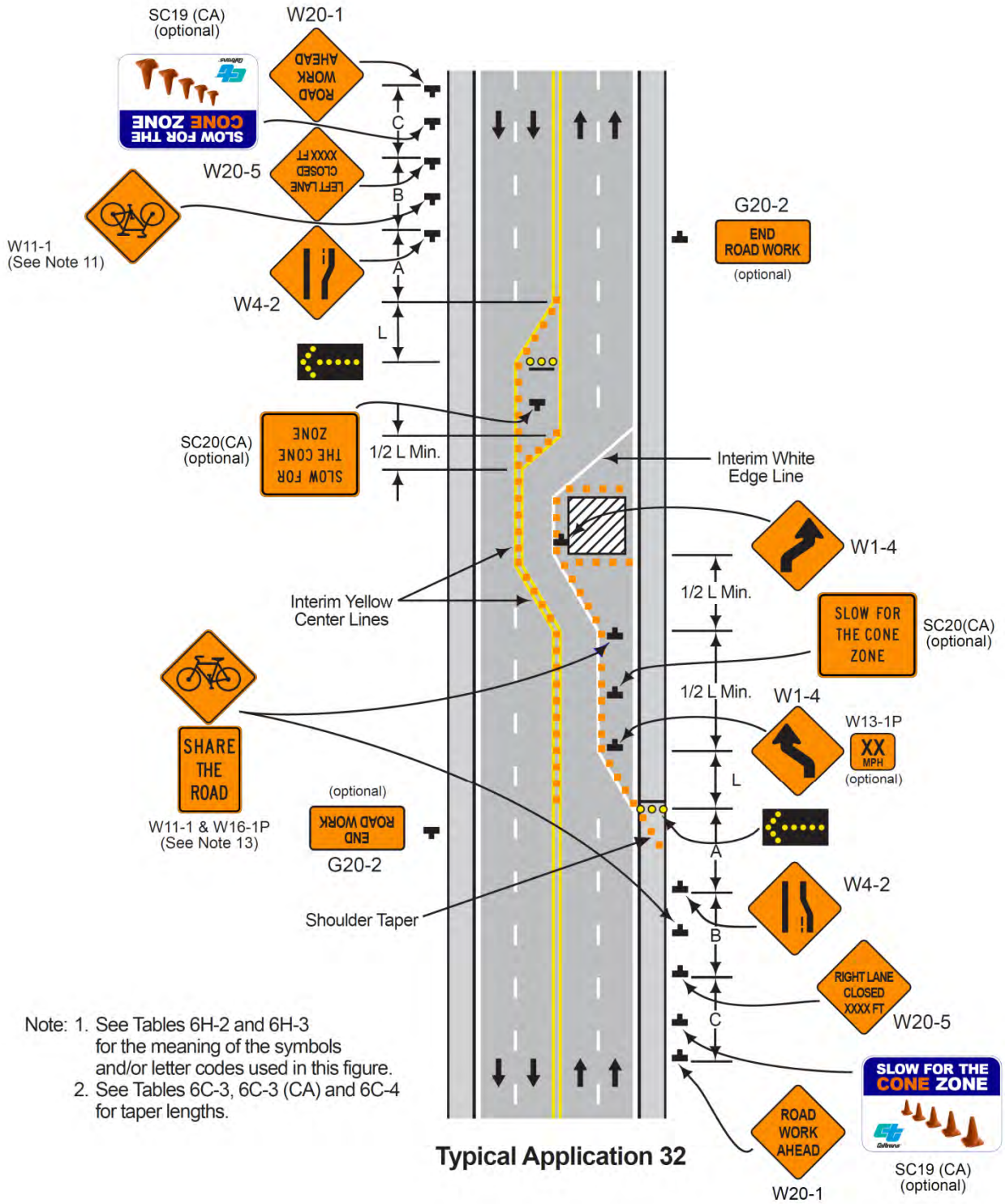
8. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.*
9. *If bicyclists are able to use the shoulder throughout the TTC zone, the Bicycle Crossing (W11-1) sign should be used and the SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be omitted.*
10. *The speeds used for the shoulder taper calculations should be of bicyclists in the project vicinity or if a special event such as a bike race, the expected speed of bicyclists approaching the TTC zone.*
11. *If bicyclists are sharing the traveled way lanes with motorists, speed reduction countermeasures should be used to reduce traffic speeds in the TTC zone. Refer to Sections 6C.01 and 6D.03.*
12. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02) and the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, the Bicycle Crossing (W11-1) sign and the SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be used to advise motorists of the presence of bicyclists in the travel way lanes.*

Figure 6H-32. Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway (TA-32)



Typical Application 32

Figure 6H-32 (CA). Half Road Closure on a Multilane, High-Speed Highway (TA-32)



Notes for Figure 6H-33 —Typical Application 33
Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway

Standard:

1. This information also shall be used when work is being performed in the lane adjacent to the median on a divided highway. In this case, the LEFT LANE CLOSED signs and the corresponding Lane Ends signs shall be substituted.

2. When a side road intersects the highway within the TTC zone, additional TTC devices shall be placed as needed.

Guidance:

3. When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, channelizing devices should be used to close the shoulder in advance of the merging taper to direct vehicular traffic to remain within the traveled way.

Option:

4. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the work vehicle and/or shadow vehicle.

Support:

5. Where conditions permit, restricting all vehicles, equipment, workers, and their activities to one side of the roadway might be advantageous.

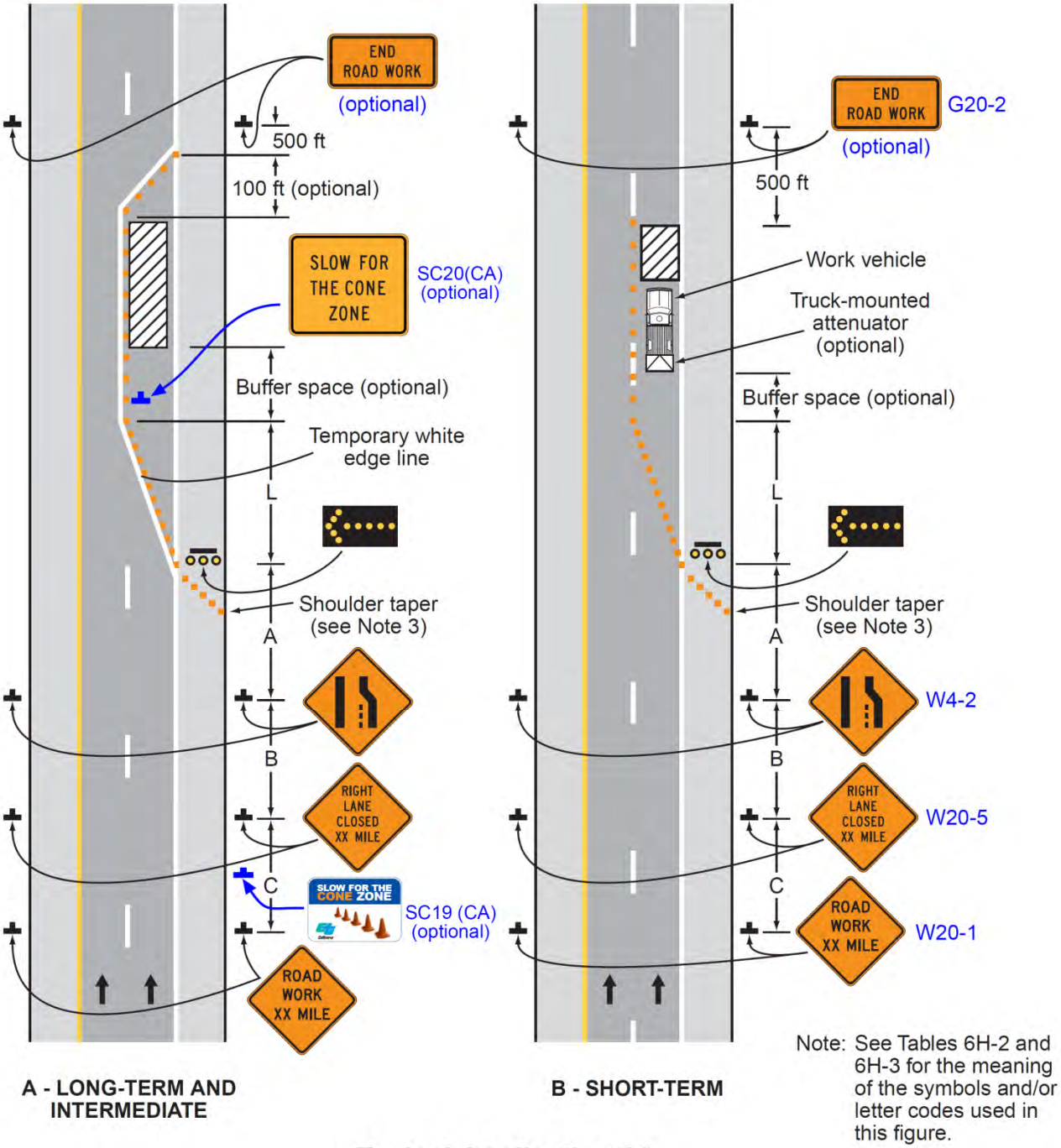
Standard:

6. An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.

Support:

7. See Section 6F.106(CA) for use of the Slow For The Cone Zone (SC19(CA) and SC20(CA)) Signs.

Figure 6H-33. Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway (TA-33)



Typical Application 33

Notes for Figure 6H-34—Typical Application 34
Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier

Standard:

1. **This information also shall be used when work is being performed in the lane adjacent to the median on a divided highway. In this case, the LEFT LANE CLOSED signs and the corresponding Lane Ends signs shall be substituted.**

Guidance:

2. *For long-term lane closures on facilities with permanent edge lines, a temporary edge line should be installed from the upstream end of the merging taper to the downstream end of the downstream taper, and conflicting pavement markings should be removed.*
3. *The use of a barrier should be based on engineering judgment.*

Standard:

4. **Temporary traffic barriers, if used, shall comply with the provisions of Section 6F.85.**
5. **The barrier shall not be placed along the merging taper. The lane shall first be closed using channelizing devices and pavement markings.**

Option:

6. Type C Steady-Burn warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices and the barrier parallel to the edge of pavement for nighttime lane closures.
7. The barrier shown in this typical application is an example of one method that may be used to close a lane for a long-term project. If the work activity permits, a movable barrier may be used and relocated to the shoulder during non-work periods or peak-period vehicular traffic conditions, as appropriate.

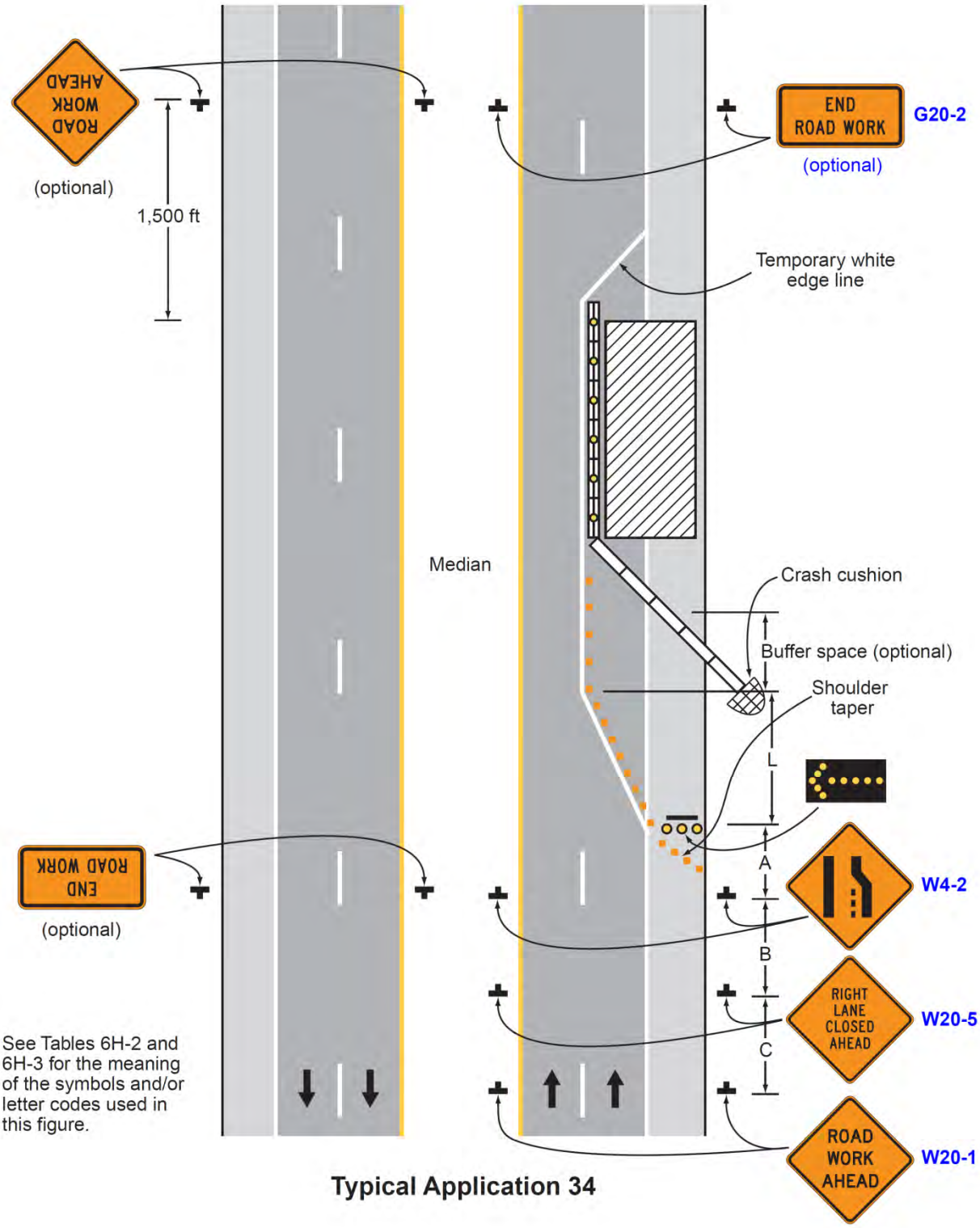
Standard:

8. **If a movable barrier is used, the temporary white edge line shown in the typical application shall not be used. During the period when the right-hand lane is opened, the sign legends and the channelization shall be changed to indicate that only the shoulder is closed, as illustrated in Figure ~~6H-5~~ 6H-5(CA). The arrow board, if used, shall be placed at the downstream end of the shoulder taper and shall display the caution mode.**

Guidance:

9. *If a movable barrier is used, the shift should be performed in the following manner. When closing the lane, the lane should be initially closed with channelizing devices placed along a merging taper using the same information employed for a stationary lane closure. The lane closure should then be extended with the movable-barrier transfer vehicle moving with vehicular traffic. When opening the lane, the movable barrier transfer vehicle should travel against vehicular traffic from the termination area to the transition area. The merging taper should then be removed using the same information employed for a stationary lane closure.*

Figure 6H-34. Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier (TA-34)



Typical Application 34

Notes for Figure 6H-35—Typical Application 35
Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road

Standard:

1. **Arrow boards shall, as a minimum, be Type B, with a size of 60 x 30 inches.** For State highways, the arrow boards shall, as a minimum, be type II, with a size of 72 x 36 inch. Refer to Caltrans' Standard Specifications Section 12-3.03 for minimum size and type of arrow panels cited above. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.
2. **Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.**
3. **Shadow and work vehicles shall display high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
4. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Guidance:

5. *Vehicles used for these operations should be made highly visible with appropriate equipment, such as flags, signs, or arrow boards.*
6. *Shadow Vehicle 1 should be equipped with an arrow board and truck-mounted attenuator.*
7. *Shadow Vehicle 2 should be equipped with an arrow board. An appropriate lane closure sign should be placed on Shadow Vehicle 2 so as not to obscure the arrow board.*
8. *Shadow Vehicle 2 should travel at a varying distance from the work operation so as to provide adequate sight distance for vehicular traffic approaching from the rear.*
9. *The spacing between the work vehicles and the shadow vehicles, and between each shadow vehicle should be minimized to deter road users from driving in between.*
10. *Work should normally be accomplished during off-peak hours.*
11. *When the work vehicle occupies an interior lane (a lane other than the far right or far left) of a directional roadway having a right-hand shoulder 10 feet or more in width, Shadow Vehicle 2 should drive the right-hand shoulder with a sign indicating that work is taking place in the interior lane.*

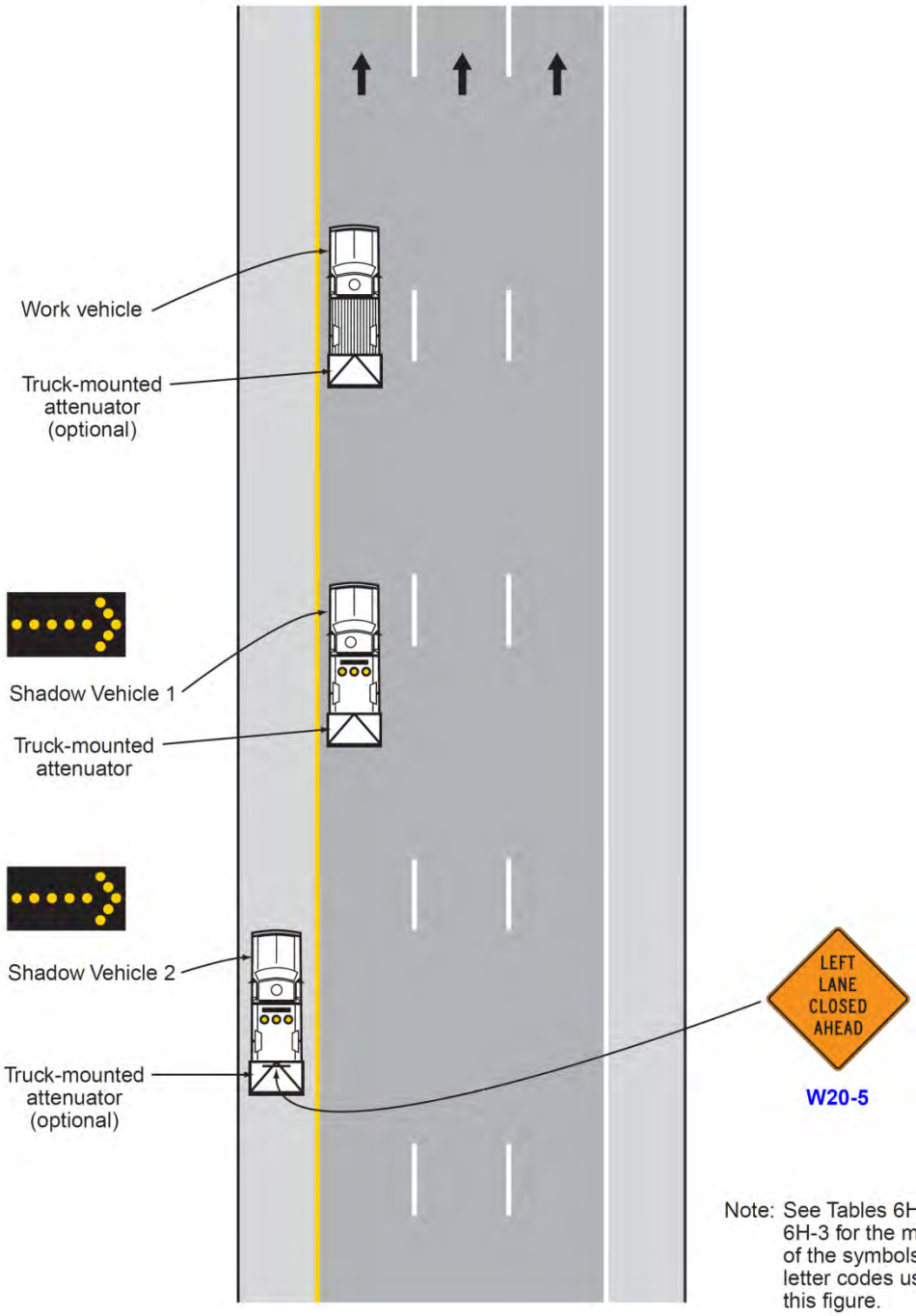
Option:

12. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on Shadow Vehicle 2.
13. On high-speed roadways, a third shadow vehicle (not shown) may be used with Shadow Vehicle 1 in the closed lane, Shadow Vehicle 2 straddling the edge line, and Shadow Vehicle 3 on the shoulder.
14. Where adequate shoulder width is not available, Shadow Vehicle 3 may also straddle the edge line.

Support:

15. For State highways, see Caltrans' Standard Plan T15 and T16. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Figure 6H-35. Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road (TA-35)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 35

Notes for Figure ~~6H-36~~ 6H-36(CA) —Typical Application 36
Lane Shift on a Freeway

Guidance:

1. The lane shift should be used when the work space extends into either the right-hand or left-hand lane of a divided highway and it is not practical, for capacity reasons, to reduce the number of available lanes.

Support:

2. When a lane shift is accomplished by using
   (1) geometry that meets the design speed at which the permanent highway was designed,
   (2) full normal cross-section (full lane width and full shoulders), and
   (3) complete pavement markings, then only the initial general work-zone warning sign is required.

Guidance:

3. When the conditions in Note 2 are not met, the information shown in the typical application should be employed and all the following notes apply.

Standard:

4. Temporary traffic barriers, if used, shall comply with the provisions of Section 6F.85.

5. The barrier shall not be placed along the shifting taper. The lane shall first be shifted using channelizing devices and pavement markings.

Guidance:

6. A warning sign should be used to show the changed alignment.

Standard:

~~**7. The number of lanes illustrated on the Reverse Curve signs shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users, and the direction of the reverse curves shall be appropriately illustrated.**~~

~~Option:~~

8. Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W1-4 (or W1-3) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) ~~may~~ shall be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes. The Reverse Curve (W1-4) sign shall be used instead of the Reverse Curve (W1-4a & W1-4b) signs which show the number of lanes.

Option:

9. Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.

Guidance:

10. Where the shifted section is longer than 600 feet, one set of Reverse Curve signs should be used to show the initial shift and a second set should be used to show the return to the normal alignment. If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is less than 600 feet, a Double Reverse Curve sign should be used instead of the first Reverse Curve sign, and the second Reverse Curve sign should be omitted. Use the Reverse Curve (W1-4) signs for both locations instead of the Double Reverse Curve (W24-1) sign.

11. If a STAY IN LANE sign is used, then solid white lane lines should be used.

Standard:

12. The minimum width of the shoulder lane shall be 10 feet.

13. For long-term stationary work, existing conflicting pavement markings shall be removed and temporary markings shall be installed before traffic patterns are changed.

Option:

14. For short-term stationary work, lanes may be delineated by channelizing devices or removable pavement markings instead of temporary markings.

Guidance:

15. If the shoulder cannot adequately accommodate trucks, trucks should be directed to use the travel lanes.

16. The use of a barrier should be based on engineering judgment.

Option:

17. Type C Steady-Burn warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices and the barrier parallel to the edge of the pavement for nighttime lane closures.

Option:

18. Detail 11 (see Figure 3A-102(CA)) may be used instead of the temporary solid white lane line, which is shown in Figure 6H-36(CA).

Support:

19. See Section 6F.106(CA) for use of the Slow For The Cone Zone (SC19(CA) and SC20(CA)) Signs.

Guidance:

20. All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.

21. When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02) and the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, the Bicycle Crossing (W11-1) sign and the SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque should be used to advise motorists of the presence of bicyclists in the travel way lanes.

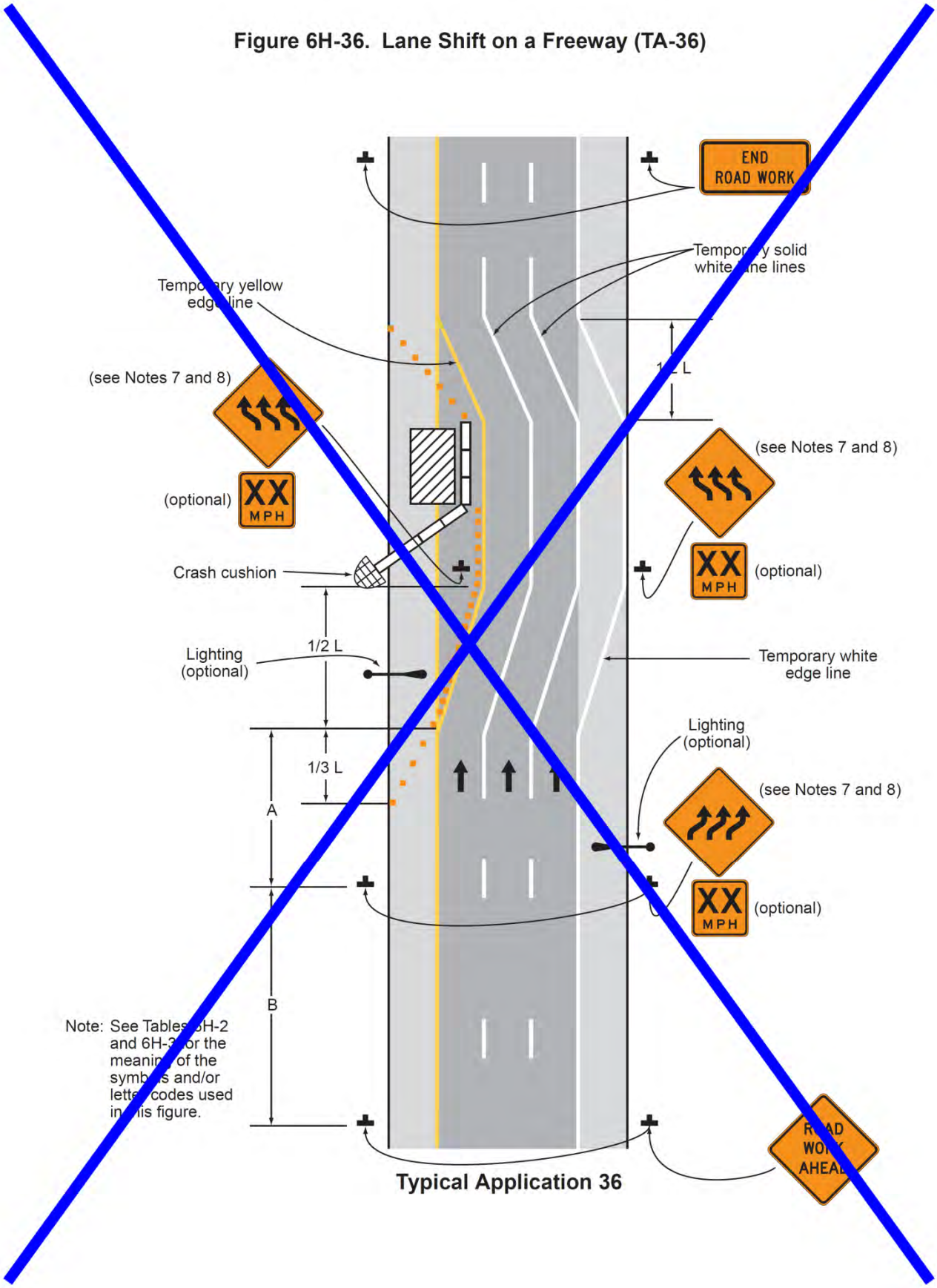
22. Except for short durations and mobile operations, when a highway shoulder is occupied and bicyclists would be sharing a lane with vehicular traffic, as a result of the TTC zone, speed reduction countermeasures should be used to reduce traffic speeds in the TTC zone. Refer to Sections 6C.01 and 6D.03.

23. Except for short durations and mobile operations, when a highway shoulder is occupied and bicyclists would be sharing a lane with vehicular traffic, as a result of the TTC zone, before narrowing the outside lane other measures such as widening the outside shoulder to allow bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side through the TTC zone should be considered.

24. If traffic volumes make it feasible, the two left lanes should be merged into one lane to avoid using the shoulder as a traveled way lane and allowing continued use for emergency purposes and bicycle travel.

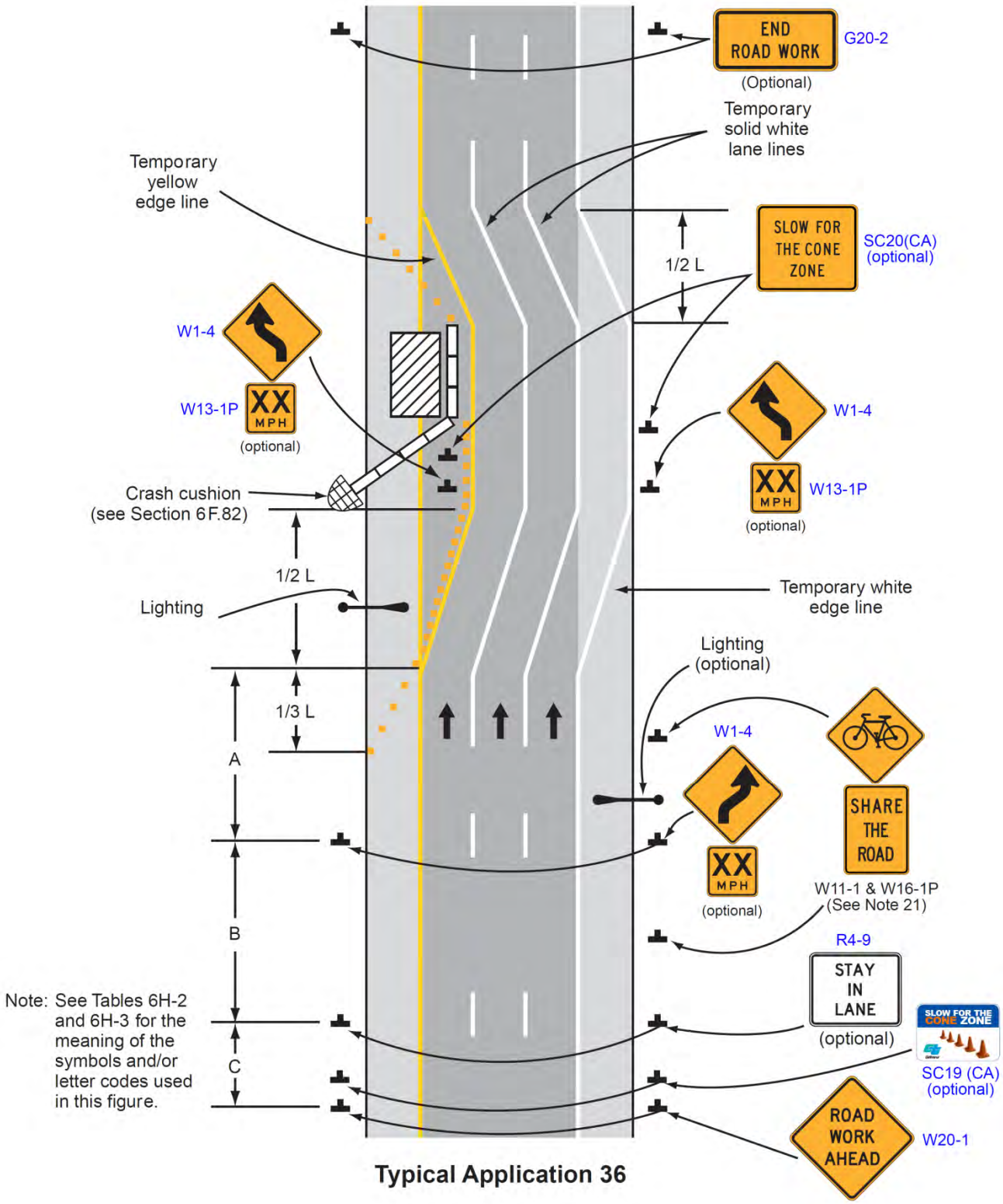
25. When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed in a long-term duration project (see Section 6G.02) and the roadway width is inadequate for allowing bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side, a separate path should be considered for bicyclists.

Figure 6H-36. Lane Shift on a Freeway (TA-36)



Typical Application 36

Figure 6H-36 (CA). Lane Shift on Freeway (TA-36)



Typical Application 36

Notes for Figure 6H-37—Typical Application 37
Double Lane Closure on a Freeway

Standard:

1. An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.

Guidance:

2. Ordinarily, the preferred position for the second arrow board is in the closed exterior lane at the upstream end of the second merging taper. However, the second arrow board should be placed in the closed interior lane at the downstream end of the second merging taper in the following situations:

a. When a shadow vehicle is used in the interior closed lane, and the second arrow board is mounted on the shadow vehicle;

b. If alignment or other conditions create any confusion as to which lane is closed by the second arrow board; and

c. When the first arrow board is placed in the closed exterior lane at the downstream end of the first merging taper (the alternative position when the shoulder is narrow).

Standard:

3. All advance warning signs mounted on portable supports shall be equipped with at least two flags or a flashing warning beacon. Each flag shall be at least 16 X16 inches in size and shall be orange or red in color. Flashing warning beacons (Section 6F.83) shall be used to call attention to the initial warning signs during hours of darkness. Flashing warning beacons is optional during daytime operations.

Option:

4. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the shadow vehicle.
5. If a paved shoulder having a minimum width of 10 feet and sufficient strength is available, the left and adjacent interior lanes may be closed and vehicular traffic carried around the work space on the right-hand lane and a right-hand shoulder.

Guidance:

6. When a shoulder lane is used that cannot adequately accommodate trucks, trucks should be directed to use the normal travel lanes.

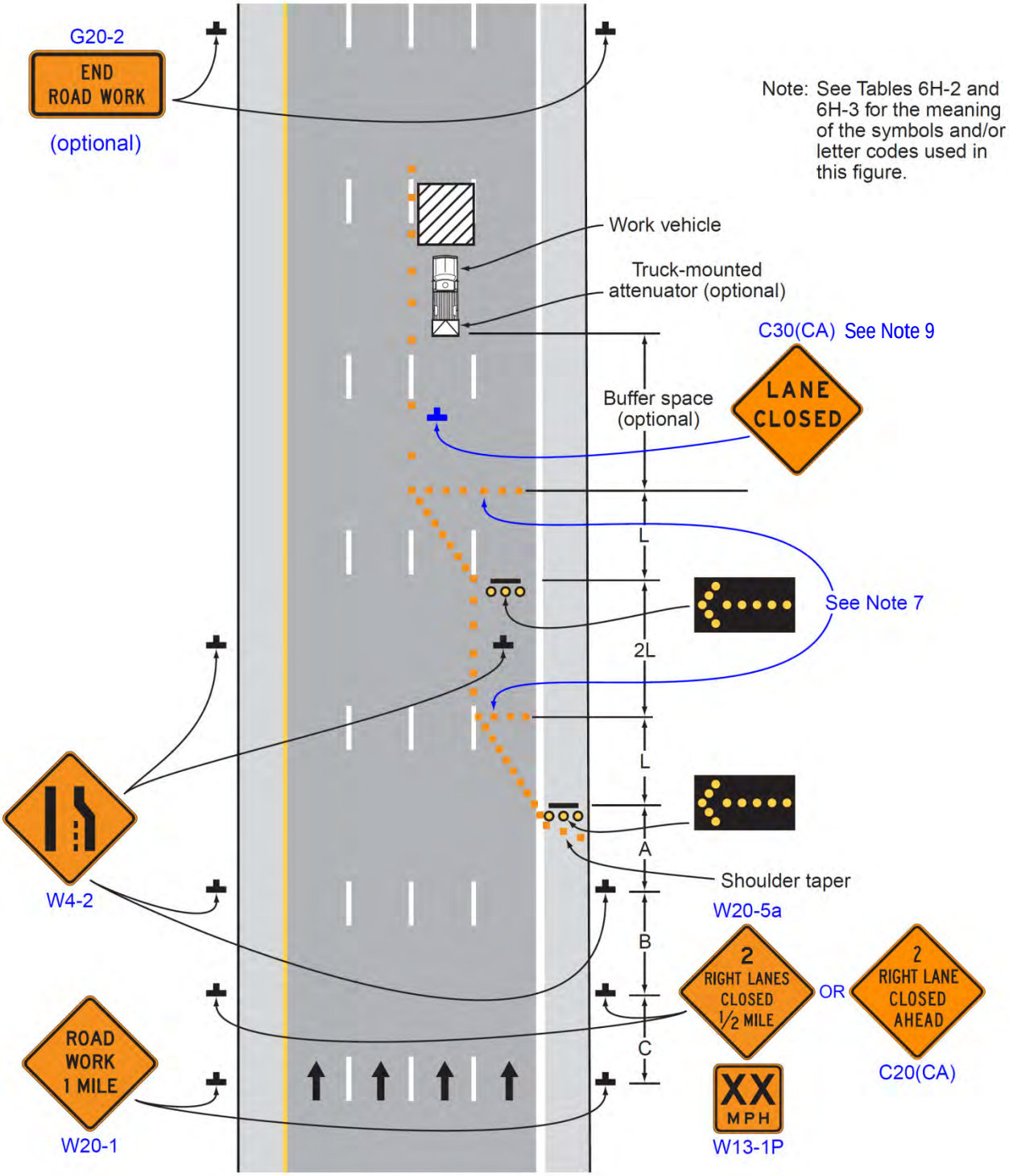
Standard:

7. 3 cones or 2 Type II barricades shall be placed transversely across each closed lane at end of each merging taper and every 2000 feet throughout the lane closure.
8. On freeways, maximum spacing of channelizing devices shall be 50 feet in advance warning and transition areas, 100 feet in activity and termination areas (see figure 6C-1).
9. LANE CLOSED C30(CA) sign shall be placed every 2000 feet throughout the lane closure adjacent to the open lane within the closed lane.

Support:

10. For State highways, see the Caltrans' Standard Plan T10. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Figure 6H-37. Double Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-37)



Typical Application 37

~~Notes for Figure 6H-38 – Typical Application 38~~
~~Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway~~

~~**Standard:**~~

~~**1. An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**~~

~~**2. If temporary traffic barriers are installed, they shall comply with the provisions and requirements in Section 6F.85.**~~

~~**3. The barrier shall not be placed along the shifting taper. The lane shall first be shifted using channelizing devices and pavement markings.**~~

~~**4. For long-term stationary work, existing conflicting pavement markings shall be removed and temporary markings shall be installed before traffic patterns are changed.**~~

~~*Guidance:*~~

~~*5. For a long-term closure, a barrier should be used to provide additional safety to the operation in the closed interior lane. A buffer space should be used at the upstream end of the closed interior lane.*~~

~~*6. The first arrow board displaying an arrow pointing to the right should be on the left-hand shoulder at the beginning of the taper. The arrow board displaying a double arrow should be centered in the closed interior lane and placed at the downstream end of the shifting taper.*~~

~~*7. If the two arrow boards create confusion, the 2L distance between the end of the merging taper and beginning of the shift taper should be extended so that road users can focus on one arrow board at a time.*~~

~~*8. The placement of signs should not obstruct or obscure arrow boards.*~~

~~*9. For long-term use, the dashed lane lines should be made solid white in the two-lane section.*~~

~~Option:~~

~~10. As an alternative to initially closing the left-hand lane, as shown in the typical application, the right-hand lane may be closed in advance of the interior lane closure with appropriate channelization and signs.~~

~~11. A short, single row of channelizing devices in advance of the vehicular traffic split to restrict vehicular traffic to their respective lanes may be added.~~

~~12. DO NOT PASS signs may be used.~~

~~13. If a paved shoulder having a minimum width of 10 feet and sufficient strength is available, the left-hand and center lanes may be closed and motor vehicle traffic carried around the work space on the right-hand lane and a right-hand shoulder.~~

~~*Guidance:*~~

~~*14. When a shoulder lane is used that cannot adequately accommodate trucks, trucks should be directed to use the normal travel lanes.*~~

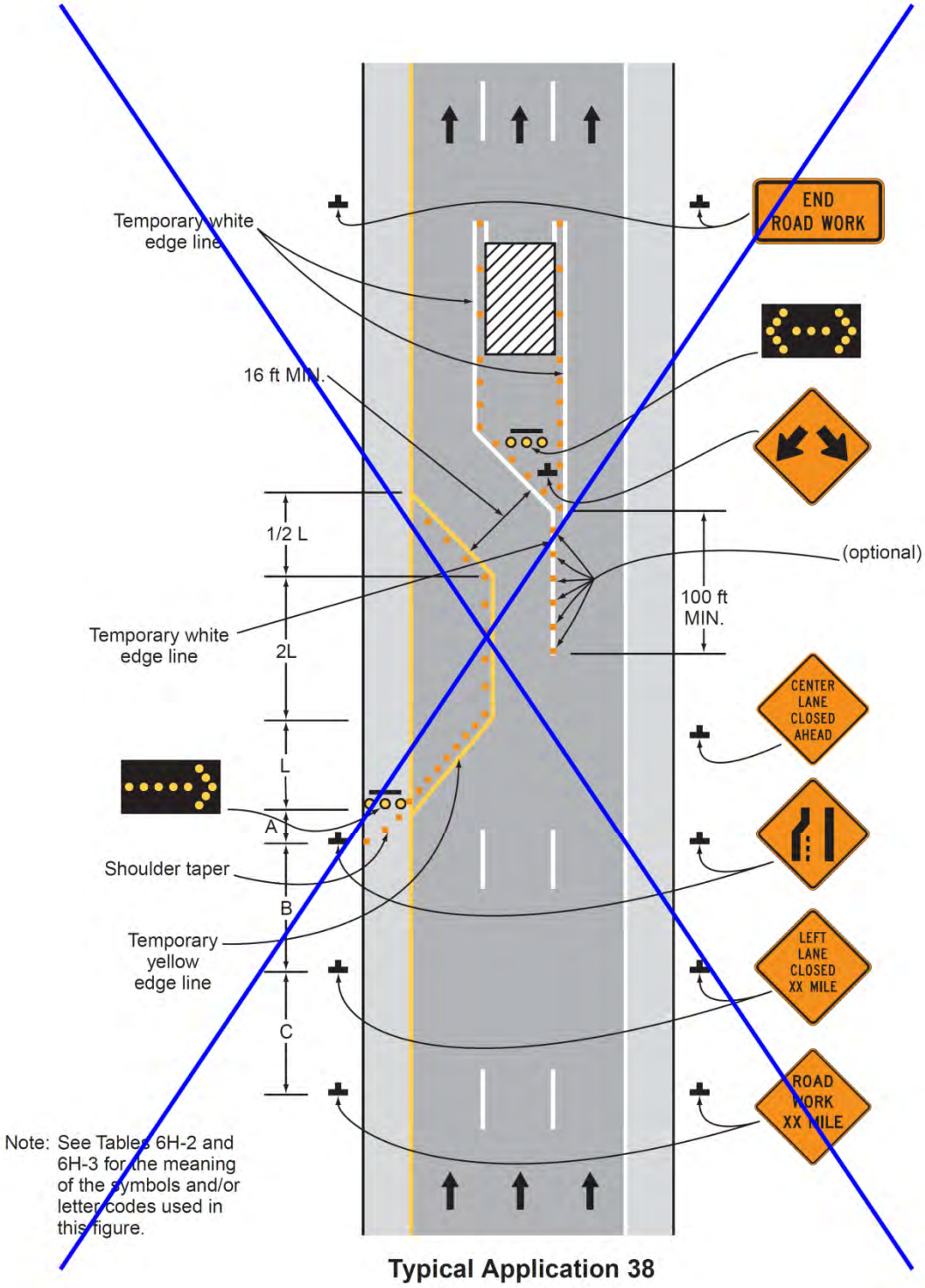
Standard:

This typical application is deleted for application and shall not be used on freeways in California. Whenever an interior lane needs to be closed on freeways, all adjacent lane(s) to one side of this lane shall be closed as illustrated in Figure 6H-37.

Support:

For State highways, see Caltrans' Standard Plan T10, T10A and T14. For interior lane closure on Freeways using mobile operation, see Caltrans' Standard Plan T16. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Figure 6H-38. Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-38)



Typical Application 38

Notes for Figure 6H-39—Typical Application 39
Median Crossover on a Freeway

Standard:

1. **Channelizing devices or temporary traffic barriers shall be used to separate opposing vehicular traffic.**
2. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Guidance:

3. *For long-term work on high-speed, high-volume highways, consideration should be given to using a temporary traffic barrier to separate opposing vehicular traffic.*

Option:

4. When a temporary traffic barrier is used to separate opposing vehicular traffic, the Two-Way Traffic, Do Not Pass, KEEP RIGHT, and DO NOT ENTER signs may be eliminated.
5. The alignment of the crossover may be designed as a reverse curve.

Guidance:

6. *When the crossover follows a curved alignment, the design criteria contained in the AASHTO "Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" (see Section 1A.11) should be used.*
7. *When channelizing devices have the potential of leading vehicular traffic out of the intended traffic space, the channelizing devices should be extended a distance in feet of 2.0 times the speed limit in mph beyond the downstream end of the transition area as depicted.*
8. *Where channelizing devices are used, the Two-Way Traffic signs should be repeated every 1 mile.*

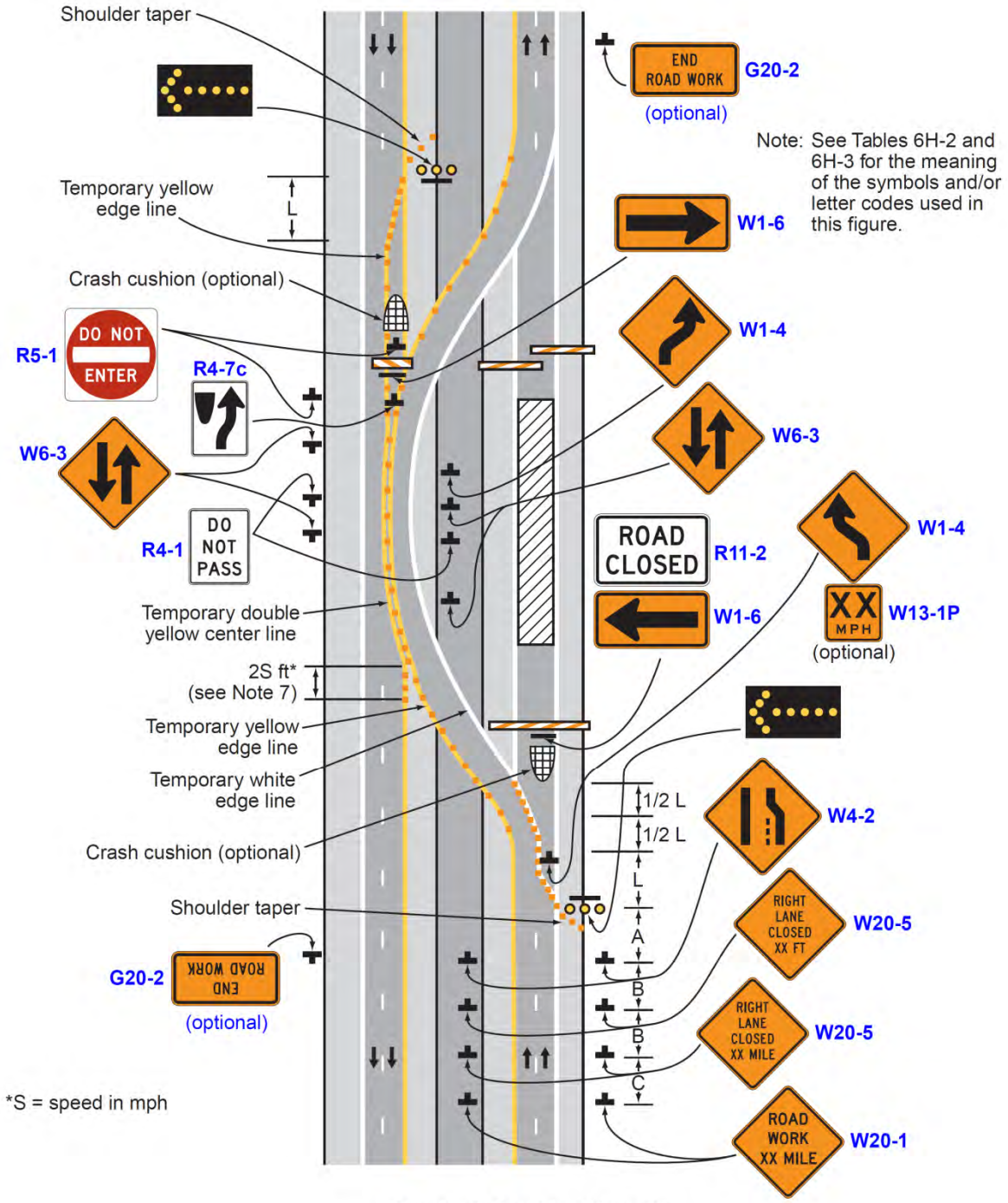
Option:

9. NEXT XX MILES Supplemental Distance plaques may be used with the Two-Way Traffic signs, where XX is the distance to the downstream end of the two-way section.

Support:

10. When the distance is sufficiently short that road users entering the section can see the downstream end of the section, they are less likely to forget that there is opposing vehicular traffic.
11. The sign legends for the four pairs of signs approaching the lane closure for the non-crossover direction of travel are not shown. They are similar to the series shown for the crossover direction, except that the left lane is closed.

Figure 6H-39. Median Crossover on a Freeway (TA-39)



Typical Application 39

Notes for Figure 6H-40—Typical Application 40
Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp

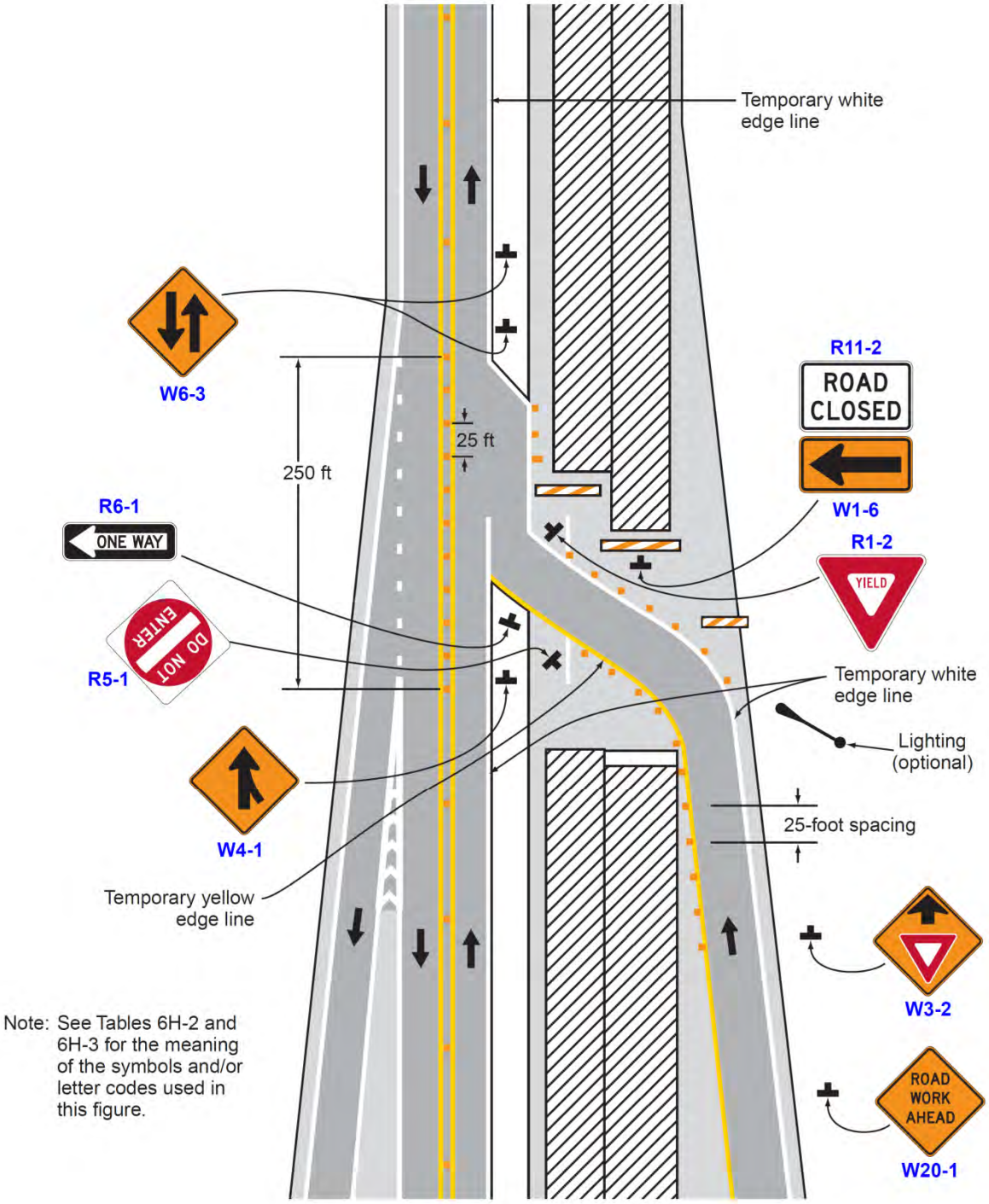
Guidance:

1. *The typical application illustrated should be used for carrying an entrance ramp across a closed directional roadway of a divided highway.*
2. *A temporary acceleration lane should be used to facilitate merging.*
3. *When used, the YIELD or STOP sign should be located far enough forward to provide adequate sight distance of oncoming mainline vehicular traffic to select an acceptable gap, but should not be located so far forward that motorists will be encouraged to stop in the path of the mainline traffic. If needed, yield or stop lines should be installed across the ramp to indicate the point at which road users should yield or stop. Also, a longer acceleration lane should be provided beyond the sign to reduce the gap size needed.*

Option:

4. If vehicular traffic conditions allow, the ramp may be closed.
5. A broken edge line may be carried across the temporary entrance ramp to assist in defining the through vehicular traffic lane.
6. When a temporary traffic barrier is used to separate opposing vehicular traffic, the Two-Way Traffic signs and the DO NOT ENTER signs may be eliminated.

Figure 6H-40. Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp (TA-40)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 40

Notes for Figure 6H-41—Typical Application 41
Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp

Guidance:

1. *This typical application should be used for carrying an exit ramp across a closed directional roadway of a divided highway. The design criteria contained in the AASHTO "Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" (see Section 1A.11) should be used for determining the curved alignment.*
2. *The guide signs should indicate that the ramp is open, and where the temporary ramp is located. Conversely, if the ramp is closed, guide signs should indicate that the ramp is closed.*
3. *When the exit is closed, a black on orange EXIT CLOSED sign panel should be placed diagonally across the interchange/intersection guide signs and channelizing devices should be placed to physically close the ramp.*
4. *In the situation (not shown) where channelizing devices are placed along the mainline roadway, the devices' spacing should be reduced in the vicinity of the off ramp to emphasize the opening at the ramp itself. Channelizing devices and/or temporary pavement markings should be placed on both sides of the temporary ramp where it crosses the median and the closed roadway.*
5. *Advance guide signs providing information related to the temporary exit should be relocated or duplicated adjacent to the temporary roadway.*

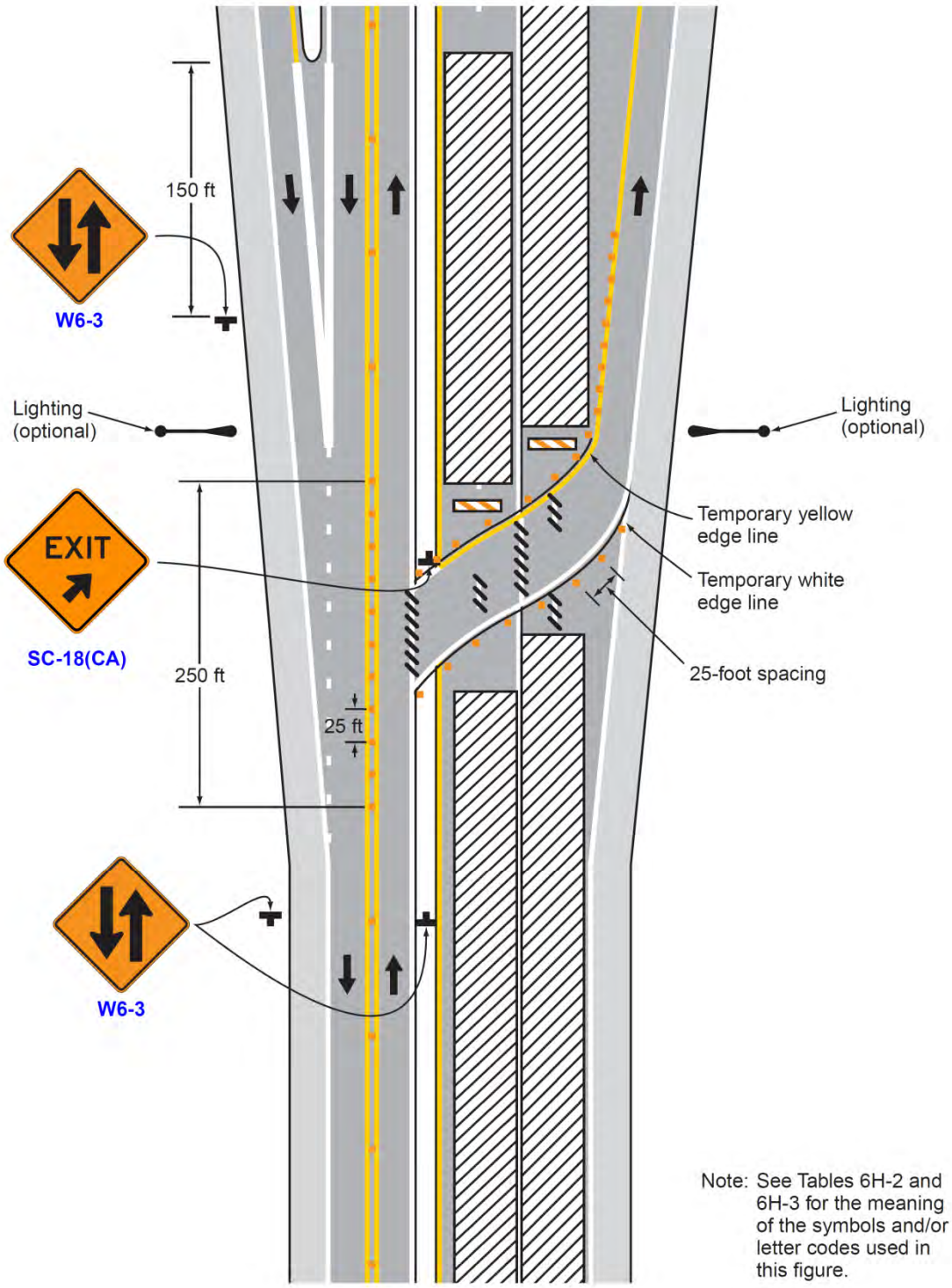
Standard:

6. **A temporary EXIT sign shall be located in the temporary gore. For better visibility, it shall be mounted a minimum of 7 feet from the pavement surface to the bottom of the sign.**

Option:

7. Guide signs referring to the exit may need to be relocated to the median.
8. The temporary EXIT sign placed in the temporary gore may be either black on orange or white on green.
9. In some instances, a temporary deceleration lane may be useful in facilitating the exiting maneuver.
10. When a temporary traffic barrier is used to separate opposing vehicular traffic, the Two-Way Traffic signs may be omitted.

Figure 6H-41. Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp (TA-41)



Typical Application 41

Notes for Figure 6H-42—Typical Application 42
Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp

Guidance:

1. *The guide signs should indicate that the ramp is open, and where the temporary ramp is located. However, if the ramp is closed, guide signs should indicate that the ramp is closed.*
2. *When the exit ramp is closed, a black on orange EXIT CLOSED sign panel should be placed diagonally across the interchange/intersection guide signs.*
3. *The design criteria contained in the AASHTO "Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" (see Section 1A.11) should be used for determining the alignment.*

Standard:

4. **A temporary EXIT sign shall be located in the temporary gore. For better visibility, it shall be mounted a minimum of 7 feet from the pavement surface to the bottom of the sign.**

Option:

5. The temporary EXIT sign placed in the temporary gore may be either black on orange or white on green.
6. An alternative procedure that may be used is to channelize exiting vehicular traffic onto the right-hand shoulder and close the lane as necessary.

Standard:

7. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

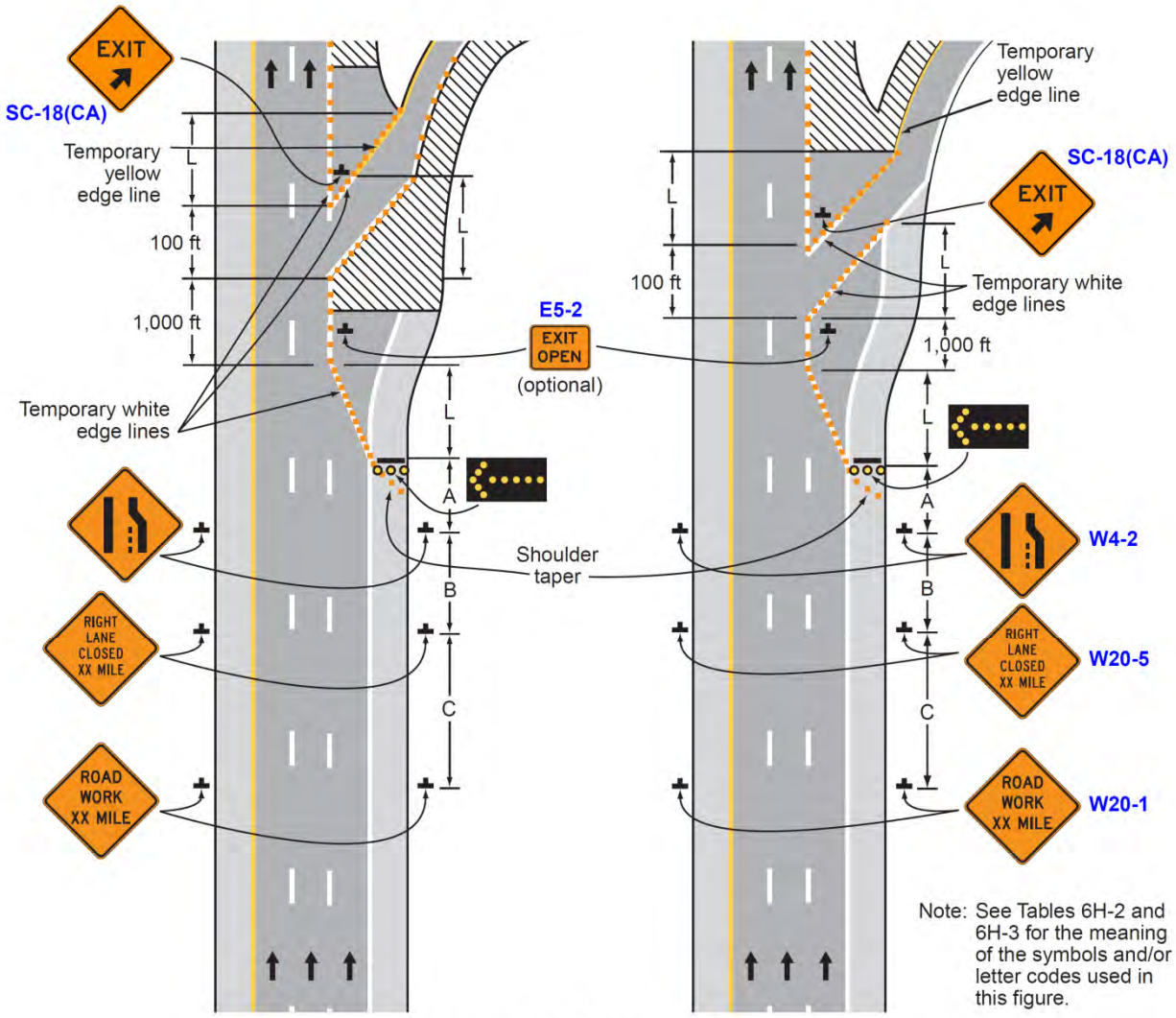
Option:

The Caltrans' Standard Plan T10, T10A and T14 may be used instead of this typical application.

Support:

See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Figure 6H-42. Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp (TA-42)



Typical Application 42

Notes for Figure 6H-43—Typical Application 43
Partial Exit Ramp Closure

Guidance:

1. *Truck off-tracking should be considered when determining whether the minimum lane width of 10 feet is adequate (see Section 6G.08).*

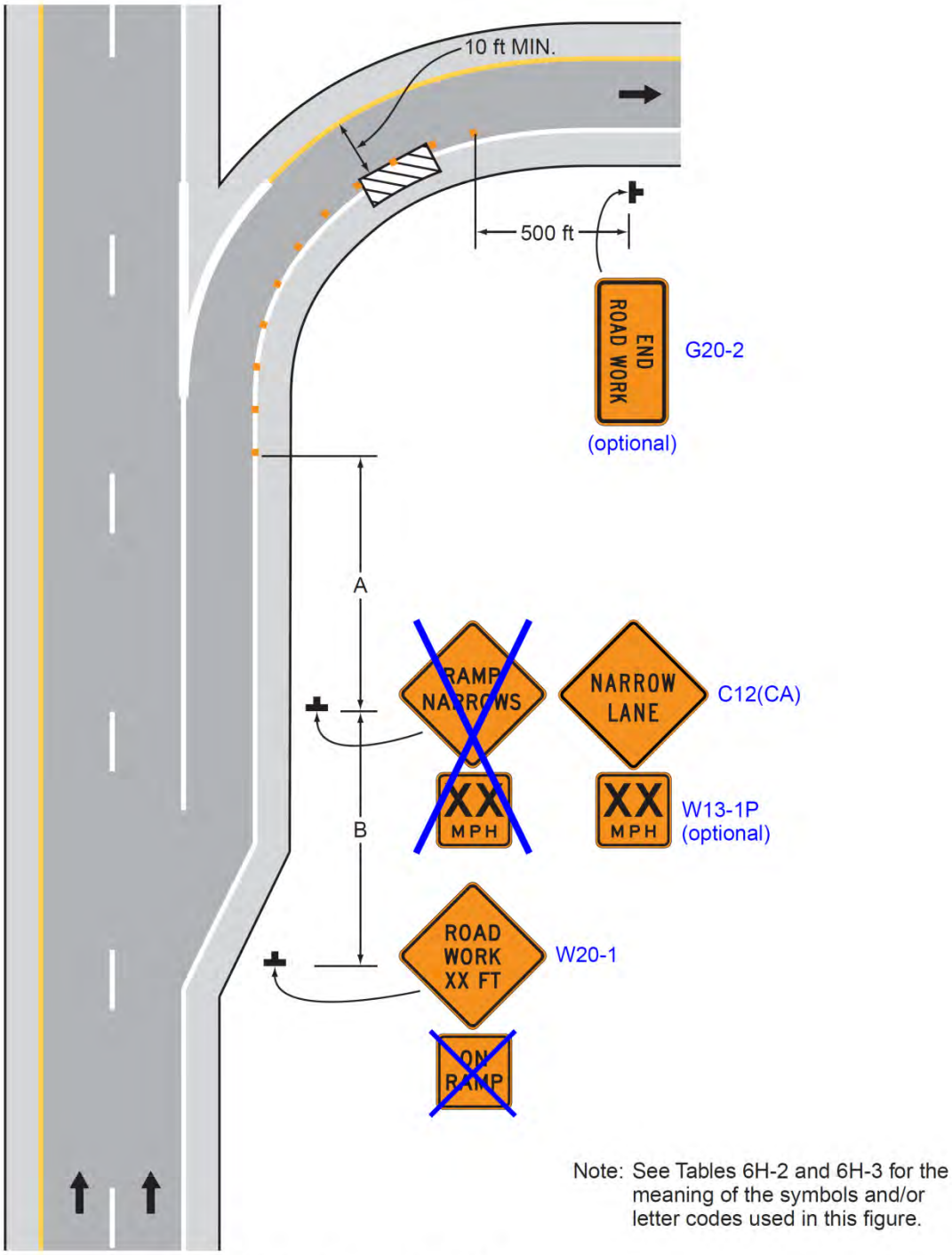
Standard:

2. The RAMP NARROWS (W5-4) sign and ON RAMP (W13-4P) plaque shall not be used in California. The ROAD NARROWS (W5-1) sign or NARROW LANE(S) (C12(CA)) sign, as appropriate, shall be used instead. See Sections 2C.19 and 6F.102(CA).

Guidance:

3. *For planned partial ramp closure, consideration should be given to closing the entire exit ramp. Refer to the Caltrans' Standard Plan T14. See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.*

Figure 6H-43. Partial Exit Ramp Closure (TA-43)



Typical Application 43

Notes for Figure 6H-44—Typical Application 44
Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp

Guidance:

1. An acceleration lane of sufficient length should be provided whenever possible as shown on the left diagram.

Standard:

2. For the information shown on the diagram on the right-hand side of the typical application, where inadequate acceleration distance exists for the temporary entrance, the YIELD sign shall be replaced with STOP signs (one on each side of the approach).

Guidance:

3. When used, the YIELD or STOP sign should be located so that ramp vehicular traffic has adequate sight distance of oncoming mainline vehicular traffic to select an acceptable gap in the mainline vehicular traffic flow, but should not be located so far forward that motorists will be encouraged to stop in the path of the mainline traffic. Also, a longer acceleration lane should be provided beyond the sign to reduce the gap size needed. If insufficient gaps are available, consideration should be given to closing the ramp.

4. Where STOP signs are used, a temporary stop line should be placed across the ramp at the desired stop location.

5. The mainline merging taper with the arrow board at its starting point should be located sufficiently in advance so that the arrow board is not confusing to drivers on the entrance ramp, and so that the mainline merging vehicular traffic from the lane closure has the opportunity to stabilize before encountering the vehicular traffic merging from the ramp.

6. If the ramp curves sharply to the right, warning signs with advisory speeds located in advance of the entrance terminal should be placed in pairs (one on each side of the ramp).

Option:

7. A Stop Beacon (see Section 4L.05) or a Type B high-intensity warning flasher with a red lens may be placed above the STOP sign.

8. Where the acceleration distance is significantly reduced, a supplemental plaque may be placed below the Yield Ahead sign reading NO MERGE AREA.

Standard:

9. An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.

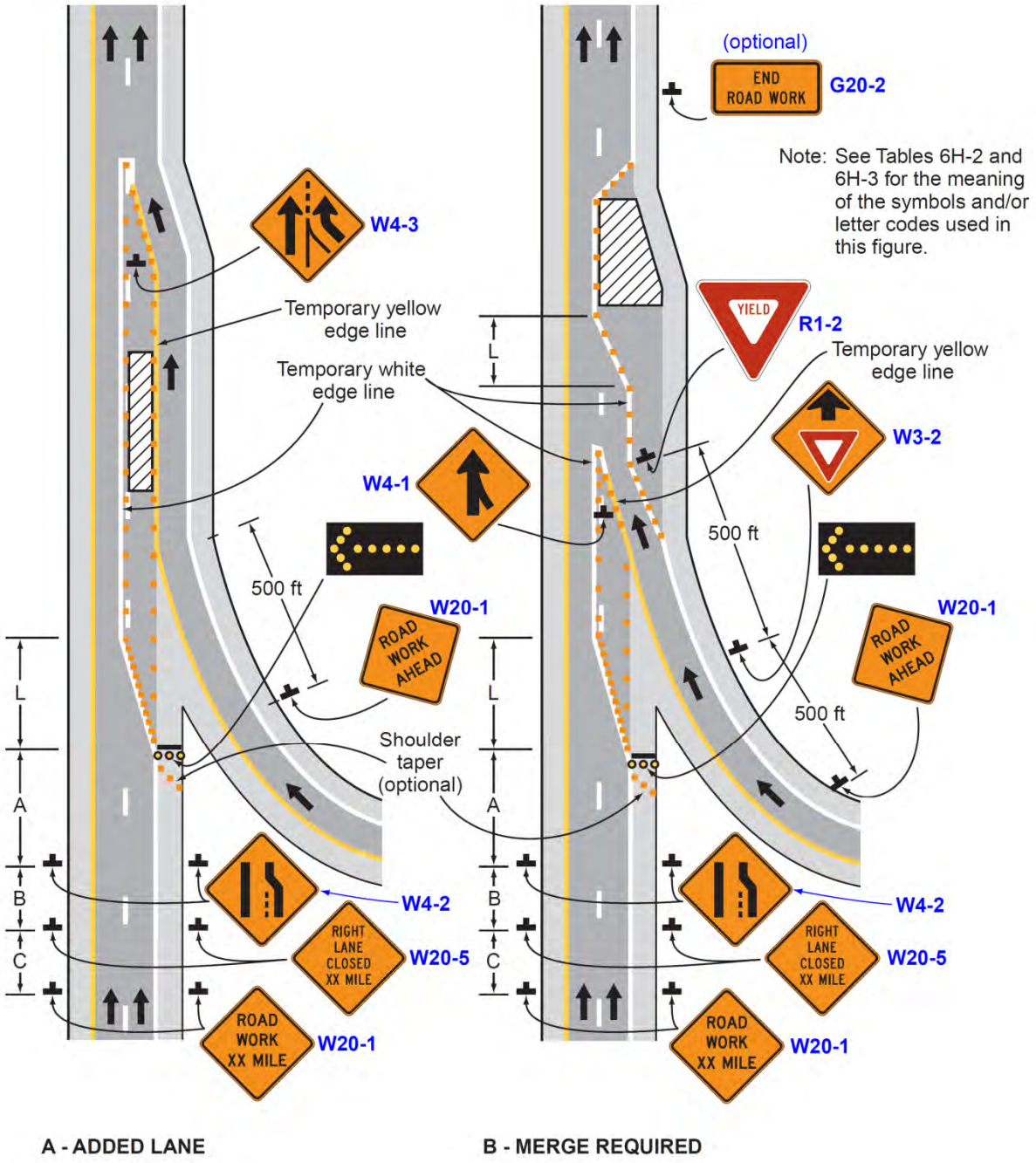
Option:

The Caltrans' Standard Plan T10, T10A and T14 may be used instead of this typical application.

Support:

See Section 1A.11 for information regarding this publication.

Figure 6H-44. Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp (TA-44)



Notes for Figure 6H-45—Typical Application 45
Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers

Support:

1. This application addresses one of several uses for movable barriers (see Section 6F.85) in highway work zones. In this example, one side of a 6-lane divided highway is closed to perform the work operation, and vehicular traffic is carried in both directions on the remaining 3-lane roadway by means of a median crossover.
   To accommodate unbalanced peak-period vehicular traffic volumes, the direction of travel in the center lane is switched to the direction having the greater volume, with the transfer typically being made twice daily. Thus, there are four vehicular traffic phases described as follows:
   a. Phase A—two travel lanes northbound and one lane southbound;
   b. Transition A to B—one travel lane in each direction;
   c. Phase B—one travel lane northbound and two lanes southbound; and
   d. Transition B to A—one travel lane in each direction.
   The typical application on the left illustrates the placement of devices during Phase A. The typical application on the right shows conditions during the transition (Transition A to B) from Phase A to Phase B.

Guidance:

2. *For the reversible-lane situation depicted, the ends of the movable barrier should terminate in a protected area or a crash cushion should be provided. During Phase A, the transfer vehicle should be parked behind the downstream end of the movable barrier for southbound traffic as shown in the typical application on the left. During Phase B, the transfer vehicle should be parked behind between the downstream ends of the movable barriers at the north end of the TTC zone as shown in the typical application on the right.*
   The transition shift from Phase A to B should be as follows:
   a. Change the signs in the northbound advance warning area and transition area from a LEFT LANE CLOSED AHEAD to a 2 LEFT LANES CLOSED AHEAD. Change the mode of the second northbound arrow board from Caution to Right Arrow.
   b. Place channelizing devices to close the northbound center lane.
   c. Move the transfer vehicle from south to north to shift the movable barrier from the west side to the east side of the reversible lane.
   d. Remove the channelizing devices closing the southbound center lane.
   e. Change the signs in the southbound transition area and advance warning area from a 2 LEFT LANES CLOSED AHEAD to a LEFT LANE CLOSED AHEAD. Change the mode of the second southbound arrow board from Right Arrow to Caution.
3. *Where the lane to be opened and closed is an exterior lane (adjacent to the edge of the traveled way or the work space), the lane closure should begin by closing the lane with channelizing devices placed along a merging taper using the same information employed for a stationary lane closure. The lane closure should then be extended with the movable-barrier transfer vehicle moving with vehicular traffic. When opening the lane, the transfer vehicle should travel against vehicular traffic. The merging taper should be removed in a method similar to a stationary lane closure.*

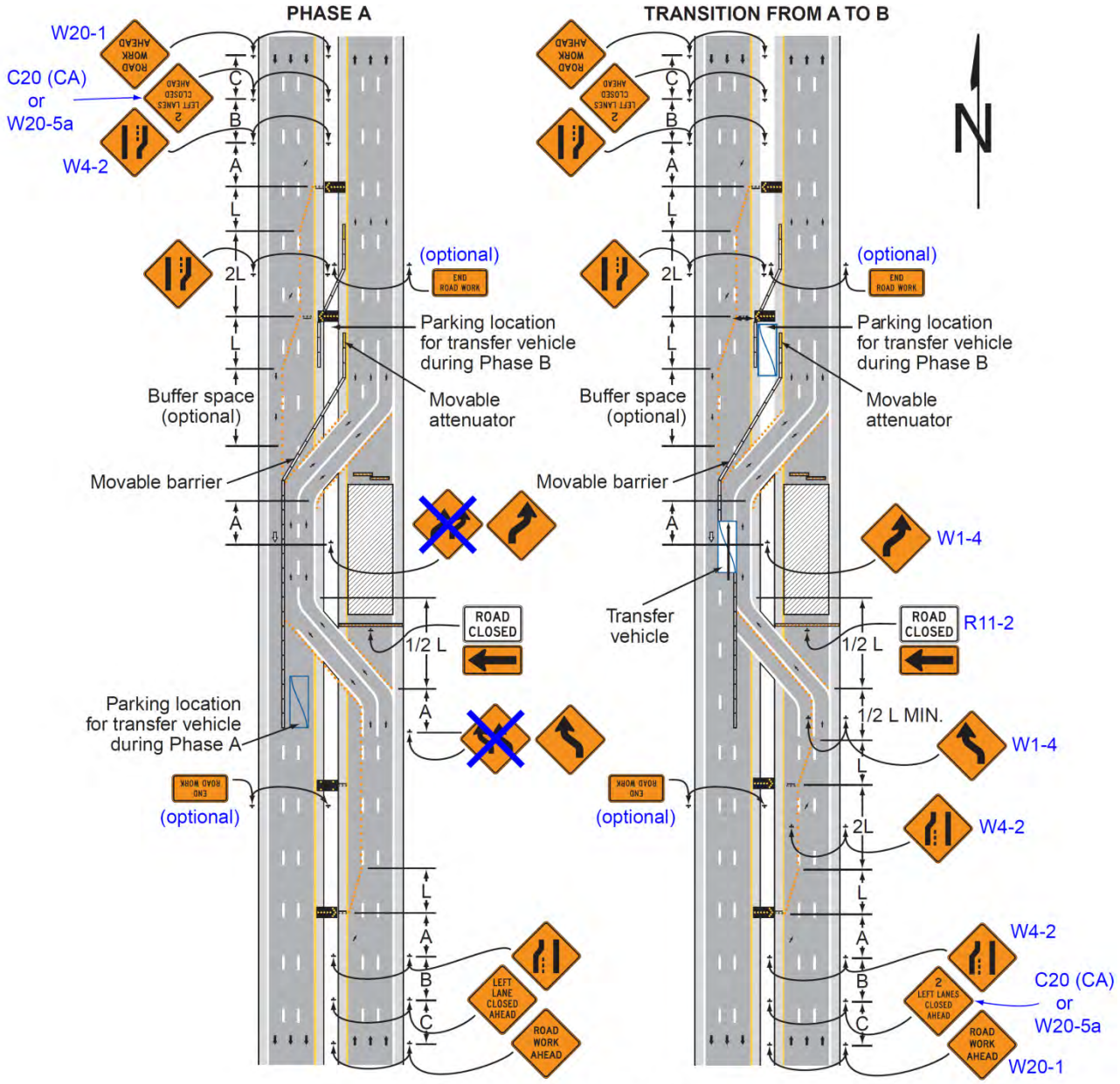
Option:

4. The procedure may be used during a peak period of vehicular traffic and then changed to provide two lanes in the other direction for the other peak.
5. A longitudinal buffer space may be used in the activity area to separate opposing vehicular traffic.
6. A work vehicle or a shadow vehicle may be equipped with a truck-mounted attenuator.

Standard:

7. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Figure 6H-45. Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers (TA-45)



Typical Application 45

Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure. Although leader lines point to the signs on the right-hand side of the roadway, most of these signs should be installed on both sides of the roadway.

Notes for Figure 6H-46—Typical Application 46
Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing

Guidance:

1. *When grade crossings exist either within or in the vicinity of roadway work activities, extra care should be taken to minimize the probability of conditions being created, by lane restrictions, flagging, or other operations, where vehicles might be stopped within the grade crossing, considered as being 15 feet on either side of the closest and farthest rail. This should include roadway work activities on a street parallel to a highway-rail grade crossing where right-hand turns or left-hand turns could be impacted.*

Standard:

2. **If the queuing of vehicles across active rail tracks cannot be avoided, a uniformed law enforcement officer or flagger shall be provided at the grade crossing to prevent through or turning vehicles from stopping within the grade crossing (as described in Note 1), even if automatic warning devices are in place.**

Guidance:

3. *Early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should occur before work starts.*
4. *In the example depicted, the buffer space of the activity area should be extended upstream of the grade crossing (as shown) so that a queue created by the flagging operation will not extend across the grade crossing.*
5. *The DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS sign should be used on all approaches to a grade crossing within the limits of a TTC zone.*

Option:

6. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
7. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

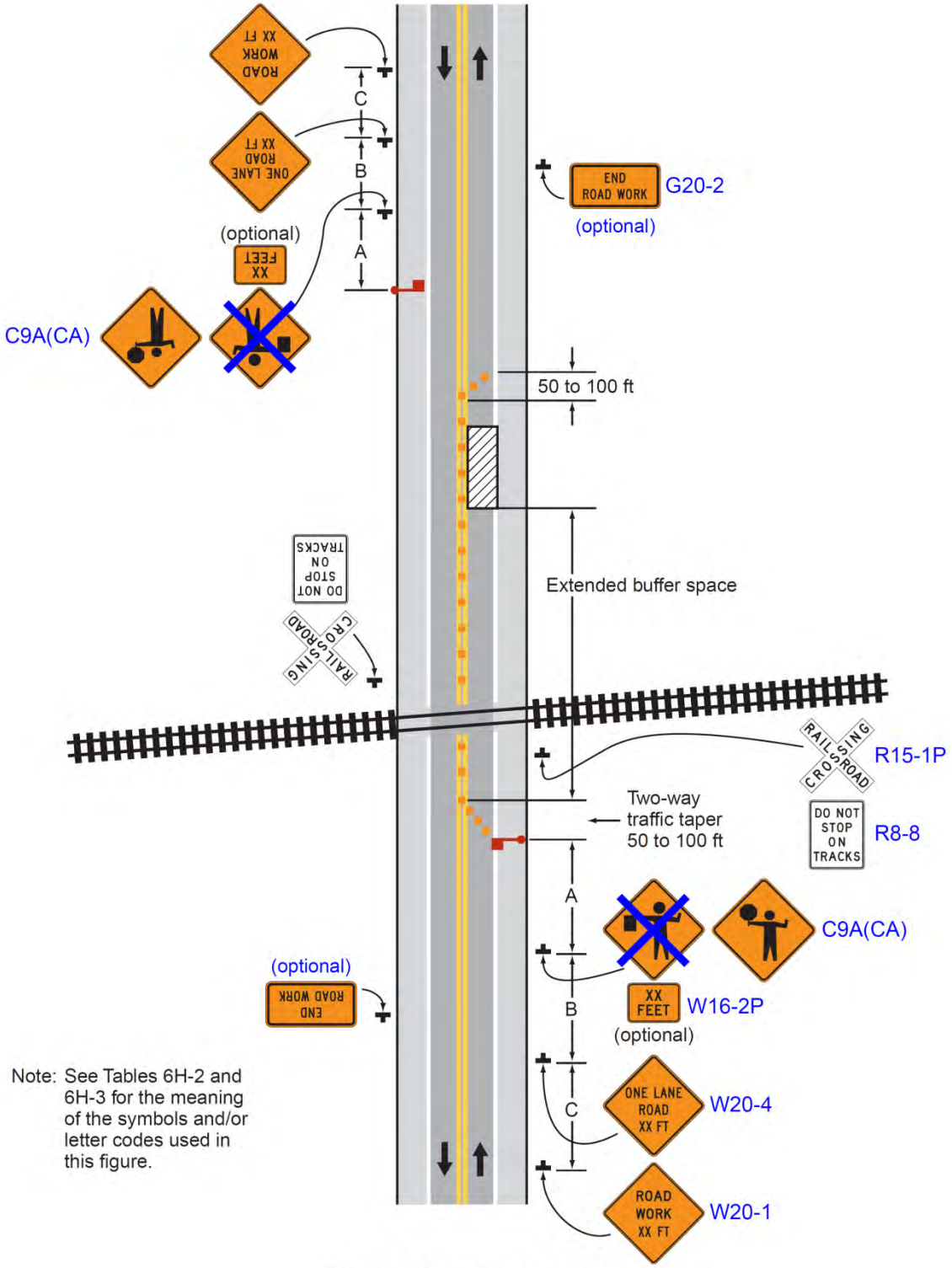
Guidance:

8. *When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located ~~before~~ after the Flagger symbol sign.*

Standard:

9. **At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.**

Figure 6H-46. Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing (TA-46)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 46

Notes for Figure 6H-101CA) – Typical Application 101(CA)
Shoulder Closure on Urban (Low Speed) Locations to Accommodate Bicyclists

Guidance:

1. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed, information and devices contained in Figures 6H-101(CA) through 6H-104(CA), as appropriate per situation encountered, should be used to consider the needs and control of bicyclists through a TTC zone.*
2. *SHOULDER CLOSED signs should be used on limited-access roadways where there is no opportunity for disabled vehicles to pull off the roadway.*
3. *If road users cannot see a pull-off area beyond the closed shoulder, information regarding the length of the shoulder closure should be provided in feet or miles, as appropriate.*
4. *The use of a temporary traffic barrier should be based on engineering judgment.*

Standard:

5. Temporary traffic barriers, including their end treatments, shall be crashworthy. In order to mitigate the effect of striking the upstream end of a temporary traffic barrier, the end shall be installed in accordance with AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11) by flaring until the end is outside the acceptable clear zone or by providing crashworthy end treatments. See Section 6F.85 for more details.

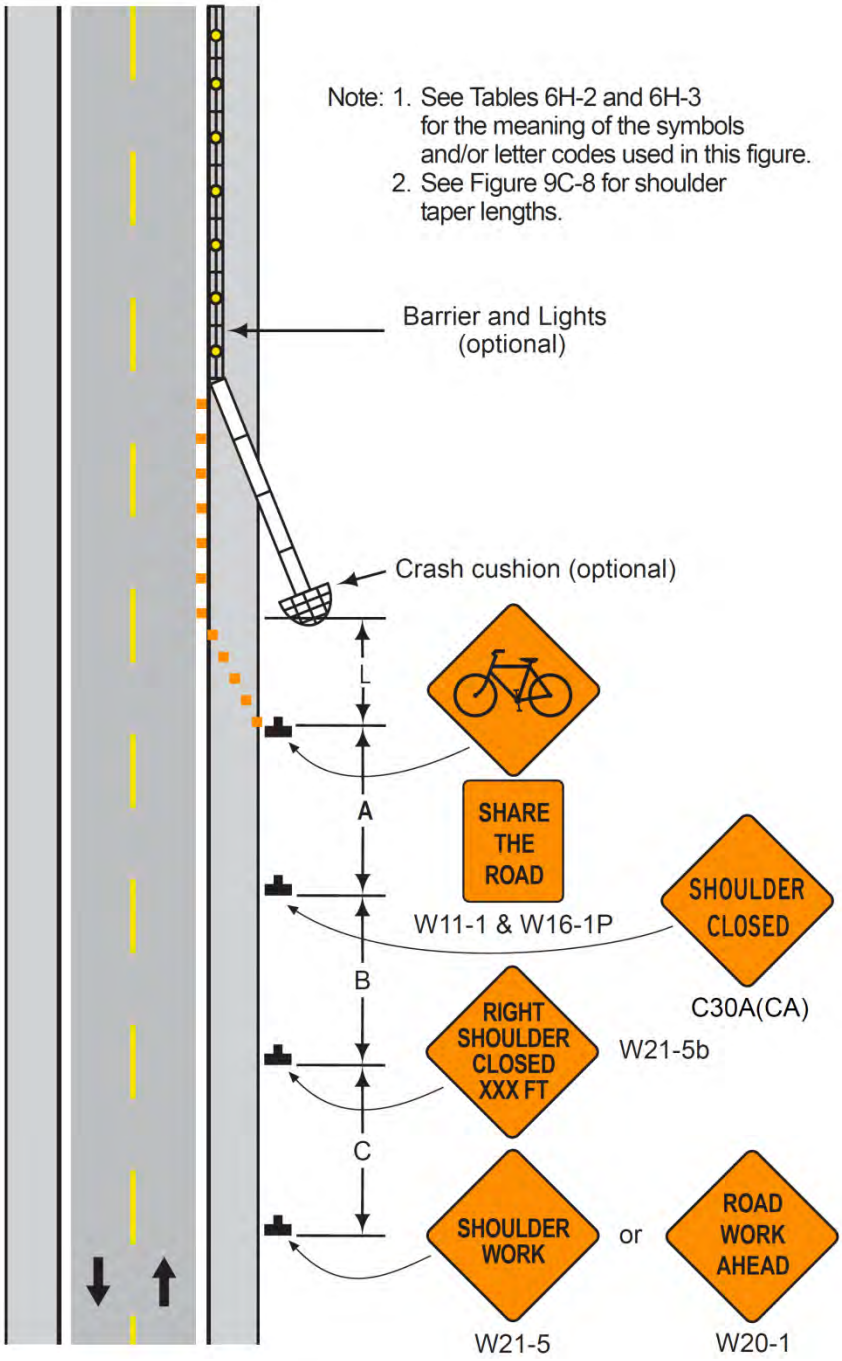
Option:

6. The barrier shown in this typical application is an example of one method that may be used to close a shoulder of a long-term project.
7. The warning lights shown on the barrier may be used.

Guidance:

9. *This typical application should only be used in urban areas where posted speed is 25 mph or less. For applications on roadway with a posted speed of 30 mph or more use typical application TA-102(CA).*
10. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.*
11. *Where feasible, an adequate lane width should be provided to allow bicyclists and motor vehicles to travel side by side throughout the TTC zone. If lane width conditions are not met, use the SHARE THE ROAD or Bicycles May Use Full Lane sign.*
12. *The speeds used for the shoulder taper calculations should be of bicyclists in the project vicinity or if a special event such as a bike race, the expected speed of bicyclists approaching the TTC zone.*

Figure 6H-101 (CA). Shoulder Closure on Urban (Low Speed) locations to accommodate bicyclists (TA-101 (CA))



Typical Application 101 (CA)

Notes for Figure 6H-102(CA) – Typical Application 102(CA)
Lane Closure on Freeway, Expressway, Rural and Urban (High Speed)
Locations to Accommodate Bicyclists

Guidance:

1. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed, information and devices contained in Figures 6H-101(CA) through 6H-104(CA), as appropriate per situation encountered, should be used to consider the needs and control of bicyclists through a TTC zone.*
2. *SHOULDER CLOSED signs should be used on limited-access highways where there is no opportunity for disabled vehicles to pull off the roadway.*
3. *If road users cannot see a pull-off area beyond the closed shoulder, information regarding the length of the shoulder closure should be provided in feet or miles, as appropriate.*
4. *The use of a temporary traffic barrier should be based on engineering judgment.*

Standard:

5. Temporary traffic barriers, including their end treatments, shall be crashworthy. In order to mitigate the effect of striking the upstream end of a temporary traffic barrier, the end shall be installed in accordance with AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11) by flaring until the end is outside the acceptable clear zone or by providing crashworthy end treatments. See Section 6F.85 for more details.

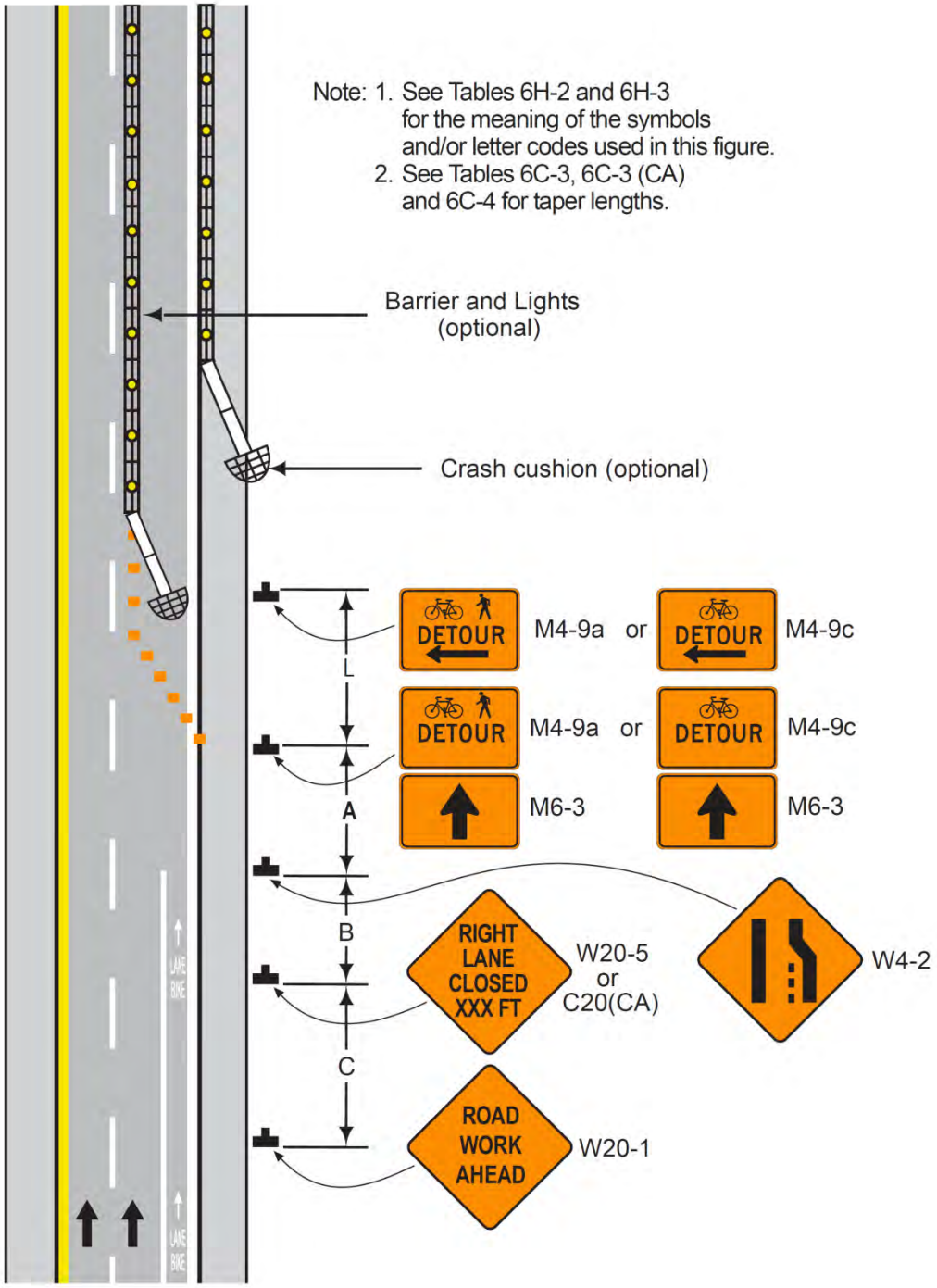
Option:

6. The barrier shown in this typical application is an example of one method that may be used to close a shoulder of a long-term project.
7. The warning lights shown on the barrier may be used.

Guidance:

9. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.*
10. *The width of the existing pedestrian facility should be provided for the temporary facility, if practical. When it is not possible to maintain a minimum width of 60 inch throughout the entire length of the pedestrian pathway, a 60 x 60 inch passing space should be provided at least every 200 feet to allow individuals in wheelchairs to pass.*

Figure 6H-102 (CA). Lane Closure on Freeway, Expressway, Rural and Urban (High Speed) locations to accommodate bicyclists (TA-102 (CA))



Typical Application 102 (CA)

Notes for Figure 6H-103(CA)—Typical Application 103(CA) Detour for Bike Lane on Roads with Closure of One Travel Direction

Guidance:

1. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed, information and devices contained in Figures 6H-101(CA) through 6H-104(CA), as appropriate per situation encountered, should be used to consider the needs and control of bicyclists through a TTC zone.*
2. *This plan should be used for streets without posted route numbers.*
3. *On multi-lane streets, Detour signs with an Advance Turn Arrow should be used in advance of a turn.*

Option:

4. The STREET CLOSED legend may be used in place of ROAD CLOSED.
5. Additional DO NOT ENTER signs may be used at intersections with intervening streets.
6. Warning lights may be used on Type III Barricades.
7. Detour signs may be located on the far side of intersections.
8. A Street Name sign may be mounted with the Detour sign. The Street Name sign may be either white on green or black on orange.

Standard:

9. When used, the Street Name sign shall be placed above the Detour sign.

Guidance:

10. *The DETOUR (M4-8) sign should be placed on tangent sections at intervals not to exceed 1300 feet and at major intersections.*

Option:

11. In urban areas, the M4-8 signs may be placed at every intersection.

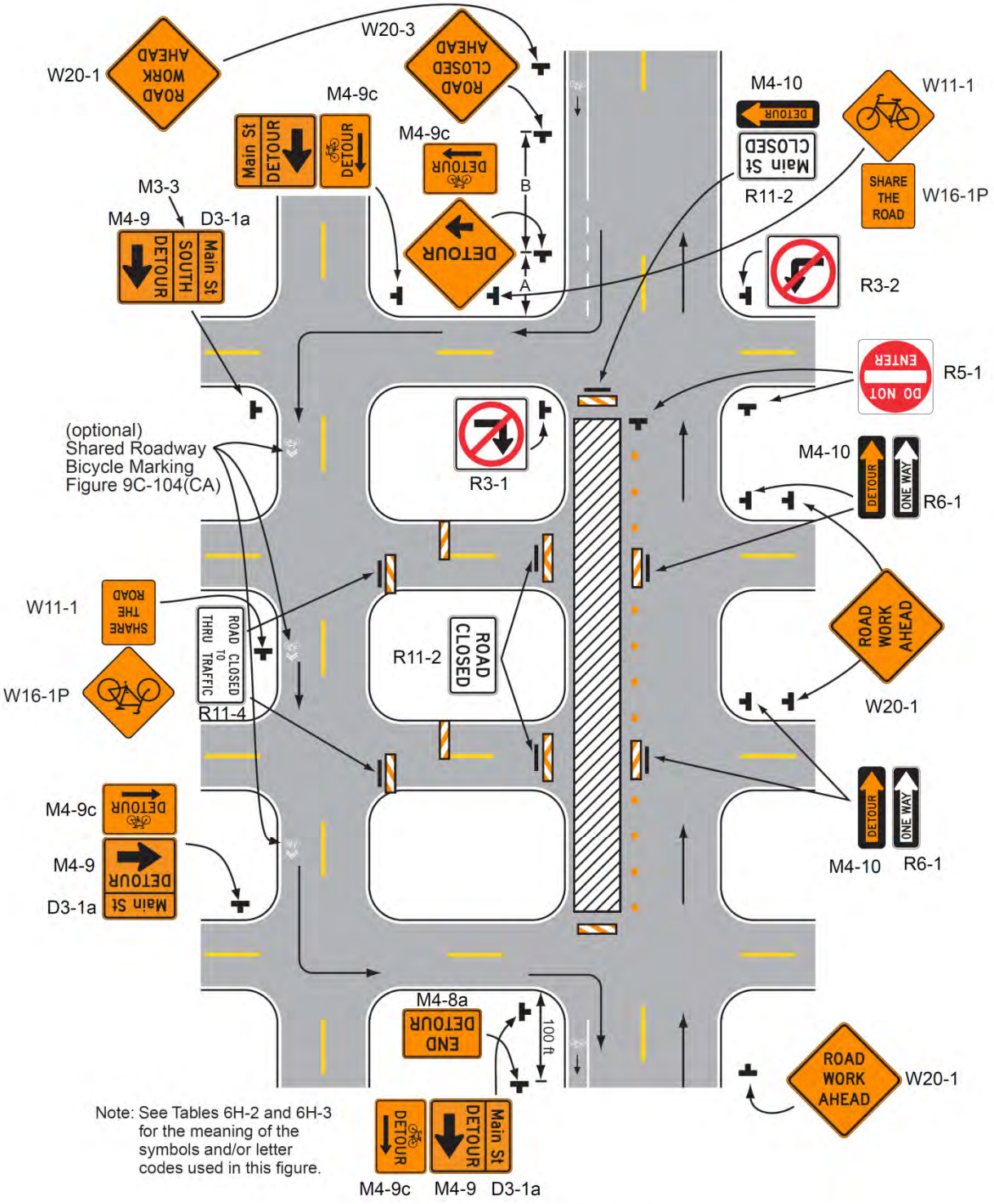
Guidance:

12. *When the detour is applicable to bicyclists and not pedestrians, the Bicycle Detour (M4-9c) sign should be used instead of the Pedestrian/Bicycle Detour (M4-9a) sign.*
13. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.*

Option:

14. For long-term duration projects (see Section 6G.02), the shared roadway bicycle marking may be used along detours with on-street parking and inadequate lane width.

Figure 6H-103 (CA). Detour for Bike Lane on Roads with Closure of One Travel Direction (TA-103 (CA))



Typical Application 103 (CA)

Notes for Figure 6H-104(CA)—Typical Application 104(CA)
Right Lane and Bike Lane Closure on Far Side of Intersection

Guidance:

1. *When existing accommodations for bicycle travel are disrupted or closed, information and devices contained in Figures 6H-101(CA) through 6H-104(CA), as appropriate per situation encountered, should be used to consider the needs and control of bicyclists through a TTC zone.*
2. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*

Option:

3. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection. However, when this results in the closure of a right lane having significant right turning movements, then the right lane may be restricted to right turns only, as shown. This procedure increases the through capacity by eliminating right turns from the open through lane.
4. For intersection approaches reduced to a single lane, left-turning movements may be prohibited to maintain capacity for through vehicular traffic.
5. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
6. Where the turning radius is large, it may be possible to create a right-turn island using channelizing devices or pavement markings.

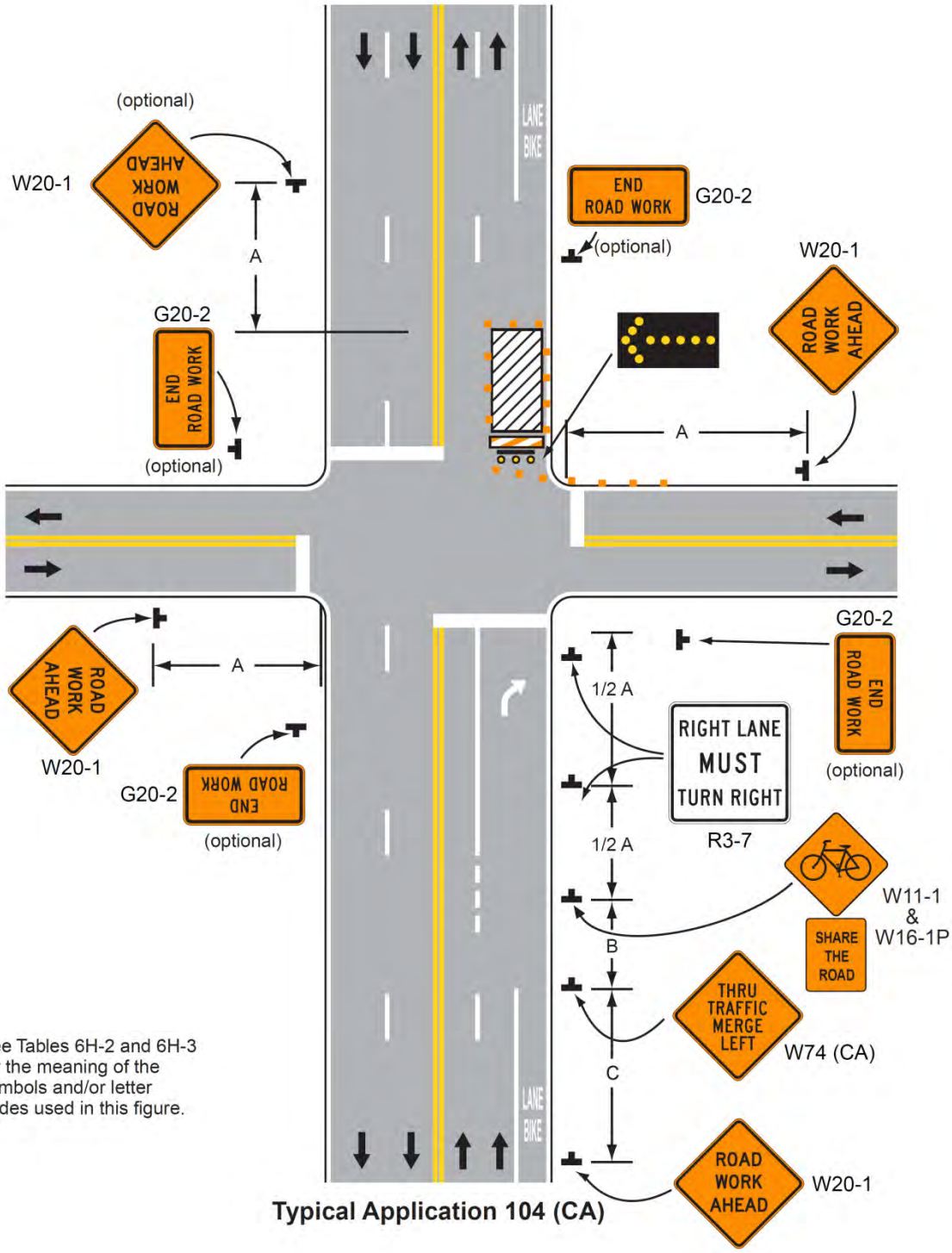
Guidance:

7. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked, while maintaining visibility for road users.*
8. *For long-term duration projects (see Section 6G.02), consideration should be given to installing signs in an overhead location.*

Option:

9. A high-level warning device (flag tree) may supplement the advance warning signs. Refer to Section 6F.62.

Figure 6H-104 (CA). Right Lane and Bike Lane Closure on Far Side of Intersection (TA-104 (CA))



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 104 (CA)

Notes for Figure 6H-105(CA)—Typical Application 105(CA)
Lane Shift on Road with Low Traffic Volumes
(Refer to Part 5, Section 5A.01)

Guidance:

1. *The lanes on either side of the center work space should have a minimum width of 10 feet as measured from the near edge of the channelizing devices to the edge of pavement or the outside edge of paved shoulder.*
2. *All advance warning signs should be placed so that the path of travel for bicycles is not blocked while maintaining visibility for road users.*

Standard:

3. Workers in the roadway shall wear high-visibility safety apparel as described in Section 6D.03.

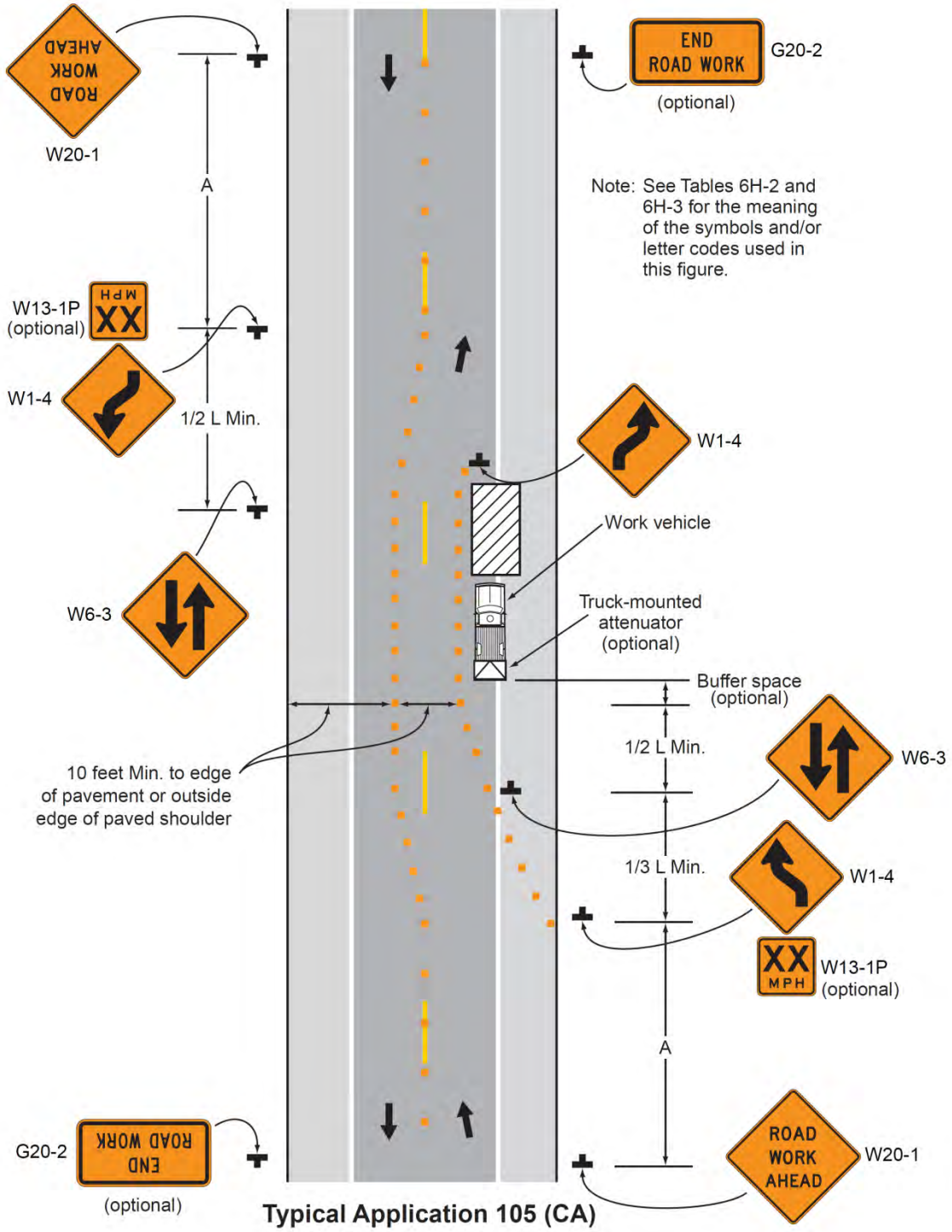
Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. If the closure continues overnight, warning lights may be used on the channelizing devices.
6. A lane width of 9 feet may be used for short-term stationary work on low-volume, low-speed roadways when motor vehicle traffic does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles.
7. A work vehicle displaying high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights may be used instead of the channelizing devices forming the tapers or the high-level warning devices.
8. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

9. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Figure 6H-105 (CA). Lane Shift on Road With Low Traffic Volumes (TA-105 (CA))



Typical Application 105 (CA)

CHAPTER 6I. CONTROL OF TRAFFIC THROUGH TRAFFIC INCIDENT MANAGEMENT AREAS

Section 6I.01 General

Support:

01 The National Incident Management System (NIMS) requires the use of the Incident Command System (ICS) at traffic incident management scenes.

02 A traffic incident is an emergency road user occurrence, a natural disaster, or other unplanned event that affects or impedes the normal flow of traffic.

03 A traffic incident management area is an area of a highway where temporary traffic controls are installed, as authorized by a public authority or the official having jurisdiction of the roadway, in response to a road user incident, natural disaster, hazardous material spill, or other unplanned incident. It is a type of TTC zone and extends from the first warning device (such as a sign, light, or cone) to the last TTC device or to a point where vehicles return to the original lane alignment and are clear of the incident.

04 Traffic incidents can be divided into three general classes of duration, each of which has unique traffic control characteristics and needs. These classes are:

A. Major—expected duration of more than 2 hours,

B. Intermediate—expected duration of 30 minutes to 2 hours, and

C. Minor—expected duration under 30 minutes.

05 The primary functions of TTC at a traffic incident management area are to inform road users of the incident and to provide guidance information on the path to follow through the incident area. Alerting road users and establishing a well defined path to guide road users through the incident area will serve to protect the incident responders and those involved in working at the incident scene and will aid in moving road users expeditiously past or around the traffic incident, will reduce the likelihood of secondary traffic crashes, and will preclude unnecessary use of the surrounding local road system. Examples include a stalled vehicle blocking a lane, a traffic crash blocking the traveled way, a hazardous material spill along a highway, and natural disasters such as floods and severe storm damage.

Guidance:

06 *In order to reduce response time for traffic incidents, highway agencies, appropriate public safety agencies (law enforcement, fire and rescue, emergency communications, emergency medical, and other emergency management), and private sector responders (towing and recovery and hazardous materials contractors) should mutually plan for occurrences of traffic incidents along the major and heavily traveled highway and street system.*

07 *On-scene responder organizations should train their personnel in TTC practices for accomplishing their tasks in and near traffic and in the requirements for traffic incident management contained in this Manual. On-scene responders should take measures to move the incident off the traveled roadway or to provide for appropriate warning. All on-scene responders and news media personnel should constantly be aware of their visibility to oncoming traffic and wear high-visibility apparel.* See Section 6D.03 for details on high-visibility apparel requirements.

08 *Emergency vehicles should be safe-positioned (see definition in Section 1A.13) such that traffic flow through the incident scene is optimized. All emergency vehicles that subsequently arrive should be positioned in a manner that does not interfere with the established temporary traffic flow.*

09 *Responders arriving at a traffic incident should estimate the magnitude of the traffic incident, the expected time duration of the traffic incident, and the expected vehicle queue length, and then should set up the appropriate temporary traffic controls for these estimates.*

Option:

10 Warning and guide signs used for TTC traffic incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background (see Figure 6I-1).

Support:

10a Signs used for regular TTC (black legend and border on orange or fluorescent orange background) are also acceptable. Truck or trailer mounted Portable Changeable Message (PCMS) signs are effective tools for traffic incident management.

11 While some traffic incidents might be anticipated and planned for, emergencies and disasters might pose more severe and unpredictable problems. The ability to quickly install proper temporary traffic controls might greatly reduce the effects of an incident, such as secondary crashes or excessive traffic delays. An essential part of fire, rescue, spill clean-up, highway agency, and enforcement activities is the proper control of road users through the traffic incident management area in order to protect responders, victims, and other personnel at the site. These operations might need corroborating legislative authority for the implementation and enforcement of appropriate road user regulations, parking controls, and speed zoning. It is desirable for these statutes to provide sufficient flexibility in the authority for, and implementation of, TTC to respond to the needs of changing conditions found in traffic incident management areas.

Option:

12 For traffic incidents, particularly those of an emergency nature, TTC devices on hand may be used for the initial response as long as they do not themselves create unnecessary additional hazards.

Section 6I.02 Major Traffic Incidents

Support:

01 Major traffic incidents are typically traffic incidents involving hazardous materials, fatal traffic crashes involving numerous vehicles, and other natural or man-made disasters. These traffic incidents typically involve closing all or part of a roadway facility for a period exceeding 2 hours.

Guidance:

02 *If the traffic incident is anticipated to last more than 24 hours, applicable procedures and devices set forth in other Chapters of Part 6 should be used.*

Support:

03 A road closure can be caused by a traffic incident such as a road user crash that blocks the traveled way. Road users are usually diverted through lane shifts or detoured around the traffic incident and back to the original roadway. A combination of traffic engineering and enforcement preparations is needed to determine the detour route, and to install, maintain or operate, and then to remove the necessary traffic control devices when the detour is terminated. Large trucks are a significant concern in such a detour, especially when detouring them from a controlled-access roadway onto local or arterial streets.

04 During traffic incidents, large trucks might need to follow a route separate from that of automobiles because of bridge, weight, clearance, or geometric restrictions. Also, vehicles carrying hazardous material might need to follow a different route from other vehicles.

05 Some traffic incidents such as hazardous material spills might require closure of an entire highway. Through road users must have adequate guidance around the traffic incident. Maintaining good public relations is desirable. The cooperation of the news media in publicizing the existence of, and reasons for, traffic incident management areas and their TTC can be of great assistance in keeping road users and the general public well informed.

06 The establishment, maintenance, and prompt removal of lane diversions can be effectively managed by interagency planning that includes representatives of highway and public safety agencies.

Guidance:

07 *All traffic control devices needed to set up the TTC at a traffic incident should be available so that they can be readily deployed for all major traffic incidents. The TTC should include the proper traffic diversions, tapered lane closures, and upstream warning devices to alert traffic approaching the queue and to encourage early diversion to an appropriate alternative route.*

08 *Attention should be paid to the upstream end of the traffic queue such that warning is given to road users approaching the back of the queue.*

09 *If manual traffic control is needed, it should be provided by qualified flaggers or uniformed law enforcement officers.*

Option:

10 If flaggers are used to provide traffic control for an incident management situation, the flaggers may use appropriate traffic control devices that are readily available or that can be brought to the traffic incident scene on short notice.

Guidance:

11 *When light sticks or flares are used to establish the initial traffic control at incident scenes, channelizing devices (see Section 6F.63) should be installed as soon thereafter as practical.*

Option:

12 The light sticks or flares may remain in place if they are being used to supplement the channelizing devices.

Guidance:

13 *The light sticks, flares, and channelizing devices should be removed after the incident is terminated.*

Section 6I.03 Intermediate Traffic Incidents

Support:

01 Intermediate traffic incidents typically affect travel lanes for a time period of 30 minutes to 2 hours, and usually require traffic control on the scene to divert road users past the blockage. Full roadway closures might be needed for short periods during traffic incident clearance to allow traffic incident responders to accomplish their tasks.

02 The establishment, maintenance, and prompt removal of lane diversions can be effectively managed by interagency planning that includes representatives of highway and public safety agencies.

Guidance:

03 *All traffic control devices needed to set up the TTC at a traffic incident should be available so that they can be readily deployed for intermediate traffic incidents. The TTC should include the proper traffic diversions, tapered lane closures, and upstream warning devices to alert traffic approaching the queue and to encourage early diversion to an appropriate alternative route.*

04 *Attention should be paid to the upstream end of the traffic queue such that warning is given to road users approaching the back of the queue.*

05 *If manual traffic control is needed, it should be provided by qualified flaggers or uniformed law enforcement officers.*

Option:

06 If flaggers are used to provide traffic control for an incident management situation, the flaggers may use appropriate traffic control devices that are readily available or that can be brought to the traffic incident scene on short notice.

Guidance:

07 *When light sticks or flares are used to establish the initial traffic control at incident scenes, channelizing devices (see Section 6F.63) should be installed as soon thereafter as practical.*

Option:

08 The light sticks or flares may remain in place if they are being used to supplement the channelizing devices.

Guidance:

09 *The light sticks, flares, and channelizing devices should be removed after the incident is terminated.*

Section 6I.04 Minor Traffic Incidents

Support:

01 Minor traffic incidents are typically disabled vehicles and minor crashes that result in lane closures of less than 30 minutes. On-scene responders are typically law enforcement and towing companies, and occasionally highway agency service patrol vehicles.

02 Diversion of traffic into other lanes is often not needed or is needed only briefly. It is not generally possible or practical to set up a lane closure with traffic control devices for a minor traffic incident. Traffic control is the responsibility of on-scene responders.

Guidance:

03 *When a minor traffic incident blocks a travel lane, it should be removed from that lane to the shoulder as quickly as possible.*

Section 6I.05 Use of Emergency-Vehicle Lighting

Support:

01 The use of emergency-vehicle lighting (such as high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights) is essential, especially in the initial stages of a traffic incident, for the safety of emergency responders and persons involved in the traffic incident, as well as road users approaching the traffic incident. Emergency-vehicle lighting, however, provides warning only and provides no effective traffic control. The use of too many lights at an incident scene can be distracting and can create confusion for approaching road users, especially at night. Road users approaching the traffic incident from the opposite direction on a divided facility are often distracted by emergency-vehicle lighting and slow their vehicles to look at the traffic incident posing a hazard to themselves and others traveling in their direction.

02 The use of emergency-vehicle lighting can be reduced if good traffic control has been established at a traffic incident scene. This is especially true for major traffic incidents that might involve a number of emergency vehicles. If good traffic control is established through placement of advanced warning signs and traffic control devices to divert or detour traffic, then public safety agencies can perform their tasks on scene with minimal emergency-vehicle lighting.

Guidance:

03 *Public safety agencies should examine their policies on the use of emergency-vehicle lighting, especially after a traffic incident scene is secured, with the intent of reducing the use of this lighting as much as possible while not endangering those at the scene. Special consideration should be given to reducing or extinguishing forward facing emergency-vehicle lighting, especially on divided roadways, to reduce distractions to oncoming road users.*

04 *Because the glare from floodlights or vehicle headlights can impair the nighttime vision of approaching road users, any floodlights or vehicle headlights that are not needed for illumination, or to provide notice to other road users of an incident response vehicle being in an unexpected location, should be turned off at night.*

Section 6I.101(CA) FLOODING AHEAD TURN AROUND DON'T DROWN W86(CA) Sign

Support:

01 The Federal Highway Administration has encouraged use of the phrase FLOODING AHEAD TURN AROUND DON'T DROWN as an official incident management sign.

Option:

02 The FLOODING AHEAD TURN AROUND DON'T DROWN (W86(CA)) sign (see Figure 6I-1(CA)) may be deployed to warn during times when low-water crossings, bridges, or culverts cannot pass high flood flows.

Standard:

03 **When used, W86(CA) sign shall be mounted on temporary sign holders, not on barricades.**

Guidance:

04 *The W86(CA) sign should be deployed at locations where stream waters flooding across a road have made passage unsafe.*

Figure 6I-1. Examples of Traffic Incident Management Area Signs

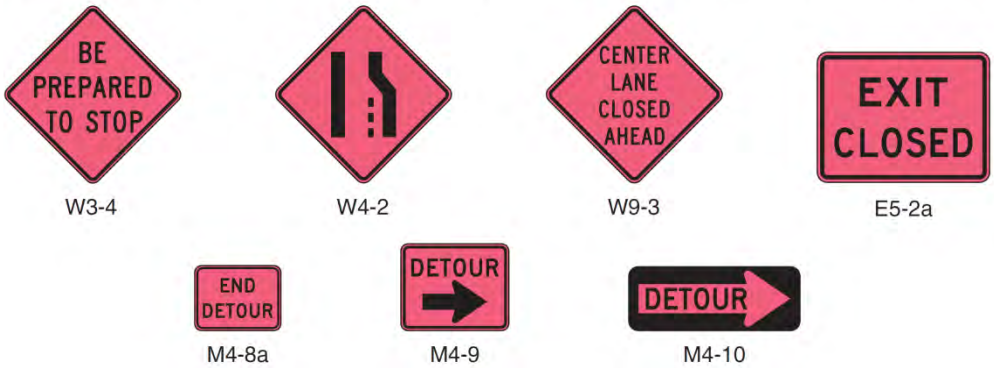


Figure 6I-1 (CA). Examples of Traffic Incident Management Area Signs

W86 (CA)